

Classic Interlinear Translations

COMMENTARIES OF
CÆSAR
ON THE
GALLIC WAR

The original text reduced to the natural English order

WITH A LITERAL
**Interlinear Translation of the
First Seven Books**

PHILADELPHIA
DAVID McKAY COMPANY
WASHINGTON SQUARE

COPYRIGHT, 1893, BY
ARTHUR HINDS & CO.

COPYRIGHT, 1924, BY
HANDY BOOK CORP.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

PREFACE

In preparing the Classic Series of Interlinear Translations the publishers have insisted upon a faithful adherence to two obvious essentials: the reduction of the original text to the natural order, and, as far as possible, a strictly literal version.

In all cases, however, where the meaning as thus literally rendered is not sufficiently intelligible, explanatory words or phrases have been added.

It is hoped that the plan will be appreciated of inserting all explanatory words and phrases, by means of brackets, in immediate conjunction with the text, thus obviating the annoyance and the serious loss of time that attend frequent reference to notes by numbered paragraphs in an appendix.

The superiority is readily apparent of the interlinear over other translations, not only in the saving of time, but also for all purposes of careful study; making possible as well as convenient and easy, a correct solution of idioms, a quick insight into the sense, a facile and lucid rearrangement of the context in the English order, and a practical comparison of both the similarities and the contrasts of construction.

PRIMUS LIBER

FIRST BOOK

COMMENTARIORUM

OF COMMENTARIES

CAII JULII CÆSARIS,
OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR,

DE

ON

GALLICO BELLO.

GALLIC WAR.

Cæsar, in narrating the war which he carried on in Gaul, first describes Gaul, then recounts two battles against the Helvetians and one against the Germans.

1. Omnis Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one
quarum Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,
qui lingua ipsorum appellantur
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called
Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between
se linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen
themselves in language, institutions, (and) laws. The river

Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,
 Matrona et Sequăna à Belgis. Belgæ sunt
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are
 fortissimi omnium horum: propterëa quòd absunt
the bravest of all these: because that they are distant
 longissimè à cultu atque humanitate
farthest from the cultivation and humanity (refinement)
 Provinciæ; que mercatores minimè sæpe
of the Province (Provence); and merchants least often
 commēant ad eos, atque importat eā,
resort to them, and import those (things),
 quæ pertinent ad anīmos effeminandos.
which appertain to minds to be effeminated (to effeminate
 Sunt proximi Germanis, qui
their minds). They are nearest to the Germani, who
 incolunt trans Rhenum, cum quibus gērunt
inhabit beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry-on
 bellum continenter: de quā caussā Helvetiī
war continually: from which cause the Helvetiī
 quōque præcedunt reliquos Gallos virtute;
also go before (excel) remaining Gauls in valour:
 quòd contendunt cum Germanis quotidianis proeliis
because they contend with the Germani in daily battles
 fēre, quum aut prohibent eos suis
almost, when either they prohibit them from their own
 finibus, aut ipsi gērunt bellum in
borders, or they (themselves) carry-on war in
 finibus eorum. Una pars eorum, quam
the borders of them. One part of them, which
 dictum-est Gallos obtinere, cāpit initium à
it has been said the Gauls to hold, takes beginning from
 flumine Rhodāno; continetur flumine Garumnā,
river Rhone; it is bounded by river Garonne,
 Oceāno, finibus Belgarum; etiā attingit
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum à Sequānis et
 (reaches to) the river Rhine from the Sequani and
 Helvetiis; vergit ad Septentriones.
 the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven-stars (the North).

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finibus Gallæ;
 The Belgians rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni;
 they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.
 they look unto the North and the rising sun.

Aquitania pertinet à flumine Garumnâ ad
 Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani,
 the Pyrenean mountains, and that part of the ocean,

quæ spectat ad Hispaniam, inter occasum
 which looks to Spain, between the going-down

Solis et Septentriones.
 of the sun (West) and the North.

2. Orgetorix fuit longè nobilissimus et ditissimus
 Orgetorix was by far the most noble and richest

apud Helvetios. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco
 among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus

Pisone consulibus, inductus cupiditate regni,
 Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom,

fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit
 made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded

civitati, ut exirent de suis finibus
 to the state that they should go out from their-own borders

cum omnibus copiis: esse perfacile, quum
 with all forces: to be very-easy, when

præstarent (imp. subj.) omnibus virtute, potiri
 they did excel to all in valour, to gain

imperio totius Gallæ. Persuasit id eis
 the empire of the whole Gaul. He persuaded that to them

hoc facilius, quòd Helvetii continentur
 by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained (hemmed

undique natura loci; ex una parte,
in) on every side by the nature of the place; out-of one part,
 latissimo atque altissimo flumine Rheno,
by the widest (very wide) and deepest river Rhine,
 qui dividit Helvetium agrum à Germanis:
which divides the Helvetian land from the Germani:
 ex altera parte, altissimo monte Jurâ,
out-of the other part, by the highest mountain Jura,
 qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;
which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (out of)
 tertiâ, lacu Lemano, et
third (part), by lake Lemanus (the lake of Geneva), and
 flumine Rhodâno, qui dividit nostram provinciam
by the river Rhone, which divides our province
 ab Helvetiis. Fiebat
(Provence) from the Helvetii. It was made (it happened)
 his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp. sub) minis
by these things, that both they did rove less
 latè et possent (imp. sub) minus facîle inferre
widely and were able less easily to-bring-on
 bellum finitimis. De quâ causâ homines
war to bordering (nations). From which cause men
 cupidi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem
desirous of warring were affected with great pain. But
 arbitrabantur se habere angustos fines, pro
'they did deem themselves to have narrow borders, for
 multitudine hominum et pro gloriâ belli atque
the multitude of men and for the glory of war and
 fortitudinis; qui patebant ducenta et
of bravery; which did lie open (extend) two-hundred and
 quadraginta millia passuum in longitudinem, centum
forty thousands of paces into length, a hundred
 et octoginta in latitudinem.
and eighty into width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate
Induced by these things, and excited by the authority

Orgetorīgis, constituerunt comparare ēa,
of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)

quæ pertinerent (imp. sub.) ad proficiscendum; coëmēre
which did pertain to setting-out; to buy up

quàm maximum (the greatest possible) numerum
as the greatest (the greatest possible) number

jumentorum et carrorum; facere quàm
of beasts of burden and of waggons; to make as

maximas sementes, ut copia frumenti suppetēret
the greatest sowings, that plenty of corn might supply

in itinēre; confirmare pacem et amicitiam cum
in the journey; to confirm peace and friendship with

proximis civitatibus. Duxerunt biennium
the nearest states. They led (thought) the space-of-two-

esse satis sibi ad eas res
years to be enough for themselves to those things

conficiendas; confirmant lege profectionem
to be accomplished; they confirm by law (their) departure

in tertium annum. Orgetōrix deligitur ad
upon (for) the third year. Orgetorix is chosen to

eas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sibi
those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself

legationem ad civitates. In eo itinēre persuadet
an embassy to the states. In that journey he persuades

Castico, filio Catamantaledis, Sequāno, pater
to Casticus, son to Catamantales, a Sequanian, the father

cujus obtinuērat regnum in Sequānis multos
of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many

annos, et appellatus-erat amicus à Senatu que
years, and had been called friend by the Senate and

Romano populo, ut occuparet regnum in
Roman people, that he should occupy the kingdom in

sua civitate, quod pater antè habuērat: que
his-own state, which (his) father before had had: and

item persuadet Ædūo Dumnorīgi, fratri
likewise he persuades to the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother

Divitiāci, qui ēo tempore obtinebat principatum
of Divitiacus, who in that time did hold sovereignty
 in suā civitate, ac erat maxime acceptus,
in his state, and was chiefly acceptable

plebi, ut conaretur idem;
to the common people. that he should attempt the same (thing);
 que dat suam filiam in matrimonium ei.
and gives his daughter into marriage to him.

Probat illis esse perfacile factu
He proves to them to be (that it was) very-easy to be done
 perficere conata, propterea quod ipse
to effect (the things) attempted, because that (he) himself
 esset (imp. subj.) obtenturus imperium suam
was about-to-hold (obtain) the empire of his

civitatis: esse non dubium quin
state: to be (that it was) not doubtful but-that

Helvetii possent (imp. subj.) plurimum totius
the Helvetians were able most of all

Galliae: confirmat, se conciliaturum
Gaul: he confirms (affirms), himself about-to-procure

regna illis suis copiis que suo exercitu.
the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hac oratione, dant inter se
Induced by this speech, they give between themselves

fidem et iusjurandum; et regno
faith and oath; and the kingdom (rule)

occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos
being occupied by three most powerful and most firm

populos, sperant sese posse potiri totius
tribes, they hope themselves to be able to possess of all

Galliae.
Gaul.

4. Ut ea res enuntiata-est Helvetiis per
When that thing was declared to the Helvetii by
 indicium, suis moribus coegerunt Orgetorigem dicere
discovery, by their customs they forced Orgetoris to say

causam ex vinculis. Oportebat
(plead) (his) cause from (in) bonds. It did behove

poenam sequi damnatum, ut cremaretur
punishment to follow (him) condemned, that he should be burnt

igni. Die constitutâ dictionis causæ,
with fire. In the day appointed of saying (pleading) of cause,

Orgetorix coëgit omnem suam familiam, ad decem
Orgetorix collected all his household, to ten

millia hominum, ad judicium; et
thousands of men, to the judgment (place of trial); and

conduxit eodem omnes suos clientes que
he led-together to same place all his clients and

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numerum:
bond-men-for-debt, of whom he did have a great number:

per eos, eripuit se ne-diceret causam.
by them, he rescued himself that he might not say cause

Quum civitas, incitata ob
(from taking his trial). When the state, excited on-account-of

eam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exequi suum jus
that thing, did endeavour to execute its right

armis, que magistratus cogèrent (imp. subj.)
by arms, and the magistrates did collect

multitudinem hominum ex agris, Orgetorix mortuus-est;
a multitude of men out of the lands, Orgetorix died;

neque suspicio æstet, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but-that

ipse consciverit (perf. subj.) mortem sibi.
himself committed death to himself.

5. Nihilominus post mortem ejus Helvetii
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii

conantur facere id, quod constituërant, ut
endeavour to do that, which they had determined, that

exëant è suis finibus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt
they may go-out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad eam rem, incendunt
(themselves to have been prepared to that thing, they set-fire-to

omnia sua oppida, ad duodēcim numēro, vicos
all their towns, to twelve in number, streets
 ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia;
(villages) to four-hundred, the remaining private buildings;
 comburant omne frumentum, præter quod, erant
they burnt-up all the corn, except (that) which they were
 portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis
about-to-carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return
 domum sublatâ, essent paratiores ad
home being taken-away, they might be more ready to
 omnia pericula subeunda: jubent quemque
all dangers to be undergone: they order each
 afferre domo sibi molita cibaria trium
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of (for) three
 mensium. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,
months. They persuade to the Rauraci, and to the Tulingi,
 et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti usi
and to the Latobrigi, neighbouring (people), that having used
 eodem consilio, suis oppidis que vicis
with the same counsel, their towns and villages
 exustis, proficiscantur unâ cum iis: que
being burnt up, they may depart together with them: and
 adsciscunt socios sibi, Boios, qui incoluerant
they take-to allies to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt
 trans Rhenum, et transierant in Noricum
beyond the Rhine, and had passed over into the Norican
 agrum, que oppugnarent Noricam, receptos ad
land, and had assaulted Norica, received to
 se.
themselves.

6. Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus
There were in-all two journies (roads), by which
 itineribus possent exire domo; unum
roads they might be able to go forth from home; one
 per Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem
through the Sequani narrow and difficult. between mountain

Juram et flumen Rhodānum, quo singuli
Jura and the river Rhone, by which single

carri vix ducerentur; autem altissimus
waggons scarcely could be led; but the highest (a very

mons impendebat, ut perpauci facile
high) mountain did hang-over, that very few easily

possent prohibere; alterum per nostram
would be able to prohibit; the other through our

provinciam, multo facilius atque expeditius;
province, by-much more easy and more ready;

propter ea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et
because that between the borders of the Helvetii and

Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant,
of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace,

Rhodanus fluit, que is nonnullis locis transitur
the Rhone flows, and that in some places is passed

vado. Geneva est extremum oppidum Allobrogum
by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges

que proximum finibus Helvetiorum; ex eo
and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that

oppido pons pertinet ad Helvetios. Existimabant
town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They did think

sese vel persuasuros Allobrogibus, quod
themselves either about-to-persuade to the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bono animo in
they did seem not-yet with good mind towards

Romanum populum; vel coacturos vi,
the Roman people; or about-to-force by violence,

ut paterentur eos ire per suos fines.
that they should suffer them to go through their borders.

Omnibus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,
All things being prepared to (their) departure,

dicunt diem, qua die omnes conveniant
they say (appoint) a day in which day all may assemble

ad ripam Rhodani. Is dies erat ante quintum
at the bank of the Rhone. That day was before the fifth

diem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucio Pisone,
day of the Kalends of April (27th March); Lucius Piso;
 Aulo Gabinio consulibus.
Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsari,
When that had been told to Cæsar,
 eos conari facere iter per nostram
them to endeavour to make a journey through our
 provinciam, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et
province, he hastens to depart from the city, and
 contendit in ulteriorem Galliam itineribus quam
strains (marches) into farther Gaul by journies as
 maximis potest, et pervenit ad Genevam. Imperat
greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders
 toti provinciae quam maximum
to the whole province (to furnish) as greatest (the greatest
 numerum militum. Una legio erat omnino
possible) number of soldiers. One legion was in-all
 in alteriore Gallia. Jubet pontem, qui erat
in farther Gaul. He orders the bridge, which was
 ad Genevam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetii facti-sunt
at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made
 certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissimos
more certain of the arrival of him, they send the noblest
 civitatis legatos ad eum; cujus legationis
of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy
 Numeius et Verodotius obtinebant principem locum:
Numeius and Verodotius did hold the chief place:
 qui dicent esse sibi in animo,
who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they
 sine ullo maleficio facere iter per
intended), without any mischief to make a journey through
 provinciam, propterea quod haberent (imp. subj.) nullum
the province, because that they did have no
 aliud iter: rogare, ut liceat sibi
other journey (route): to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves

facere id voluntate ejus. Cæsar, quòd tenebat
to do that by the will of him. Cæsar, because he did hold
 memoriâ, Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, que
in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and
 exercitum ejus pulsum ab Helvetiis, et missum
the army of him driven (routed) by the Helvetii, and sent
 sub jûgum, putabat non concedendum; nèque
under the yoke, did think (it) not to be conceded; nor
 existimabat homines inimico animo, facultate
did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty
 itinêris faciundi per provinciam datâ,
of journey to be made through the province being given,
 temperaturos ab injuriâ et maleficio: tamen ut
about-to-refrain from injury and mischief: however that
 spatium posset intercedere, dum milites,
a space might be able to intervene, whilst the soldiers,
 quos imperaverat, convenirent, respondit, se
whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, himself
 sumpturum diem ad deliberandum; si
about-to-take a day (time) to deliberate; if
 vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad
they did will any-thing they might return at
 idus Aprilis.
the ides of April.

8. Interëa eâ legione, quam habebat
Meanwhile with that legion, which he did have
 cum se que militibus qui convenërant ex
with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from
 provinciâ, perducit murum in altitudinem
the province, he leads-along a wall into height
 sexdecim pëdum, que fossam à læcu Lemano,
of sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,
 quem flumen Rhodânus influit, ad montem Juram,
which the river Rhone flows-into, to mountain Jura,
 qui dividit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis,
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

dēcem et nōvem millia pasūum. Eo opĕre
ten and nine (nineteen) thousands of paces. That work

perfecto, disponit præsidiā, communit castella;
being completed, he disposes garrisons, he fortifies castles;

quò posset prohibere facilius, si
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.
they should endeavour to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ēa dies venit, quam constituērat cum
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad eum;
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him;

nēgat se, more et exemplo Romani
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

popūli, posse dāre iter per provinciam ulli;
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facere vim. Helvetii dejecti ēa
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from that

spe, alii, navibus junctis, que compluribus
hope, others (some), ships being joined, and a great-many

ratibus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, quā
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdū,
least depth of river was, sometimes in day-time,

sæpius noctu, conati si possent (imp.
more often by night, having endeavoured if they were able

subj.) perrumpere, repulsi munitione
to break through, repulsed by the fortification

opĕris, et concursu et telis
of the work, and by the encounter and weapons

militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavour.

9. Una via per Sequānos relinquebatur;
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequānis invitīs, potērant non
by which, the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustias. Quum possent (imp.
to go on-account-of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere iis suâ sponte,
not to persuade to them by their-own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorigem Ædūm,
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan,

ut, eo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequānis. Dumnorix potērat plurimum
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most (had very great in-

fluence) with Sequānos gratiâ et largitione, et
the Sequani by favour and by largess, and

erat amicus Helvetiis, quod duxerat in
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonium filiam Orgetorigis ex eâ civitate;
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix out-of that state;

et adductus cupiditate regni, studebat novis
and induced by a desire of (for) power, he did study for new

rebus; et volebat habere quamplurimas
things (revolution); and did will to have very-many

civitates obstrictas suo beneficio sibi. Itaque
states bound by-his benefit to himself. Therefore

suscipit rem, et impetrat à Sequānis,
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetios ire per suos
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

finēs, quæ perficit uti dent obsides inter
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequāni ne prohibeant
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit (that they

Helvetios itinere; Helvetiis,
may not prohibit) the Helvetii from the journey; the Helvetii,

ut transēant sine maleficio et injuriâ.
that they may pass without mischief and injury.

10. Nuntiatur Cæsari, esse Helvetiis in
It is announced to Cæsar, to be to the Helvetii in
 animo, facere iter per agrum
mind, to make the journey through the land
 Sequanorum et Æduorum in fines
of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the borders
 Santonum, qui absunt non longè à
of the Santones, who are distant not far from
 finibus Tolosatium, quæ civitas est in provinciâ.
borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.
 Si id fieret intelligebat futurum
If that should be done he did understand (it) about-to-be
 cum magno pericûlo provinciæ, ut haberet
with great danger of the province, that it should have
 bellicosos homines, inimicos Romani populi,
warlike men, enemies of the Roman people,
 finitimos locis patentibus et maximè
bordering to places open and chiefly
 frumentariis. Ob eas causas præfecit
abounding-in-corn. On-account-of those causes he set-over
 Titum Labienum legatum ei munitioni quam
Titus Labienus lieutenant to that fortification which
 fecerat: ipse contendit in
he had made: he (himself) strained (hastened) into
 Italiâ magnis itineribus quæ ibi conscribit duas
Italy by great journies and there he levies two
 legiones; et educit ex hibernis tres,
legions; and he leads-out out-of winter-quarters three,
 quæ hiemabant circum Aquileiam; et quâ
which did winter around Aquileia; and by which
 iter erat proximum in citeriorem Galliam
(way) the journey was nearest into hither Gaul
 per Alpes, contendit ire cum his
through the Alps, he strains (hastens) to go with these
 quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Garoceli,
five. legions. There the Centrones and the Garoceli,

et Caturiges, superioribus locis occupatis,
and the Caturiges, the higher places being occupied,

conantur prohibere exercitum itinere. His
endeavour to prohibit the army from the journey. These

pulsis compluribus praeliis, pervenit ab
being routed in several battles, he arrived from

Océlo, quod est extremum citerioris provinciæ,
Ocelum, which is the extreme (town) of the hither province,

in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciæ
into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province

septimo die; inde in fines Allobrogum;
in the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercitum ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos.
he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiani.

Hi sunt primi extra provinciâ trans Rhodanum.
These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxerant suas copias
The Helvetii already had led-over their forces

per angustias et fines Sequanorum et
through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenierant in fines Æduorum, que
had arrived into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædui, quum
did lay waste the lands of them. The Ædui when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendere se que
they were able not to defend themselves and

sua ab his, mittunt legatos ad
their-own (effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsarem rogatum auxilium; "se omni tempore"
Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

meritos-esse ita de Romano populo, ut,
to have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercitûs, agri
almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuerint (perf. subj.) non vastari, liberi
ought not to be laid-waste, the children

eorum abduci in servitutem, oppida
of them to be led away into slavery, the towns

expugnari." Eodem tempore, quo
to be taken-by-storm." In the same time, in which

Ædúi, Ambarri quōque, necessarij et consanguinēi
the Ædúi, the Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen

Æduorum, faciunt Cæsārem certiozem,
of the Ædúi, make Cæsar more certain (inform Cæsar),

"sese, agris depopulatis, non facîle prohibere
"themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit

vim hostium ab oppidis." Item
the violence of the enemies from the towns." Likewise

Allobrōges, qui habebant vicos que
the Allobroges, who did have streets (villages) and

possessiones trans Rhodānum, recipiunt se fugā
possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight

ad Cæsārem; et demonstrant, nihil reliqui
to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining (property)

esse sibi præter solum agri. Adductus
to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced

quibus rebus, Cæsar statuit non expectandum
by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited

sibi, dum, omnibus
to (by) himself (that he ought not to wait), until, all

fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetii
the fortunes of the allies being consumed, the Helvetii

pervenirent in Santōnes.
should arrive into the Santones.

12. Arar est flumen, quod influit in
The Arar (the Saone) is a river, which flows into

Rhodānum incredibili lenitate per fines
the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders

Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit
of the Ædúi and of the Sequani; so that it may be able

non judicari oculis in utram partem
not to be judged by the eyes into whether-of-the-two part

fluat. Helveti transibant id, ratibus ac
it flows. The Helvetii did pass-over that, rafts and
 lintribus junctis. Ubi Cæsar factus-est certior
boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain
 per exploratores, Helvetios jam transduxisse
by scouts, the Helvetii already to have-led-over
 id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam
that river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth
 partem esse reliquam citra flumen Ararim;
part to be remaining on-this-side the river Arar (Saone);
 de tertiâ vigiliâ profectus è
from (at) the third watch (midnight) having set-out from
 castris cum tribus legionibus pervenit ad eam
the camps with three legions he arrives to that
 partem, quæ nondum transierat flumen.
part, which not-yet had passed the river.

Aggressus eos impeditos et inopinantes
Having attacked them encumbered and unaware

concidit magnam partem eorum; reliqui
he cut-up (slew) a great part of them; the rest

mandârunt sese fugæ atque abdiderunt in
committed themselves to flight and hid (themselves) into

proximas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:
the nearest woods. That district was called the Tigurine:

nam omnis Helvetia civitas divisa-est in
for all the Helvetian state has been divided into

quatuor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum
four districts. This one district, when

exisset (pl. perf. subj.) domo, memoriâ
it had gone-out from home, in the memory

nostrorum patrum, interfecerat Lucium Cassium
of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius

Consulem, et miserat exercitum ejus sub
the Consul, and had sent the army of him under

jugum. Ita sive casu, sive consilio
the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the counsel

immortalium Deorum, pars Helvetiæ civitatis,
of the immortal Gods, the part of the Helvetian state,

quæ intulêrat insignem calamitatem Romano
which had brought-on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

populo, eâ princeps persolvit pœnas. In quâ
people, that chief (first) paid penalties. In which

re Cæsar ultus-est non solum publicas sed etiam
thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also

privatas injurias; quod Tigurini interfecerant
private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain

Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Lucii
Lucius Piso the lieutenant, grandfather of Lucius

Pisonis soceri ejus, eodem prælio,
Piso, ather-in-law of him (Cæsar), in the same battle.

quo Cassium.
in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc prælio facto, ut posset
This battle being made, that he might be able

conséquì reliquas copias Helvetiorum, curat
to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes-care

pontem faciendum in Ararè, atque ita transducit
a bridge to be made in the Arar, and so leads-over

exercitum. Helvetii commoti repentino adventu
the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival

ejus, quum intelligerent (imp. subj.) illum
of him, when they did understand him

fecisse uno die id, quod ipsi
to have done in one day that, which themselves

confecerant ægerrimè viginti diebus, ut
had accomplished most-hardly in twenty days, that

transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad
they might pass the river, send ambassadors to

eum; cujus legationis Divico fuit princeps, qui
him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who

fuêrat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bello.
had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war

Is ita egit cum Cæsare; "si Romanus
 He thus acted (treated) with Cæsar; "if the Roman
 populus faceret pacem cum Helvetiis, Helvetios
 people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii
 ituros in eam partem, atque futuros
 about-to-go (would go) into that part, and about-to-be
 ibi, ubi Cæsar constitueret atque
 there, where Cæsar might have appointed and
 voluisset esse; sin perseveraret
 might have willed (them) to be; but if he should persevere
 persëqui bello, reminisceretur vetëris
 to pursue with war, he should remember of the old
 incommödi Romani populi, et
 inconvenience (misfortune) of the Roman people, and
 pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum: quod
 of the ancient valour of the Helvetii: because
 adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisò unum pagum,
 he had assaulted unexpectedly one district,
 quum ii, qui transissent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen,
 when those, who had passed the river,
 possent (imp. subj.) non ferre auxilium suis;
 were able not to bring aid to their (men);
 tribuëret ne aut magnopere suæ virtuti
 he should assign not either greatly to his valour
 ob eam rem, aut despiceret ipsos.
 on-account-of that thing or should despise themselves.
 Se ita didicisse à suis patribus
 Themselves so to have learned from their fathers
 que majoribus, ut contendèrent magis
 and ancestors, that they should contend more
 virtute quam niterentur dolo, aut
 by valour than they should strive by deceit, or
 insidiis. Quare committeret ne, ut
 with ambushes. Wherefore he should commit not, that
 is locus, ubi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),
 that place, where they had stood

capĕret nomen ex calamitate Romani
should take (its) name from the calamity of the Roman
 popŭli, et internecione exercitŭs, ac
people, and the destruction of the army, and

prodĕret memoriā.
should deliver (hand down) the memory (of it).

14. Cæsar respondit ita his ; "ĕd
 Cæsar answered thus to these (words); "therefore
 mĭnus dubitationis dāri sĭbi, quòd
less of doubt to be given to himself, because

teneret (imp. subj.) ĕas res memoriā, quas
he did hold those things in memory, which

Helvetii legati commemorāssent (pl. perf.
the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned,

subj.), atque ferre ĕd gravius, quò
 and to bear by that more heavily, by which

 accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mĭnus merito
(because) they had befallen less by the merit

Romani popŭli, qui si fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)
of the Roman people, which if it had been

consciŭs sĭbi alicujus injuriæ, fuisse non
conscious to itself of some injury, to have been not

difficile cavere ; sed deceptum ĕo, quòd
difficult to beware but being deceived in this, because

nĕque intelligĕret (imp. subj.) commissum
neither it did understand (fault) committed

à se, quare timeret ; nĕque putaret
by itself, wherefore it should fear ; nor did it think

(imp. subj.) timendum sine causā. Quòd si
 to be feared without cause. But if

vellet (imp. subj.) oblivisci vetĕris contumeliæ,
he did will to forget of the ancient insult,

num etiā posset deponĕre memoriā
whether also would he be able to lay-down the memory

recentium injuriarum, quòd, ĕo invito,
of fresh injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,

tentâssent (pl. perf. subj.) iter per Provinciâ
they had attempted a journey through the Province

per vim, quòd vexâssent (pl. perf. subj.) Ædūs,
by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,

quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrōges? Quòd
that the Ambarri, that the Allobroges? That

gloriarentur (imp. subj.) tam insolenter sũâ victoriã;
they did boast so insolently in their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injurias
and that they did wonder himself to have borne the injuries

impunè tam dũ, pertinere eòdem.
with-impunity so long, to pertain to the same (point).

Enim immortales Dēos consuēsse,
For the immortal Gods to have been accustomed,

quò homines dolēant gravius ex
in-order-that men may grieve more heavily from

commutatione rerum, quos vellent ulcisci
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelere eorum, interdum concedere
for the wickedness of them, sometimes to grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem
more prosperous things to these, and more-lasting

impunitatem. Cũ ẽa sint (pres. subj.)
impunity. When (since) those (things) are

ita, tãmen si obsides dentur sibi ab iis,
so, yet if hostages may be given to himself by them,

ũt intelligat facturos ẽa
that he may understand (them) about-to-do those (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfaciant
which they promise; and if they may satisfy

Ædũis de injuriis, quas
to the Ædui concerning the injuries, which

intulẽrint (perf. subj.) ipsis que sociis
they have brought-on to themselves and to the allies

eorum, item si Allobrogibus, sese esse
of them, likewise if to the Allobroges, himself to be

facturum pacem cum iis." Divico respondit :
about-to-make peace with them." Divico answered :

" Helvetios institutos-esse ita à majoribus,
" the Helvetii to have been instructed so by (their) ancestors,

ut consueverint (perf. subj.) accipere, non dare
that they have been accustomed to receive, not to give

obsides ; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."
hostages ; the Roman people to be witness of that thing."

Hoc responso dato, discessit.
This answer being given, he departed.

15. Postero die movent castra ex eo
On the following day they move the camps from that

loco. Cæsar facit idem ; que præmittit
place. Cæsar does the same ; and sends-forward

omnem equitatum ad numerum quatuor millium,
all the cavalry to the number of four thousands,

quem habebat coactum ex omni provinciâ,
which he did have collected from all the province,

et a Eduis atque sociis eorum ;
and from the Ædui and from the allies of them ;

qui videant in quas partes hostes faciant
who may see into what parts the enemies may make

iter : qui, insecuti cupidius
(their) journey : who, having followed-up more (too) eagerly

novissimum agmen, committunt prælium
the last troop (the rear), join battle

cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno
with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange (unfavourable)

loco, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo
place, and a few of our (men) fall. By which

prælio Helvetii sublati, quod quingentis
battle the Helvetii being elated, because with five-hundred

equitibus propulerant tantam multitudinem
horsemen they had repulsed so-great a multitude

equitum, coeperunt subsistere audacius ;
of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly .

nonnunquam ⁊ ex novissīmo agmīne lacessere
sometimes out-of the last troop (the rear) to challenge
 praelio nostros. Cæsar continebat suos
with battle our (men). Cæsar did withhold his (men)
 à praelio, ac habebat satis in
from battle, and did have (thought it) enough in
 præsentiâ, prohibere hostem
presentness (for the present), to prohibit the enemy
 rapinis, pabulationibus, que populationibus.
from rapines, from foragings, and from wastings.
 Ita circiter quindēcim dies fecerunt iter,
So about fifteen days they made the journey,
 ūt inter novissimum agmen hostium et
that between the last troop of the enemies and
 nostrum primum, non ampliùs quinīs aut
our first (van), not more (than) five or
 senis millibus passuum interesset.
(than) six thousands of paces might intervene.

16. Intērim Cæsar quotidie flagi-
Meanwhile Cæsar (began) daily to demand-
 tare Ædūos frumentum, quod pol-
earnestly from the Ædui the corn, which they
 liciti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) publicè. Nam propter
had promised publicly. For on-account-of
 frigōra (quòd Gallia posita est sub
the colds (because Gaul is situated towards
 Septentrionibus (pl.), ut dictum-est antè,) non
the North, as has been said before,) not
 mōdò frumenta erant non matura in agris sed
only the corns were not ripe in the lands but
 ne quidem satis magna copia, pabuli
not indeed (even) sufficiently great plenty, of forage
 suppetebat. Autem potērat minùs uti ēo
was supplied. But he was able less to use with that
 frumento, quod subvexerat navibus flumine
corn, which he had-carried-up in ships by the river

Aräre, propterëa quòd Helvetiï avertërant
Arar, because that the Helvetii had turned-away

ïter ab Aräre, à quïbus nolebat
the journey from the Arar, from which he was unwilling

discedëre. Ædúi ducëre
to depart. The Ædui (began) to lead (to put off)

dïem ex dïe, dicëre conferri,
day from (after) day, to say (the corn) to be brought-together,

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit
to be conveyed, to be-present (at hand). When he understood

se duci diutiùs, et dïem instare,
himself to be led (put-off) longer, and the day to urge-on

quo dïe oporteret metiri
(drew near), in which day it would behove to measure-out

frumentum militïbus; principïbus eorũ
corn to the soldiers; the chiefs of them

convocatis, quorum habebat magnũ
being called together, of whom he did have a great

numërum in castris, in his Divitiãũ
number in the camps, in (among) these Divitiacus

et Lisco, qui præerat summo magistratũ
and Liscus, who was-over the highest magistracy

(quem Ædúi appellant Vergobretum, qui creatur
(whom the Ædui name Vergobretus, who is created

annũs que hæbet potestatem vitæ que nēcis
annual and has the power of life and of death

in sũos), accusat eos gravíter,
over his-own (people), he accuses them heavily,

quòd quum posset (imp. subj.) nēque emi,
because when it was able neither to be bought,

nēque sumi ex agris, tempore tam
nor to be taken from the lands, in a time so

necessario, hostibus tam propinquis,
necessary, the enemies (being) so & near,

sublevetur (pres. subj.) non ab iis; præsertim quum,
he is succoured not by them; especially when,

[ex] magnā parte adductus precibus eorum
 from great part induced by the prayers of them

suscepērit (perf. subj.) bellum : queritur etiam
 he has undertaken the war : he complains also

multō gravius quōd destitutus-sit (perf. subj.).
 by much the more heavily that he has been left destitute (of corn).

17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione
 Then at-last Liscus induced by the speech

Cæsāris, proponit quod antēa tacuerat :
 of Cæsar, sets-forth (that) which before he had kept-silent :

esse nonnullos, auctoritas quorum
 to be (that there are) some, the authority of whom

valēat (pres. subj.) plurimūm apud plebem,
 avails most (very much) with common-people,

qui privati possint (pres. subj.) plus
 who (being) private (persons) can (do) more

quā magistratus ipsi, hos seditiosā
 than the magistrates themselves, these by seditious

et imprōbā oratione detertere multitudinem ne
 and wicked speech to deter the multitude lest

conferant frumentum ; quōd dicant
 they may bring-together the corn ; because they say

(pres. subj.) præstare, si jam possint
 to excel (to be better), if now they may be able

non obtinere principatum Galliae, perferre
 not to obtain the sovereignty of Gaul, to endure

imperia Gallorum quā Romanorum ; neque
 the commands of the Gauls than of the Romans ; nor

debēant (pres. subj.) dubitare quin, si Romani
 ought they to doubt but-that, if the Romans

superaverint Helvetios, sint (pres. subj.)
 shall have overcome the Helvetii, they are

erepturi libertatem. Aeduis unā
 about to snatch-away liberty from the Aedui together

cum reliquā Galliā : ab iisdem nostra
 with remaining Gaul : by the same (persons) our

consilia, quæque gerantur (pres. subj.) in castris,
counsels, whatsoever are carried-on in the camps,

enuntiari hostibus hos posse non
to be announced to the enemies; these to be able (could) not

coërceri à se: quin-etiam, quòd
to be restrained by himself: moreover, because

enuntiârit (perf. subj.) rem necessariò Cæsari,
he told the thing necessarily to Cæsar,

sese intelligere cum quanto periculò
himself to understand with how-great danger

fecërit (perf. subj.) id; et ob eam causam
he has done it; and for that cause

tacuisse quamdiu potuerit. (perf. subj.)
to have kept-silence as-long-as he could.

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorigem fratrem
Cæsar did perceive Dumnorix the brother

Divitiâci designari hac oratione Lisci;
of Divitiacus to be marked-out by this speech of Liscus;

sed, quòd nolebat eas res jactari
but, because he did-not-will those things to be tossed

pluribus præsentibus, dimittit
(debated) more (being) present, he dismisses

concilium, retinet Liscum: quærit ex
the council, he retains Liscus: he seeks from (him)

solo ea, quæ dixerat in conventu.
alone those (things), which he had said in the assembly.

Dicit liberius, atque audacius. Reperit
He speaks more-freely, and more-boldly. He finds

eâdem esse vera ab aliis secretò.
the same (things) to be true from others apart.

Dumnorigem ipsum esse summâ audaciâ,
Dumnorix himself to be with (of) the highest boldness,

magnâ gratiâ apud plebem propter
in great favour with the common-people on-account-of

liberalitatem, cupidum novarum rerum;
(his) liberality, desirous of new things (revolution);

habere portoria que omnia reliqua
to have the customs-duties and all the remaining
 vectigalia Æduorum complures annos redempta
taxes of the Ædui many years purchased
 parvo pretio; propter eam quod, ille licente, nemo
for a small price; because that, he bidding, no-one
 audëat (pres. subj.) liceri contrà; his rebus
dares to bid against (him); by these things
 et auxisse suam familiarem rem, et
both to have increased his family estate, and
 comparasse magnas facultates ad largiendum
to have procured great means to bestow:
 semper alere magnum numerum equitatus
always to maintain a great number of cavalry
 suo sumptu, et habere circum
at his-own expense, and to have (them) around
 se: neque posse largiter solum
himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely only
 domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates; atque
at home, but also with the bordering states; and
 caussâ hujus potentiæ, collocasse
by reason of this power, to have placed (given in
 marriage) (his) matrem in Biturigibus, homini illic
mother in the Bituriges, to a man there
 nobilissimo et potentissimo; ipsum habere uxorem
most-noble and most-powerful; himself to have a wife
 ex Helvetiis collocasse sororem ex
out-of the Helvetii: to have placed a sister out-of
 matre, et suas propinquas nuptum in alias
mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other
 civitates: favere et cupere Helvetiis
states: to favour and to desire (wish well) to the Helvetii
 propter eam affinitatem: etiam odisse
on-account-of that alliance: also to have hated
 Cæsarem et Romanos suo nomine,
Cæsar and the Romans from his-own name (account),

quòd potentia ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)
because the power of him has been diminished

adventu eorum, et Divitiācus frater restitutus
by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored

in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris: si
into the ancient place of favour and of honour: if

quid accīdat Romanis, venire in
any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into

summam spem regni obtinendi per
the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through

Helvetios; imperio Romani populi, non
the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not

modò desperare de regno, sed etiam de eā
only to despair of the kingdom, but also of that

gratiā quam habēat. (pres. subj.) Cæsar etiam reperiebat
favour which he has. Cæsar also did find

inquirendo, quòd adversum prælium equestre (adj.)
by inquiring, that the adverse battle of cavalry

factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis diebus antè,
had been made in a few days before,

initium ejus fugæ factum-esse à Dumnorige
the beginning of that flight to have been made by Dumnorix

atque equitibus ejus, (nam Dumnorix præerat
and by the horsemen of him, (for Dumnorix was-over

equitatui, quem Ædui miserant
(commanded) to the cavalry, which the Ædui had sent

auxilio Cæsari;) que fugā eorum reliquum
for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight of them the remaining

equitatum perterritum-esse.
cavalry to have been dismayed.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum certissimæ
Which things being known, when surest

res accedērent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;
things did accede (confirmed) to these suspicions;

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetios per
because he (Dumnorix) had led-over the Helvetii through

fines Sequanorum ; quòd curâsset
the borders of the Sequani ; because he had taken-care

(pl. perf. subj.) obsides dandos inter eos : quòd
hostages to be given between them : because

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnia ãa non modò
he had done all those (things) not only

injussu sũo et civitatis, sed etiã
without-order his (of him) and of the state, but also

ipsis inscientibus ; quòd accusaretur (imp. subj.)
themselves not-knowing ; because he was accused

à magistratu Æduorum ; arbitrabatur sãtis
by the magistrate of the Ædui ; he (Cæsar) did deem enough

caussæ esse quare, aut ipse animadverteret
of cause to be wherefore, either himself should animadvert

in eũ, aut juberet civitatem animadvertẽre.
(punish) upon him, or should order the state to punish (him).

Unum repugnabat omnibus his, quòd cognovêrat
One (thing) did oppose to all these, that he had known

summum studium fratris Divitiãci in
the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto

Romanum popũlum, summam voluntatem in se,
the Roman people, (his) highest good-will unto himself,

egregiam fidem, justitiã, temperantiã. Nam
(his) pre-eminent faith, justice, temperance. For

verebatur, ne offendêret animum Divitiãci
he did fear, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicio ejus. Itãque prius quàm
by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than

conaretur quidquam, jũbet Divitiãcum
he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se ; et quotidianis
to be called to himself ; and the daily (usual)

interpretibus remotis, colloquitur cum eo,
interpreters being removed, he converses with him,

per Caiũ Valerũum Procillum, principem
through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provinciæ Galliae, suum familiarem, cui
of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to whom
 habebat summam fidem omnium rerum;
he did have the highest faith (confidence) of all things;

simul commonefacit, quæ dicta-sint
at-the-same-time he reminds, what (things) may have been said

de Dumnorige in concilio Gallorum, ipso
of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself (Divitiacus)

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixerit
(being) present; and shows what every-one has said

(perf. subj.) separatim de eo apud se: petic
separately of him to himself (Caesar): he asks

atque hortatur ut, sine offensione animi ejus,
and exhorts that, without offence of the mind of him,

vel ipse statuat de eo, causâ
either he himself (Caesar) may determine of him, (his) case

cognitâ; vel jubeat civitatem statuere.
being known; or may order the state to pass judgment.

20. Divitiâcus complexus Cæsarem cum multis
Divitiacus having embraced Caesar with many

lacrymis coepit obsecrare, "ne-statuëret
tears began to beseech, "that he would not determine

quid gravius in fratrem; se
any-thing more heavy against (his) brother; himself

scire illa esse vera nec quenquam capere
to know those (things) to be true; nor any-one to take

plus doloris ex eo, quàm se; propterea quòd
more of grief from that, than himself; because that

(quum ipse posset (imp. subj.) plurimum gratiâ
(when himself was able (to do) most in influence

dõmi atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimum
at home, and in the remaining Gaul, he (Dumnorix) least

propter adolescentiam) crevisset (pl. perf. subj.)
on-account-of (his) youth) had increased (in power)

per se; quibus opibus ac nervis
through himself (Divitiacus); which means and nerves (strength)

uteretur (imp. subj.) non solum ad gratiam
he did use not only to ((Divitiatus') influence

minuendam, sed penè ad suam perniciem ;
to be diminished, but almost to his destruction ;

sese tamen commoveri et fraterno amore
himself however to be moved both by fraternal love

et existimatione vulgi : quòd si
and by the esteem of the common-people : because if

quid gravius accidisset ei
any (thing) more heavy should have happened to him

à Cæsare, cum ipse teneret (imp. subj.)
from Cæsar, when he himself did hold

eam locum amicitiae apud eum, neminem
that place of friendship with him, no-one

existimaturum non factum sua voluntate ;
about-to-think (the thing) not done with his will ;

futurum ex qua re, uti animi
about-to-be from which thing, that the minds

totius Galliae averterentur à se."
of the whole Gaul would be turned-away from himself."

Quum flens peteret (imp. subj.) hæc
When weeping he did seek these (things)

à Cæsare pluribus verbis, Cæsarprehendit
from Cæsar in many words, Cæsar takes

dextram ejus ; consolatus, rogat (ut)
the right-hand of him ; having consoled, he asks (that)

faciat finem orandi : ostendit gratiam
he may make an end of praying : he shows the favour

ejus esse tanti apud se, uti
of him to be of so-much (account) with himself, that

condonet et injuriam Reipublicæ et
he might forgive both the injury of the Republic and

suum dolorem, voluntati ac precibus
his-own grief, to the will and to the prayers

ejus. Vocat Dumnorigem ad se ; adhibet
of him. - He calls Dumnorix to himself ; he applies

fratrem ; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres.
(sends for) brother ; he shows what he blames

subj.) in eo ; proponit quæ ipse intelligat
in him ; he sets-forth what himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civitas queratur (pres. subj.) ;
what the state complains-of ;

mōnet, ut vitet omnes suspiciones in
he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into (for)

reliquum tempus ; dicit se condonare
the remaining time ; he says himself to forgive

præterita fratri Divitiāco. Ponit
past (things) to (his) brother Divitiacus. He places

custodes Dumnorīgi, ut possit scire
keepers to Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ āgat (pres. subj.) cum quibus
what (things) he does with whom

loquatur (pres. subj.)
he speaks.

21. Eodem die factus certior ab
In the same day being made more sure by

exploratoribus, hostes consedissee sub
scouts, the enemies to have sat-down under (at the

montem, octo millia passuum ab
foot of) the mountain, eight thousands of paces from

castris ipsius ; misit qui cognoscērent,
the camps of himself ; he sent (persons) who might know,

qualis esset natura montis, et
what-sort might be the nature of the mountain, and

qualis ascensus in circuitu : renuntiatum-est
what-sort the ascent in a circuit : it was announced

esse facilem. De tertîâ vigiliâ jūbet
to be easy. From (at) the third watch he orders

Titum Labienum legatum pro Prætore
Titus Labienus lieutenant for Prætor (with prætorian powers)

cum duabus legionibus, et iisdem duobus, qui
with two legions, and the same guides. who

cognovĕrant ĭter, ascendĕre summum, jŭgum
had known the route, to ascend the highest top

montis ; ostendit quid sit sŭi consili.
of the mountain ; he shows what may be of his counsel

Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ
(design). He himself from (at) the fourth watch

eodem itinĕre, quo hostes iĕrant,
by the same route, by which the enemies had gone,

contendit ad ĕos, que mittit antè omnem equitatum.
hastens to them, and sends before all the cavalry.

Publius Considius, qui habebatur peritissimus
Publius Considius, who was deemed most-skilled

militaris rĕi, et fuĕrat in exercĭtu Lucii
of military affair, and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postĕa in Marci Crassi,
Sylla, and afterwards in (the army) of Marcus Crassus,

præmittitur cum exploratoribus.
is sent-forward with the scouts.

22. Primâ luce, quum summus mons
In the first light, when the highest mountain

teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse
was held by Titus Labienus, he himself

abesset (imp. subj.) non longius mille et
was absent not farther (than) a thousand and

quingentis passibus ab castris hostium ;
five-hundred paces from the camps of the enemies

nĕque, ut compĕrit postĕa ex captivis,
nor, as he found afterwards from the captives,

aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni
either the arrival of himself, or of Labienus

cognitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) ; Considius, ĕquo
had been known ; Considius, (his) horse

admisso, accurrit ad ĕum ; dicit.
being spurred-on, runs to him ; he says,

montem quem voluĕrit (perf. subj.) occupari
the mountain which he willed to be occupied

à Labieno, teneri ab hostibus : se
by Labienus, to be held by the enemies : himself

cognovisse id à Gallicis armis atque insignibus.
to have known that from Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit suas copias in proximum collem,
Cæsar leads-away his forces into the nearest hill,

instruit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-erat
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ei à Cæsare, ne-committeret prælium,
to him by Cæsar, that he should not engage battle,

nisi copiae ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
unless the forces of himself had been seen

prope castra hostium, ut impetus fieret
near the camps of the enemies, that the attack might be made

in hostes undique uno tempore,
against the enemies on-every-side in one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros,
the mountain being occupied, did await our (men),

que abstinebat prælio. Denique, multo die
and did abstain from battle. Finally, in much day

Cæsar cognovit per
(when the day was far advanced Cæsar knew by

exploratores, et montem teneri à suis,
scouts, both the mountain to be held by his-own

et hostes movisse castra, et
(men), and the enemies to have moved camps, and

Considium perterritum timore renuntiâsse pro
Considius dismayed by fear to have related for

viso, quod vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) non.
seen, (that) which he had seen not.

Eo die, intervallo quo consuebat,
In that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequitur hostes, et ponit castra tria millia
he follows the enemies, and places camps three thousands

passuum ab castris eorum.
of paces from the camps of them.

23. Post-idie ejus diei, quodd biduum
The day-after of that day, because space-of-two-days
 omnino supererat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)
altogeth-r did remain, when it did behove
 metiri frumentum, exercitu (exercitui); et
to measure-out corn to the army; and
 quodd aberat à Bibracte, longè
because he was distant from Bibracte, far
 maximo ac copiosissimo oppido Æduorum,
the greatest and most-wealthy town of the Ædui,
 non amplius octodècim millibus passuum;
not more (than) eighteen thousands of paces;
 existimavit prospiciendum frumentariæ rei;
he deemed should be provided the corn thing (supply);
 et avertit iter ab Helvetiis ac
and he turns-away the journey from the Helvetii and
 contendit ire Bibracte. Ea res nuntiatur
hastens to go (to) Bibracte. That thing is announced
 hostibus per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii,
to the enemies by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,
 Decurionis equitum Gallorum. Helvetii,
Captain of horsemen of Gauls. The Helvetii,
 seu quodd existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani
either because they did deem the Romans
 discedere perterritos timore, eo magis quodd
to depart dismayed with fear, by that more because
 pridie superioribus locis occupatis,
the-day-before the higher places being occupied,
 commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non prœlium, sive
they had committed not battle, or
 quodd confiderent (imp. subj.) posse inter-
because they did trust to be able to be inter-
 cludi frumentariâ re; consilio
cepted from corn thing (provisions); (their) counsel
 commutato atque itinere converso, cœperunt
being altered and the route being changed, they began

insēqui ac lacesſere nostros à novissīmo
to follow-up and to provoke our (men) from the last
 agmīne.
troop.

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit
After-that Cæsar observed that, he leads-away
 suas copias in proximū collem que misit equitatum,
his forces into the nearest hill and sent cavalry,
 qui sustineret impetū hostiū. Ipse
which might sustain the attack of the enemies. Himself
 intērim instruxit triplicem aciem quatuor veteranarum
meanwhile arrayed a triple line of four veteran
 legionum in mediō colle; ita ūti collocaret
legions in the middle hill; so that he might place
 supra se, in summo jūgo, duas legiones quas
above himself, in the highest top, two legions which
 conscripsērat proximē in citeriore Galliā, et omniū
he had levied very-lately in hither Gaul, and all
 auxilia, et compleret totum montem
the aids (auxiliaries), and might fill the whole mountain
 hominibus. Interēa jussit sarcinas
with men. In-the-reen-time he ordered the baggages
 conferri in unum locum et eum
to be brought-together into one place and it
 muniri ab iis, qui constitērant in superiore
to be fortified by those, who had stood in the higher
 acie. Helvetii, secuti cum omnibus suis
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their
 carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum
waggons, brought-together the baggages into one
 locum: ipsi confertissimā acie, nostro equitatu
place: themselves in thickest line, our cavalry
 rejecto, phalange factā, successerunt
being thrown-back, a phalanx being made, came-up
 sub nostram primam aciem.
under our first line.

25. Cæsar, sũo primũm, deinde ěquis
Cæsar, his-own (horse) first, then the horses
 omnĩum remotis ě conspectu, ut pericũlo
of all being removed from sight, that the danger
 æquato, tollĕret spem fũgæ,
being made-equal, he might take-away the hope of flight,
 cohortatus sũos, commisit prœliũm.
having encouraged his (men), engaged battle.
 Milĩtes, pilis missis ě superiore lœco,
The soldiers, javelins being sent from the higher place,
 facĩlĕ perfregerunt phalangem hostĩum : ěâ
easily broke-through the phalanx of the enemies : it
 disiectâ, fecerunt impĕtum in ěos districtis
being dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn
 gladiis. Erat magno impedimento Gallis ad
swords. It was to great impediment to the Gauls to
 pugnam, quòd plurĩbus scutis eorum transfixis
the fight, that many shields of them being pierced-through
 et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cũm
and bound-together by one stroke of javelins, when
 ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, potĕrant
the iron had bent-in itself, they were able
 nĕque evellĕre, nĕque, sinistrâ impeditâ,
neither to pluck-out, nor, the left (hand) being entangled,
 pugnare sãtis commòdĕ : ut multi, brachiõ
to fight sufficiently conveniently : that many, the arm
 diũ jactato, prœoptarent (imp. subj.)
a long-time being tossed-about, wished-rather
 emittĕre scutum mǎnu, et pugnare nudo
to send-forth shield from the hand, and to fight with naked
 corpore. Tandem defessi vulnerĩbus cœperunt et
body. At length wearied with wounds they began both
 referre pĕdem, et quòd mons
to carry-back foot (to retreat), and because the mountain
 subĕrat circĩter mille passũm,
was-under (was at hand) about a thousand of paces,

recipere se eò. Monte capto,
to betake themselves thither. The mountain being taken,
 et nostris succedentibus, Boii et Tulingi,
and our (men) going-up, the Boii and Tulingi,
 qui claudabant agmen hostium circiter
who did close the troop of the enemies (with) about
 quindécim millibus hominum, et erant præsidio
fifteen thousands of men, and were for a guard
 novissimis, aggressi nostros, ex
to the last (rear), having attacked our (men) from (on)
 itinere aperto latere, circumvenire ;
(their, route in open side (flank), (began) to surround ;
 et Helvetii qui receperant se in
and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves unto
 montem, conspicati id, coeperunt rursus
the mountain, having beheld that, began again
 instare et redintegrare prælium. Romani
to press-on and to renew the battle. The Romans
 intulerunt signa conversa tripartitò ;
brought-on (advanced) the standards turned in-three-parts ;
 prima ac secunda acies, ut resisteret
the first and second line, that it might resist
 victis et submotis ; tertia ut
to the conquered and moved-away (repulsed) ; the third that
 exciperet venientes. Ita pugnatum-est
it might receive (those) coming. Thus it was fought
 ancipiti prælio diu atque acriter.
with doubtful battle a long-time and sharply.
 26. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non sustinere
When they were able not to sustain
 impetum nostrorum diutius, alteri receperunt
the attack of our (men) longer, others (some) betook
 se in montem, ut coeperant ; alteri
themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun ; others
 contulerunt se ad impedimenta et suos
brought-together themselves to the baggages and their

carros. Nam hoc toto praelio, quum
waggon. For in this whole battle, when (although)

pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septimâ horâ
it was fought from the seventh hour (one o'clock)

ad vesp̄eram, nemo potuit videre hostem aversum.
to evening, no one was able to see the enemy turned-away.

Pugnatum-est etiã ad multam noctem ad impedimenta:
It was fought also to much night at the baggages:

propterẽa quod objecerant carros pro vallo.
because that they had opposed waggon for rampart,

et conjiciebant tela è superiore loco in
and did throw weapons from a higher place upon

nostros venientes, et nonnulli subiciebant mat̄aras
our (men) coming, and some did throw-under spears

ac tragulas inter carros que rotas, que
and darts between the waggon and wheels, and

vulnerabant nostros. Quum pugnatum-esset
did wound our (men). When it had been fought

(pl. perf. subj.) diu, nostri potiti-sunt
a long-time, our (men) gained

impedimentis que castris. Ibi filia Orgetorigis,
the baggages and camps. There a daughter of Orgetorix.

atque unus è filiis captus-est. Superfuerunt
and one out of (his) sons was taken. There survived

ex eo praelio circiter centum et triginta millia
out of that battle about a hundred and thirty thousands

hominum, que ierunt continenter eã totâ nocte;
of men, and they went incessantly in that whole night;

itinere intermisso nullam partem noctis,
the journey being intermitted no part of the night,

quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingonum;
in the fourth day they arrived into the borders of the Lingones;

quum nostri morati triduum
when our (men) having delayed the space-of-three-days

et propter vulnera militum et
both on-account of the wounds of the soldiers and

propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent
on-account-of the burial of the slain, had been able

(pl. perf. subj.) non sequi eos. Cæsar misit litēras
not to follow them. Cæsar sent letters

que nuntios ad Lingōnes, ne-juvarent
and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not-assist

eos frumento neve aliā re: qui si
them with corn nor with other thing: who if

juvisent, se habiturum illos
they should have assisted (them), himself about-to-have them

eodem loco, quo Helvetios. Ipse,
in the same place (light), in which the Helvetii. Himself,

triduo intermisso, coepit sequi
the space-of-three-days being intermitted, began to follow

eos cum omnibus copiis.
them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetii, adducti inopiā omnium rerum,
The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,

miserunt legatos ad eum de deditione:
sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender:

qui cum convenissent (pl. perf. subj.) eum in itinēre,
who when they had met him in (his) journey,

que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pedes,
and had thrown-down themselves at (his) feet,

que locuti suppliciter, flentes petissent
and having spoken suppliantly, weeping had sought.

(pl. perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl. perf. subj.)
peace, and he had ordered

eos expectare suum adventum in eo loco, quo
them to await his arrival in that place, in which

tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar
then they were, they obeyed. After-that Cæsar

pervenit eò, poposcit obsides, arma, servos, qui
arrived there, he demanded hostages, arms, slaves, who

perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eos. Dum ea
had fled to them. Whilst those,

conquiruntur et conferuntur,
(things) are sought-for and are brought-together,
 nocte intermissâ, circiter sex
a night being intermitted (having intervened), about six
 millia hominum ejus pagi, qui appellatur
thousands of men of that district, which is named
 Verbigenus, sive perterriti timore, ne, armis
Verbigenus, either frightened by fear, lest, (their) arms
 traditis, afficerentur supplicio; sive
being delivered, they should be affected with punishment; or
 inducti spe salutis, quod in tantâ multitudîne
induced by hope of safety, because in so-great multitude
 dedititiorum, existimarent (imp. subj.) suam fugam
of (those) surrendered they did think their flight
 posse aut occultari aut ignorari
to be able either to be concealed or to be unknown
 omnino; primâ vigiliâ noctis, egressi ex
altogether; in first watch of night, having gone-out from
 castris Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum que
the camps of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine and
 fines Germanorum.
borders of the Germans.

28. Quod ubi Cæsar rescivit, imperavit his,
Which when Cæsar knew, he ordered to these,
 per fines quorum ierant, uti
through the borders of whom they had gone, that
 conquirerent et reducèrent, si
they should search-for and should lead-back, if
 vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sibi. Habuit
they did will to be cleared to himself. He had
 reductos in numëro hostium: accepit omnes
(those) led-back in the number of enemies: he received all
 reliquos in deditionem, obsidibus, armis, perfugis
remaining into surrender, hostages, arms, deserters
 traditis. Jussit Helvetios, Tulingos,
being delivered-up. He ordered the Helvetii, Tulingi,

Latobrigos, reverti in suos fines, unde
Latobrigi, to return into their borders, whence
 profecti-erant; et quòd, omnibus frugibus amissis,
they had set-out; and because, all fruits being lost,
 nihil erat dòmi, quo tolerarent fàmem,
nothing was at-home, by which they might bear hunger,
 imperavit Allobrogibus, ut facerent
he ordered to the Allobroges, that they should make (supply)
 copiam frumenti his; jussit ipsos restituere
plenty of corn to them; he ordered themselves to restore
 oppida que vicos, quos incenderant. Fecit
the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did
 id maxime eà ratione, quòd noluit
that chiefly with that reason, because he willed-not
 eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare;
that place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be-void;
 ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,
lest on-account-of the goodness of the lands, the Germans,
 qui incolunt trans Rhenum, transirent è
who inhabit beyond the Rhine, should pass-over from
 suis finibus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent
their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be
 finitimi provinciæ Galliæ que Allobrogibus.
neighbouring to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges
 Concessit Ædùis petentibus, ut collocarent
He granted to the Ædui asking, that they might place
 Boios in suis finibus, (quòd cogniti-erant
the Boii in their borders, (because they had been known
 egregiâ virtute): quibus illi dederunt agros, que
by excellent valour): to whom they gave lands, and
 quos receperunt postea in parem conditionem
whom they received afterwards into equal condition
 juris que libertatis atque ipsi erant.
of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulæ confectæ
In the camps of the Helvetii tablets made

Græcis litēris repertæ-sunt, et perlatæ ad Cæsārem;
in Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar;

in quibus tabulis ratio confecta-erat
in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numērus eorum exisset (pl. perf.
name-by-name, what number of them had gone-forth

subj.) dōmo, qui possent (imp. subj.) ferre arma,
from-home, who were-able to bear arms,

et item separatim puēri, sēnes que muliēres.
and likewise separately boys, old-men and women.

Summa omnium quarum rerum erat, ducenta
The sum of all which things was, two hundred

sexaginta et tria millia capitum Helvetiorum;
sixty and three thousands of heads of the Helvetii;

triginta et sex millia Tulingorum; quatuordēcim
thirty and six thousands of the Tulingi; fourteen

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et tria; Boiorum
of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three; of the Boii

triginta et duo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)
thirty and two. Of this, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et duo millia. Summa
to bear arms to ninety and two thousands. The sum

omnium fuerat ad trecenta sexaginta et
(total) of all had been at three-hundred sixty and

octo millia. Censu habito, ut Cæsar
eight thousands. Registering being had, as Cæsar

imperaverat, numērus eorum, qui redierunt dōmum,
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

repertus-est centum et decem millia.
was found a hundred and ten thousands.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati
The war of the Helvetii being finished, ambassadors

fērē totius Galliæ, principes civitatum, convenerunt
almost of the whole Gaul, chiefs of states, came together

ad Cæsārem gratulatum: "sese, intelligere,
to Cæsar to congratulate: "themselves, to understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetisset (pl. perf. subj.)
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis
penalties from them in war for ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non
of the Helvetii; yet that thing to have happened not

minus ex usu terræ Galliæ,
less out-of use (to the advantage) of the land of Gaul,

quàm Romani populi; propter eam quòd eo
than of the Roman people; because that with that

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent
counsel, in most-flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent
their houses, that they might bring-on

bellum toti Galliæ que potirentur imperio (abl.);
war to the whole Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magnâ copiâ,
and might choose a place for abode out-of great plenty,

quem judicassent opportunissimum ac
which they might have judged most convenient and

fructuosissimum ex omni Galliâ; que haberent
most-fruitful out-of all Gaul; and might have

reliquas civitates stipendiarias." Petierunt, ut
the remaining states tributary." They asked, that

"liceret sibi indicere concilium
"it might be-lawful to themselves to proclaim a council

totius Galliæ in certam diem, que facere id
of whole Gaul upon a certain day, and to do that

voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdam res,
with will of Cæsar. Themselves to have certain things,

quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è
which they did will to ask from him out-of*

communi consensu." Eâ re permissâ,
common consent." That thing being permitted,

constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt
they appointed a day for a council, and ratified

jurejurando inter se, ne quis
by oath between themselves, (that) not any-one
 enuntiaret nisi quibus mandatum-esset (pl.
should divulge (it), unless to whom it had been enjoined
 perf. subj.) communi consilio.
by common consent.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes
That council being dismissed, the same chiefs
 civitatum, qui fuerant antè, reverterunt ad
of states, who had been before, returned to
 Cæsarem; que petierunt, uti "liceret
Cæsar; and asked, that "it might be lawful
 sibi agere secretò cum eo de
to themselves to act (treat) secretly with him about
 suâ salute que omnium." Eâ re
their safety and (that) of all That thing
 impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese
being obtained, all weeping cast themselves
 ad pèdes Cæsari; "se non minùs
at the feet to (of) Cæsar; "themselves not less
 contendere et laborare id, ne eâ
to strive-after and to labour-for that, lest those (things)
 quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,
which they had said should be divulged,
 quàm uti impetrarent eâ, quæ
than that they might obtain those (things), which
 vellent (imp. subj.); propter eâ quòd si enun-
they did will; because that if it should
 tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se
have been divulged, they did see themselves
 venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiâcus
about-to-come into the highest torture." Divitiacus
 Ædûus locutus-est pro his: "esse dñas
the Æduan spoke for these: "to be two
 factiones totius Galliæ; Ædûos tenere
factions of the whole Gaul; the Ædui to hold

principatum alterius harum, Arvernos
sovereignty of the other (one) of these, the Arverni

alterius. Quum hi contendērent (imp. subj.)
of the other. When these did contend

tantopēre inter se de potentatu multos
so greatly between themselves about dominion many

annos, factum-esse, ūtī Germani accerserentur
years, to have been done, that the Germans were sent-for

(imp. subj.) ab Arvernīs que Sequānis mercede.
by the Arverni and Sequani by hire (as

mercenaries). Primò circiter quindēcim millia horum
At first about fifteen thousands of these

transisse Rhenum; posteāquam fēri ac
to have crossed the Rhine; after-that the wild and

barbāri homīnes adamāssent (pl. perf. subj.)
barbarous men had fallen-in-love-with

agros, et cultum, et copias Gallorum,
the lands, and cultivation, and stores of the Gauls,

plures transductos: nunc esse in Galliā
more (to have been) led-over: now to be in Gaul

ad numērum centum et viginti millium:
to the number of a hundred and twenty thousands:

Ædūos, que clientes eorum, sēmel
the Ædui, and clients (dependants) of them, once

atque itērum contendisse armis cum his;
and again to have contended in arms with these;

pulsos accepisse magnam calamitatem;
repulsed to have received a great calamity;

amisisse omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum,
to have lost all (their) nobility, all the senate,

omnem equitatum. Fractos quibus praeliis
all (their) cavalry. Broken by which battles

que calamitatibus, qui antē potuissent (pl.
and calamities, (they) who before ad been able

perf. subj.) plurimum in Galliā, et suā
most in Gaul, and (both) by their-own

virtute et hospitio atque amicitia
valour and by the alliance and friendship

Romani populi, coactos-esse dare obsides
of the Roman people, to have been forced to give hostages

Sequānis, nobilissimos civitatis, et obstringere
to the Sequani, the most-noble (men) of the state, and to bind

civitatem jurejurando, sese neque repetituros
the state by oath, themselves neither about-to-ask-back

obsides, neque imploratos auxilium à
the hostages, nor about-to-implore aid from

Romano populo, neque recusatos, quod
the Roman people, nor about-to-refuse, that

minus-essent perpetuo sub ditione
they might not be perpetually under the dominion

atque imperio illorum. Se esse unum
and empire of them. Himself to be the only-one

ex omni civitate Aduorum, qui potuerit (perf.
out-of all the state of the Adui, who has been able

subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut
not to be brought that he should swear, or

daret suos liberos obsides: ob eam rem
should give his children (as) hostages: for that thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse
himself to have fled from the state, and to have come (to)

Romam ad Senatum postulatum auxilium, quod
Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) neque jurejurando,
(he) alone was held neither by oath,

neque obsidibus. Sed accidisse pejus
nor by hostages. But to have happened worse

Sequānis victoribus, quam Aduis victis:
to the Sequani conquerors, than to the Adui conquered:

propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum,
because that Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,
had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem
and had occupied the third part

Sequāni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optimus
of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Gallīæ; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)
of the whole Gaul; and now did order

Sequānos decedere de alterâ tertiâ parte;
the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterēa quòd, paucis mensibus (abl.) antè,
because that, a few months before,

viginti et quatuor millia hominum Harudum
twenty and four thousands of men of Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum, quibus locus
had come to him, to whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum-esse
and seats should be prepared: to-be-about-to-be

paucis annis, uti omnes pellerentur è
in a few years, that all would be driven out-of

finibus Gallīæ, atque omnes Germani
the borders of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: enim neque Gallicum
would pass the Rhine: for neither the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum cum agro
to be to be brought-together (compared) with the land

Germanorum, neque hanc consuetudinem, victus
of the Germans, nor this custom of sustenance

comparandam cum illâ. Autem Ariovistum,
(living) to-be-compared with that. But Ariovistus,

ut semel vicērit (perf. subj.) copias Gallorum
when once he conquered the forces of the Gauls

prœlio, quod prœlium factum-sit (perf. subj.)
in battle, which battle was made

Amagetobriæ (gen.), imperare superbè et
(at) Amagetobria, to command proudly and

crudeliter, poscere liberos cujusque nobilissimi
cruelly, to require the children of every-one most-noble

obsides, et edere omnia exempla cruciatûs in
(as) hostages, and to exhibit all examples of torture upon

eos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: hominem esse barbârum,
or at the will of him: the man to be barbarous.

iracundum, temerarium: imperia ejus non posse
irascible, rash: the commands of him not to be-able

sustineri diutius: nisi quid auxilii sit
to be sustained longer: unless some (thing) of aid may be

in Cæsare que Romano populo, idem esse
in Cæsar and the Roman people, the same to be

faciendum omnibus Gallis, quod Helvetii fecerant,
to-be-done to (by) all the Gauls, which the Helvetii had done,

ut emigrent domo; pētant aliud
that they may emigrate from home; they may seek another

domicilium, alias sedes remotas à Germanis, que
abode, other seats remote from the Germans, and

experiantur fortunam, quæcunque accidat. Si
may try fortune, whatsoever may happen. If

hæc enunciata-sint Ariovisto, non dubitare,
these (things) may have been told to Ariovistus, not to doubt,

quin sumat gravissimum supplicium de omnibus
but-that he may take the heaviest punishment of all

obsidibus, qui sint (pres. subj.) apud eum. Cæsarem,
the hostages, who are with him. Cæsar,

vel suâ auctoritate atque exercitûs, vel
either by his authority and (that) of (his) army, or

recenti victoriâ, vel nomine Romani populi,
by (his) recent victory, or by the name of the Roman people,

posse detertere, ne major multitudo Germanorum
to be-able to deter, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que posse defendere omnem
may be led-over Rhine, and to be able to defend all

Galliam ab injuriâ Ariovisti.
Gaul from the injury of Ariovistus.

32. Hâc oratione habita à Divitiâco,
This speech being had (delivered) by Divitiacus,
omnes, qui adêrant, cœperunt petere auxilium à
all, who were present, began to ask aid from
Cæsare magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequânos
Cæsar with great weeping. Cæsar observed the Sequani
unos ex omnibus facere nihil earum rerum,
alone out-of all to do nothing of those things,
quas cæteri facerent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capite
which the rest did do; but sad, head
demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,
being cast-down, to look-upon the earth, Having wondered,
quæ esset caussa ejus rei, quæsivit ex
what might be the cause of that thing, he inquired from
ipsis. Sequâni respondere nihil, sed
themselves. The Sequani answered nothing, but
permansere taciti in eâdem tristitiâ. Quum quæreret
remained silent in the same sadness. When he did ask
(imp. subj.) sæpius ab iis, nèque posset (imp.
more-often from them, nor was-able
subj.) exprimere ullam vocem omnino;
to express (draw forth) any voice at-all;
idem Ædûus Divitiâcus respondit, "Fortunam
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered, "The fortune
Sequanorum esse hoc miseriorem que graviorem,
of the Sequani to be by this more-wretched and more-heavy,
quàm reliquorum, quòd soli auderent (imp.
than of the rest, because (they) alone did dare
subj.) nec quidem quæri in occulto,
neither indeed to complain in hidden (secretly),
nec implorare auxilium; que horrent (imp. subj.)
nor to implore aid; and did dread
crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vèlut si adesset
the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present
(imp. subj.) coràm; propterea quòd tamen
before (them); because that notwithstanding

facultas fūgæ daretur (imp. subj.) reliquis ;
an opportunity of flight was given to the rest ;

verò omnes cruciatus essent (imp. subj.) perferendi
but all tortures were to be endured

Sequānis, qui recepissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to (by) the Sequani, who had received

Ariovistum intra suos fines, omnia oppida quorum
Ariovistus within their borders, all the towns of whom

essent (imp. subj.) in potestate ejus."
were in the power of him."

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar confirmavit
These things being known, Cæsar confirmed (cheered)

animos Gallorum verbis, que pollicitus-est
the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"eam rem futuram curæ sibi: se
that thing about-to-be for a care to himself: himself

habere magnam spem, Ariovistum adductum suo
to have great hope, Ariovistus induced by his

beneficio et auctoritate, facturum finem
kindness and authority, about-to-make an end

injuriis." Hæc oratione habitâ, dimisit
to injuries." This speech being had, he dismissed

concilium. Et secundum hæc multæ res
the council. And next-to those (things) many things

hortabantur eum, quare putaret eam rem
did exhort him, wherefore he should think that thing

cogitandum et suscipiendum sibi:
to be considered and to be undertaken to (by) himself:

imprimis, quod videbat Æduos, sæpenumero
in-the-first, because he did see the Ædui, oftentimes

appellatos fratres que consanguineos ab
having been named brothers and kinsmen by

Senatu, teneri in servitute atque in ditione
the Senate, to be held in slavery and in dominion

Germanorum, que intelligebat obsides
of the Germans, and he did understand the hostages

eorum esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequānos ;
of them to be with Ariovistus and the Sequani ;
 quod, in tanto imperio Romani populi,
which, in so-great empire of the Roman people,
 arbitrabatur esse turpissimum sibi et
he did deem to be most-disgraceful to himself and
 reipublicæ. Autem Germanos consuescere
to the republic. But the Germans to be accustomed.
 paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam
gradually to pass-over the Rhine, and a great
 multitudinem eorum venire in Galliam, videbat
multitude of them to come into Gaul, he did se
 periculosum Romano populo : neque existimaba
dangerous to the Roman people : nor did he think
 feros ac barbaros homines temperaturos
wild and barbarous men about-to-moderate
 sibi, quin, quum occupassent
to themselves, but-that, when they had occupied
 (pl. perf. subj.) omnem Galliam, ut Cimbri quæ
all Gaul, as the Cimbri and
 Teutoni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent
Teutoni had done before, they would go-out
 in Provinciam, atque inde contendèrent in
into the Province, and thence would proceed into
 Italiam ; præsertim quum Rhodanus dividèret (imp.
Italy ; especially since the Rhone did divide
 subj.) Sequānos à nostrâ provinciâ. Quibus
the Sequani from our province. To which
 rebus putabat occurrendum
things he did think to be met (he ought to prevent)
 quàm-maturimè. Autem Ariovistus ipse sumserat
as-early-as-possible. But Ariovistus himself had taken
 sibi tantos spiritus, tantam arrogantiam,
to himself so-great spirits (pride), so-great arrogance,
 ut videretur (imp. subj.) non ferendus.
that he did seem not to be borne.

34. Quamölkrem placuit ei, ut mitteret
Wherefore it pleased to him, that he should send
 legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from
 eo, "ut deligeret aliquem locum medium
him, "that he should choose some place middle
 utriusque colloquio; sese velle agere
of each for a conference; himself to will to act (treat)
 cum eo de Republicâ et summis rebus
with him about the Republic and the highest affairs
 utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ei legationi: "Si
of each." Ariovistus answered to that embassy: "If
 quid esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à
any (thing) was needful to himself from
 Cæsare, sese fuisse venturum ad eum;
Cæsar, himself to have been about-to-come to him;
 si ille vellet (pres. subj.) quid à se,
if he wills any (thing) from himself,
 oportere illum venire ad se: præterea, se
to behoove him to come to himself. besides, himself
 neque audere venire sine exercitu in eas
neither to dare to come without an army into those
 partes Galliae, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar did possess;
 neque posse contrahere exercitum in unum
nor to be able to draw-together an army into one
 locum sine magno commeatu atque molimento:
place without great provision and trouble.
 autem videri mirum sibi, quid negotii
but to seem wonderful to himself, what of business
 esset aut Cæsari aut omnino Romano
might be either to Cæsar or at-all to the Roman
 populo, in sua Gallia, quam vicisset (pl. perf.
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered
 subj.) bello.
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsarem,
These answers being brought-back to Cæsar,
 Cæsar itērum mittit legatos ad eum cum his
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these
 mandatis: "Quoniam affectus tanto beneficio
commands: "Since being affected with so-great kindness
 suo que Romani populi (quum
his own (Cæsar's) and (that) of the Roman people (since
 appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in suo consulatu rex
he had been named in his-own consulship king
 atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc
and friend by the Senate,) he did return this
 gratiam sibi que Romano populo, ut
gratitude to himself and to the Roman people, that
 gravaretur invitatus venire in
he should be-reluctant (though) invited to come into
 colloquium, neque putaret dicendum
a conference, nor should think (it) to-be-spoken
 sibi et cognoscendum de communi
to (by) himself and to-be-known concerning the common
 re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)
thing; these to be, (things) which he did demand
 ab eo: primum, ne-transduceret quam
from him: first, he should not-lead-over any
 multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in
multitude of men more ver the Rhine into
 Galliam: deinde redderet obsides quos
Gaul: then he should restore the hostages which
 haberet (imp. subj.) ab Æduis; que permitteret
he did have from the Ædui; and should permit
 Sequānis, utliceret voluntate
to the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will
 ejus reddere illis quos illi
of him to restore to them (the Ædui) (those) whom they
 haberent (imp. subj.); nève lacerasset Æduos
did have; nor he should attack the Ædui

injuriâ; nève inferret bellum his ve
by injury (unjustly); nor should bring-on war to these, or
 sociis eorum; si fecisset id ita,
to the allies of them; if he might have done that thus,
 perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam futuram
perpetual favour and friendship about-to-be
 sibi que Romano populo cum eo. Si
to himself and to the Roman people with him. If
 impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quoniam, Marco Messalâ,
he did obtain (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,
 Marco Pisone consulibus, Senatus censuisset
Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved
 (pl. perf. subj.) uti quicumque obtineret Galliam
that whosoever should obtain Gaul
 provinciam, defenderet Æduos que
(as a) province, should defend the Ædui and
 cæteros amicos Romani populi, quod
other friends of the Roman people, which (as far as)
 posset facere commodo Reipublicæ,
he might be able to do to the advantage of the Republic,
 se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum."
himself not about-to-neglect the injuries of the Ædui."

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: "esse
Ariovistus answered to these (things): "to be

jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,
 imperarent iis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
should rule those, whom they had conquered,
 quemadmödum vellent: itidem Romanum
as they might will: likewise the Roman
 populum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)
people to have been accustomed to rule the conquered
 non ad præscriptum alterius, sed ad suum
not at the prescription of another, but at their-own
 arbitrium. Si ipse præscriberet (imp. subj.)
will. If he (himself) did prescribe

non Romano popūlo, quemadmōdum uteretur
 not to the Roman people, how it should use
 sūo jure, non oportere se impediri
 with its right, not to behove himself to be hindered
 à Romano popūlo in sūo jure : Ædūos
 by the Roman people in his right : the Ædui
 factos-esse stipendarios sibi, quoniam
 so have been made tributary to himself, since
 tentassent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et
 they had tried the fortune of war, and
 congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac
 had engaged in arms and (had been)
 superati : Cæsārem facere magnam injuriā, qui
 overcome : Cæsar to do great injury, who
 sūo adventu faceret (imp. subj.) vectigalia deteriora
 by his arrival did make the taxes worse
 sibi : se esse non redditurum obsides
 to him : himself to be not about-to-restore the hostages
 Ædūis ; nēque illaturum bellum injuriā
 to the Ædui ; nor about-to-bring-on war by injury
 iis, nēque sociis eorum, si
 (unjustly) to them, nor to the allies of them if
 manerent in eo, quod convenisset (pl.
 they should remain in that, which had been agreed-upon,
 perf. subj.), que pendērent stipendium quotannis :
 and should weigh (pay) tribute yearly :
 si fecissent non id, fraternum nomen
 if they might have done not that, the fraternal name
 Romani popūli abfuturum longè ab
 of the Roman people about-to-be-absent far from
 his : quòd Cæsar denuntiaret (imp.
 these (useless to them) : that Cæsar did declare
 subj.) sibi, se non neglecturum injurias
 to him, himself not about-to-neglect the injuries
 Æduorum, neminem contendisse cum se
 of the Ædui, no-one to have contended with himself

sine sua perniciē : congregederetur, quum
without his-own destruction : he might engage, when

vellet ; intellecturum, quid invicti
he might will ; about-to-understand, what the unconquered

Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui subissent
Germans, most-exercised in arms, who had gone-under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordēcim annos,
not a roof within fourteen years,

possent virtute.
might be able (to effect) by valour.

37. Eodem tempore hæc mandata
In (at) the same time these charges

referebantur Cæsari ; et legati veniebant
were brought-back to Cæsar ; and ambassadors did come

ab Ædūis et Treviris : Ædūi, questam,
from the Ædui and Treviri : the Ædui, (came) to complain,

quod "Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.
that "the Harudes, who lately had been carried-over

perf. subj.) in Galliam, popularentur (imp. subj.)
into Gaul, did lay-waste

fines eorum ; sese potuisse redimere
the borders of them ; themselves to have been-able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne quidem obsidibus
peace of Ariovistus, not indeed (even) hostages

dātis." Autem Treviri, "centum pagos
being given." But the Treviri, "a hundred districts

Suevorum consedissee ad ripam Rheni, qui
of the Suevi to have settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum ; fratres
did endeavour to pass-over the Rhine ; the brothers

Nasūam et Cimerium præesse iis (dat.)" Quibus
Nasua and Cimerius to be-over these." By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer
things Cæsar being moved violently (strongly impressed ;

existimavit maturandum sibi, ne, si nova manus
thought to-be-hastened to (by) himself, lest, if a new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum
of the Suevi had joined itself with

veteribus copiis Ariovisti, posset minus
the old forces of Ariovistus, it might be-able less

facile resisti. Itaque, frumentaria re
easily to be withstood. Therefore, corn affair

comparata, quam-celerrime potuit,
(provisions) being procured, as-quickly-as he could,

contendit magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum.
he hastened by great journeys to Ariovistus.

38. Quum jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When now he had proceeded

viam tridui, nuntiatum-est ei,
a way (journey) of three days, it was told to him,

Ariovistum cum omnibus suis copiis contendere ad
Ariovistus with all his forces to hasten to

occupandum Vescontionem, quod est maximum
occupy Vescontio, which is the greatest

oppidum Sequanorum, que processisse viam
town of the Sequani, and to have proceeded a way

tridui a suis finibus. Cæsar
(journey) of three days from his borders. Cæsar

existimabat præcavendum sibi magnopere, ne
did think to be provided to (by) himself greatly, lest

id accideret: namque erat summa facultas
that should happen: for there was the highest means

in eo oppido omnium rerum, quæ erant usui ad
in that town of all things, which were for use to

bellum, que id muniebatur sic natura
war, and that was fortified so by the nature

loci, ut daret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem
of the place, that it did give great means

ad ducendum bellum; propterea quod flumen
to lead (protract) the war; because that the river

Dubis, ut circumductum circino, cingit
Dubis (Doux), as (if) led-around by a compass, girds

penè totum oppidum; reliquum spatium, quod
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplius sexcentorum pëdum,
is not more (than the space) of six-hundred feet,

quà flumen intermittit, mons continet,
where the river intermits (discontinues), a mountain contains,

magnâ altitudine, ita ut radices ejus montis
with (ol) great height, so that the roots of that mountain

contingant (pres. subj.) ripæ fluminis ex
reach to the bank of the river out-of (on)

utrâque parte. Murus circumdatus efficit hunc
each part. A wall thrown-around makes this

arcem et conjungit cum oppido.
(mountain) a citadel and joins (it) with the town.

Iluc Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis
Hither Cæsar hastens by great diurnal and nocturnal

itineribus, que oppido occupato, collocat
journies, and the town being occupied, he places

præsidium ibi.
a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dñes ad Vescontionem
Whilst he delays a few days at Vescontio

caussâ frumentariæ rei que commeatûs,
by cause (for the sake) of corn affair and of provision,

ex percuntatione nostrorum que vocibus
out-of the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions

Gallorum et mercatorum (qui prædicabant
of the Gauls and of the merchants (who did proclaim

“Germanos esse ingenti magnitudine corporum,
“the Germani to be with (of) vast size of bodies,

incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis,
with (of) incredible valour and exercise in arms,

sese sæpenumëro congressos cum iis,
themselves oftentimes having engaged with them

potuisse ne quidem ferre vultum atque
to have been-able not indeed (even) to bear the look and

aciem oculorum,") tantus timor subito
edge (glance) of (their) eyes,") so great fear suddenly

occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.
occupied all the army, that it did disturb

subj.) non mediocriter mentes que animos omnium.
not moderately the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primum ortus-est à tribunis militum,
This (fear) first arose from the tribunes of soldiers,

ac praefectis, que reliquis, qui caussâ
and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause:

amicitiæ secuti Cæsarem:
(for the sake) of friendship having followed Caesar

ex urbe, miserebantur magnum periculum,
out-of the city, did deplore the great danger,

quod habebant non magnum usum in
because they did have not great experience in

militari re: quorum alius, aliâ caussâ
military affair of whom another, another cause

illatâ, quam diceret (imp. subj.) esse
being brought (alleged), which he did say to be

necessariam sibi ad proficiscendum, petebat, ut
necessary to himself to set-out, did ask, that

liceret discedere voluntate ejus: nonnulli
it might be-allowed to depart by the will of him: some

adducti pudore, ut vitarent suspicionem
induced by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion

timoris, remanebant. Hi poterant neque fingere
of fear, did remain. These were able neither to feign

vultum neque interdum tenere lacrymas; abditi
countenance nor sometimes to hold tears; hidden

in tabernaculis, aut querebantur suum
in tents, either they did complain-of their-own

fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur
fate, or with their intimates did deplore (their)

commune periculum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabantur
common danger. Generally wills were sealed

totis castris (pl.). Vocibus ac timore horum
in the whole camp. By words and fear of these

paullatim etiam ii, qui habebant magnum usum
gradually also they, who did have great experience

in castris (pl.), milites que centuriones, que qui
in camp, soldiers and centurions. and those who

præerant equitatui, perturbabantur. Qui ex
were-over to the cavalry, were disturbed. (They) who of

his volebant se existimari minus timidos,
these did will themselves to be thought less fearful,

dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere
did say themselves not to dread the enemy, but to fear

angustias itineris et magnitudinem sylvarum,
the straits of the journey and the greatness of the woods,

quæ intercederent (imp. subj.) inter eos et
which did intervene between them and

Ariovistum, aut frumentariam rem, ut
Ariovistus, or the corn affair (supply), that

posset commode satis supportari.
it might be-able (not) conveniently enough to be carried-up.

Etiam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsari, cum
Also some did relate to Cæsar, when

jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac
he had ordered camp to be moved, and

signa ferri, milites non fore
the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be-about-to-be

audientes dicto, neque laturos
hearing (obedient) to word, nor about-to-bear

signa propter timorem.
the standards on-account-of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilio convocato, que
these (things), a council being called together, and

centurionibus omnium ordinum adhibitis ad
the centurions of all ranks being admitted to

id concilium, incusavit eos vehementer; primum.
that council, he blamed them vehemently; first,

quod putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut
that they did think to-be-inquired or

cogitandum sibi, aut in quam
to-be-considered to (by) themselves, either into what

partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur (imp. subj.).
part, or with what design they were led.

Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimè
Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most-eagerly

appetisse amicitiam Romani populi: cur
to have sought the friendship of the Roman people: why

quisquam judicaret hunc discessurum tam
any-one should judge this (man) about-to-depart so

temèrè ab officio? Quidem persuaderi sibi,
rashly from duty? Indeed to be persuaded to himself,

suis postulatis cognitis, atque æquitate con-
his demands being known, and the equity of the

ditionum perspectâ, eum nèque repudiaturum
conditions being clearly-seen, him neither about-to-reject

suum gratiam nèque Romani populi: quod
his favour nor (that) of the Roman people: but

si, impulsus furore atque amentia, intu-
if, impelled by rage and by madness, he might have

lisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?
brought-on war, what at length should they fear?

aut cur desperarent de sua
or why should they despair concerning their-own

virtute, aut de diligentia ipsius?
valour, or concerning the diligence of himself (Cæsar)?

Periculum ejus hostis factum me-
Danger (trial) of that enemy (was) made in the me-

moria nostrorum patrum, quum, Cimbris et
mory of our fathers, when, the Cimbri and

Teutonis pulsus à Caio Mario, exercitus
Teutoni being routed by Caius Marius, the army

videbatur meritus non minorem laudem, quàm
did seem having deserved not less praise, than

imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in
the general himself: also (it was) made lately in

Italiâ, servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquis
Italy, in the servile commotion, whom however some

usus ac disciplina, quam accepissent
experience and discipline, which they had received

(pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex quo
from us, did assist. From which

posset (imp. subj.) judicari, quantum boni
it was able to be judged, how-much of good

constantia haberet (imp. subj.) in se; propterea
firmness did have in itself; because

quod quos aliquandiu timuissent (pl. perf.
that (those) whom some-while they had feared

subj.) sine caussa inermes, superâssent (pl.
without cause unarmed, they had conquered,

perf. subj.), hos postea armatos ac victores.
these afterwards armed and conquerors.

Denique, hos esse Germanos cum quibus
Lustly, these to be the Germani with whom

Helvetii sæpenumero congressi non solum
the Helvetii oftentimes having engaged not only

in suis, sed etiam in finibus illorum
in their-own, but also in the borders of them

plerumque superâssent (pl. perf. subj.); qui tamen
generally had overcome; who notwithstanding

potuerint (perf. subj.) non esse pares nostro
have been able not to be equal to our

exercitui. Si adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum
army. If the adverse battle and flight of the Gauls

commoveret quos, hos posse reperire,
might move (affect) any, these to-be-able to find,

si quærerent (imp. subj.), Gallis defatigatis
if they did inquire. the Gauls being wearied

diuturnitate belli, Ariovistum, quum
by the long-continuance of the war, Ariovistus, when
 continuisset (pl. perf. subj.) se multos menses
he had kept himself many months
 castris ac paludibus, neque fecisset (pl. perf. subj.)
in camps and marshes, nor had made
 potestatem sui, adortum
power of himself (given opportunity), having attacked
 subito jam desperantes de pugna et
suddenly (those) now despairing of butile and
 dispersos, vicisse magis ratione
scattered, to have conquered more by reason (plan)
 ac consilio quam virtute: cui rationi
and by counsel than by valour: for which reason
 locus fuisset contra barbaros atque
(plan) place might have been against barbarous and
 imperitos homines: hac ne quidem
unskilled men: by this (plan) not indeed (even)
 ipsum sperare nostros exercitus posse capi.
himself to hope our armies to be able to be taken.
 Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) suum timorem in
(They) who did confer (attribute) their fear upon
 simulationem frumentariae rei que angustias
pretence of corn affair and the straits
 itinerum, facere arroganter, quum
of the journeys, to do assumingly, when (since)
 viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio
they did seem either to despair of the duty
 imperatoris, aut praescribere ei: haec
of the commander, or to prescribe to him: these (things)
 esse curae sibi; Sequanos, Leucos,
to be for a care to himself; the Sequani, Leuci,
 Lingones subministrare frumentum; que jam
Lingones to supply corn; and now
 frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinere
corn to be ripe in the lands. Of the journey

ipsos iudicatuŕos brēvi tempore. Quòd
themselves about-to-judge in a short time. That

militēs dicantur (pres. subj.) non fōre
the soldiers are said not to be-about-to-be

audientes dicto, nēque latūri
hearing to word (obedient to command), nor about-to-bear

signa, se commoveri
the standards (about to advance), himself to be moved

nihil eā re; enim scire, quibuscunque
nothing by that thing; for to know (he knew), to whomsoever

exercitus fuērit (perf. subj.) non audiēns dicto,
an army has been not hearing to word (obedient),

aut, re gestā mālè, fortunam
either, an affair being carried-on ill, fortune

defuisse; aut aliquo facinore comperto,
to have failed; or some crime being found-out,

avaritiā convictam-esse: suā innocentiam
(their) avarice to have been proved: his innocence

perpetuā vitā, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum
in perpetual life, success in the war of the Helveti

perspectam-esse. Itaque, se repræ-
'o have been clearly-seen. Therefore, himself about-to-

sentaturum quod esset (imp. subj.)
do-presently (that) which he was (otherwise)

collaturus in longiorem diē; et
about-to-confer (defer) into a more-distant day; and

proximā nocte de quarta vigiliā
in the nearest (next) night from (at) the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primum
about-to-move the camp, that as sonest

(as soon as possible) posset intelligē,
he might be-able to understand,

utrū pudor atque officiū, an timor valeret
whether shame and duty, or fear might prevail

plūs apud eos. Quòd si nemo præterea sequatur
more with them. But if no-one beside follow,

(pres. subj.), tamen se iturum cum decimâ
 yet himself about-to-go with the tenth
 legione solâ, de quâ dubitaret (imp. subj.) non;
 legion alone, of which he did doubt not;

que eam futuram Prætoriam cohortem sibi."
 and that about-to-be a Prætorian cohort to himself."

Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè huic legioni et
 Cæsar both had indulged, especially to this legion and

confidebat maxime propter virtutem.
 did trust chiefly on-account-of (its) valour.

41. Hæc oratione habitâ, mentes omnium
 This speech being had, the minds of all

conversæ-sunt in mirum modum, que
 were changed into (in) a wonderful manner, and

summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi
 the highest alacrity and eagerness of war to be carried-on

innata-est: que decima legio princeps
 was born-in (inspired): and the tenth legion first

egit gratias ei per Tribunos
 acted (returned) thanks to him through the Tribunes

militum, quod fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optimum
 of soldiers, that he had made the best

judicium de se, que confirmavit se esse
 judgment of itself, and confirmed itself to be

paratissimam ad bellum gerendum. Inde
 most-prepared to war to be carried on. Then

reliquæ legiones egerunt per Tribunos
 the remaining legions acted through the Tribunes

militum et centuriones primorum ordinum, uti
 of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, > that

satisfacerent Cæsari; "se neque unquam
 they might satisfy to Cæsar; "themselves neither ever

dubitasse, neque timuisse, neque existimavisse
 to have doubted, nor to have feared, nor to have thought

judicium de summâ belli esse
 the judgment of the sum (highest concerns) of war to be

suum sed imperatoris."
their-own (appertaining to them) but of the commander."

Satisfactione eorum acceptâ, et itinere
The satisfaction of them being received, and the journey

exquisito per Divitiacum, (quod habebat
being reconnoitred by Divitiacus, (because he did have

maximam fidem ei ex aliis Gallis) ut
greatest faith to him out-of the other Gauls) that

duceret exercitum apertis locis, circuitu
he might lead the army in the open places, by a circuit

amplius quadraginta millium, profectus-est de
of more (than) forty miles, he set-out from (at)

quartâ vigiliâ, uti dixerat. Septimo die,
the fourth watch, as he had said. On the seventh day,

quum intermitteret (imp. subj.) non iter,
when he did intermit not the journey,

factus-est certior ab exploratoribus, copias
he was made more-certain by scouts, the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatuor et
of Ariovistus to be-distant from our (forces) four and

viginti millibus (abl.) passuum.
twenty thousands of paces.

42. Adventu Cæsaris cognito, Ariovistus
The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus

mittit legatos ad eum; "id licere
sends ambassadors to him; "that to be-lawful

fiëri per se, quod antea postulâsset
to be done by himself, which before he had demanded

(pl. perf. subj.) de colloquio, quoniam
concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propius; que existimaret
he had approached nearer; and he did think

(imp. subj.) se posse facere id sine
himself to be able to do that without

periculo." Cæsar respuit non conditionem, que
danger." Cæsar rejected not the condition, and

arbitrabatur ĕum jam reverti ad sanitatem, quum
did imagine him now to return to soundness (reason), when

polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod
he did promise spontaneously that, which

antĕa denegâsset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;
before he had denied to (him) asking;

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro suis
and he did come into great hope, for his

tantīs beneficiis que Romani populi
so-great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in ĕum, suis postulatis cognitis, fore
towards him, his demands being known, to be-about-to-be

utî desisteret pertinaciâ. Quintus dies
that he would desist from obstinacy. The fifth day

ex ĕo die dictus-est colloquio.
from that day was said (appointed) for the conference.

Intĕrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)
Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe ultrò que citro inter ĕos, Ariovistus
often thither and hither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; "Cæsar ne-adducĕret quem peditem
requested; "Cæsar should not-lead-up any foot-soldier

ad colloquium, se vereri ne circum-
to the conference, himself to dread lest he should

veniretur ab ĕo per insidiâs (pl.): uterque
be circumvented by him by ambush: each

veniret cum equitatu, aliâ ratione se
should come with cavalry, in other method himself

esse non venturum." Cæsar, quòd volebat
to be not about-to-come." Cæsar, because he did will

nĕque colloquium tolli, causâ
neither the conference to be taken-away, cause

interpositâ; nĕque audebat committere, suam
being interposed; nor did dare to commit his

salutem equitatu (for equitatui) Gallorum; statuit
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls; determined

esse commodissimum, omnibus Gallis equitibus
to be most-convenient, all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ĕquis, imponere ěd
being withdrawn from the horses, to set-on there (them)

legionarioſ milites decimæ legionis, cui
the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, to which

confidebat quàm-maximè; ut haberet
he did confide as-much-as-possible; that he might have

quàm-amicissimum præsidiũ, si quid ōpus
as-friendly-as-possible guard, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fieret (imp. subj.),
should be of deed. When which was done,

quidam ex militibus decimæ legionis
a certain-one of the soldiers of the tenth legion

dixit non irridiculè, "Cæsarem. facere plus quàm
said not unwittily, "Cæsar to do more than

pollicitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); pollicitum habi-
he had promised; having promised about-

turum decimam legionem in lōco prætoriæ
to-have the tenth legion in place of a prætorian

cohörtis; nunc rescribere ad ěquum."
cohort; now to write to a horse (that he now en-

rolled them with the horse)."

43. . . Erat magna planities et in ěâ terreus
(There) was a great plain and in it an earthy

tumulus satis grandis. Hic lōcus abĕrat
hillock sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatio fĕrè æquo ab utrisque castris (pl.).
by a space nearly equal from each camp.

Ēd, ut dictum-ĕrat, venerunt ad
Thither, as had been said (appointed), they came to

colloquium. Cæsar constituit legionem, quam
the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devexĕrat ěquis, ducentis passibus (abl.)
he had carried-down with horses, two-hundred paces

ab ēo tumūlo : que item equites
from that hillock : and likewise the horsemen
 Ariovisti constiterunt pari intervallo.
of Ariovistus stood with equal interval.
 Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex
Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from
 ēquis et ut adducērent denos præter
horses and that they should lead-up ten besides
 se ad colloquium. Ubi ventum-est ēd,
themselves to the conference. When it was come thither,
 Cæsar, initio orationis, commemoravit
Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted
 suā que beneficia Senatūs in eum,
his-own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,
 “quodd appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à
“that he had been called king by
 Senatu, quodd amicus, quodd
the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that
 amplissīma munera missa ; quam rem,”
most-ample gifts (had been) sent ; which thing,”
 docebat, “et contigisse
he did teach (he informed him), “both to have happened
 paucis, et consuevisse tribui à
to few, and to have been accustomed to be granted by
 Romanis pro maximis officiis hominum ;
the Romans for the greatest services of men ;
 illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) neque aditum,
him, when he did have neither access,
 neque justam causam postulandi, beneficio
nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty
 ac suā liberalitate ac Senatūs,
and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,
 consecutum ea præmia.” Doccebat
having obtained those rewards (honours).” He did teach
 etiam, “quàm vetēres, que quàm justæ
(inform him) also, “how old, and how just

caussæ necessitudinis intercederent (imp. subj.)
causes of close-alliance did intervene (subsist)

ipsis cum Ædūis; quæ consulta Senatūs,
to themselves with the Ædui; what decrees of the Senate,

quoties, que quàm honorifica facta-essent (pl.
how often, and how honourable had been made

perf. subj.) in eos; ut omni tempore,
towards them; that in all time,

Ædūi tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum
Ædui had held supremacy

totius Galliæ, etiam priusquàm
of the whole Gaul, also (even) before-that

appetissent (pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitiam:
they had sought our friendship:

hanc esse consuetudinem Romani populi,
this to be the custom of the Roman people,

ut vellet socios atque amicos non
that it may will (its) allies and friends not

modò deperdere nihil suū, sed esse
only to lose nothing of their-own, but to be

auctos gratiā, dignitate, honore: verò
increased in favour, in dignity, in honour: but

quis posset pati id eripi
who would be able to suffer that to be snatched

iis (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
from them, which they had brought to

amicitiā Romani populi?" Deinde
the friendship of the Roman people?" Afterwards

postulavit eādem, quæ dedērat in
he demanded the same (things), which he had given in

mandatis legatis "ne-inferret
charges to ambassadors "that-he-should-not-bring-on

bellum aut Ædūis, aut sociis eorum;
war either to the Ædui, or to the allies of them;

redderet obsides; si posset (imp. subj.)
he should restore the hostages; if he was able

remittĕre dŏmum nullam partem Germanorum ;
to send-back home no part of the Germani ;

at ne-pateretur quos ampliùs transire
but that-he-should-not-suffer any more to pass

Rhenum."
the Rhine."

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata
Ariovistus answered few (things) to the demands

Cæsāris : prædicavit multa de sūis virtutibus ;
of Cæsar : declaimed many (things) of his-own virtues ;

sese transisse Rhenum non sūâ sponte,
himself to have passed the Rhine not by his-own accord,

sed rogatum et accersitum à Gallis : reliquisse
but asked and sent-for by the Gauls : to have left

dŏmum que propinquos non sĭne magnâ spe
home and relations not without great hope

que magnis præmiis : habere sedes in Gallĭâ
and great rewards : to have settlements in Gaul

concessas ab ipsis, obsides dātos voluntate
granted by themselves, hostages given by the will

eorum ; capĕre stipendĭum jure belli, quod
of them ; to take tribute by right of war, which

victores consueverint (perf. subj.) imponĕre
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis ; se non intulisse bellum
to the conquered ; himself not to have brought-on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sĭbi ; omnes civitates
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself ; all the states

Gallĭæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac
of Gaul to have come to to oppose himself, and

habuisse castra contra se ; omnes ĕas copĭas
to have had camps against himself ; all those forces

fusas-esse ac superatas abs se uno
to have been routed and overcome by himself in one

prælio. Si vĕlint (præ. subj.) experiri itĕrum,
battle. If they will to try again,

se paratum decertare : sin malint (pres.
 himself prepared to contend : but-if they will-rather

subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum recusare
 to use peace, to be unjust to refuse

de stipendïo, quod pependërint (perf.
 (complain) about the tribute, which they payed

subj.) sũâ voluntate ad id tempus :
 by their own will at that time :

oportere amicitïam Romani popũli esse
 to behove the friendship of the Roman people to be

ornamento et præsidiũ sibi, non
 for an ornament and guard to himself, not

detrimento ; que se petisse id eã
 for detriment ; and himself to have sought it in that

spe. Si stipendïum remittatur (pres. subj.) per
 hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum popũlum, et dedititĩ subtrahantur
 the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non mĩnũs libenter
 himself about-to-refuse not less willingly

amicitiã Romani popũli, quã appetiërit
 the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quod transducatur (pres. subj.) multitudĩnem
 That he leads-over a multitude

Germanorum in Galliã, se facere id
 of the Germani into Gaul, himself to do that

caussã sũi muniendi, non Galliæ
 for the sake of himself to-be-fortified, not of Gaul

impugnandæ : esse testimonium ejus
 to be fought-against : to be a testimony (proof) of that

rẽi quod venërit (perf. subj.) non nisi
 thing that he came not unless (until,

rogatus, et quod inulërit (perf. subj.) non
 asked, and that he has brought-on not

bellum, sed defendërit (perf. subj.) : se venisse
 war, but has defended (himself) : himself to have come

in Galliam priùs quàm Romanum populum.
into Gaul before than the Roman people.

Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Romani
Never before this time an army of the Roman

populi egressum fines provinciæ
people (to have) gone-out-of the borders of the province

Galliæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sibi? cur
of Gaul: what did he will to himself? why

veniret (imp. subj.) in suas possessiones? hanc
did he come into his possessions? this

Galliam esse suam provinciam, sicuti illam nostram:
Gaul to be his province, as that our:

ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non concedi sibi,
as it did behove (it ought) not to be conceded to himself,

si faceret impetum in nostros fines; sic
if he should make an attack upon our borders; so

iterum, nos esse iniquos, quòd interpellaremus
again, us to be unjust, because we did interrupt

(imp. subj.) se in suo jure: quòd diceret
himself in his right: that he did say

(imp. subj.) Ædùos appellatos amicos ex consulto
the Ædui named friends from a decree

Senatùs, se esse non tam barbàrum, nèque
of the Senate, himself to be not so barbarous, nor

tam imperitum rerum, ut sciret (imp. subj.)
so inexperienced of things, that he did know

non, Ædùos nèque tulisse auxiliùm
not. the Ædui neither to have brought aid

Romanis proximo bello Allobrögum,
to the Romans in the neurest (latest) war of the Allobroges,

nèque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas
nor themselves in these contentions, which

Ædúi habuissent (pl. perf. subj.) cum se et
the Ædui had had with himself and

cum Sequānis, usos-esse auxiliò (abl.) Romani
with the Sequani, to have-used the aid of the Roman

popŭli : se debere suspicari, amicitĭā
 people : himself to owe (ought) to suspect, friendship

simulatā, Cæsārem, quòd habēat (pres. subj.)
 being pretended, Cæsar, because he has

exercĭtum in Galliā, habere caussā sŭi
 an army in Gaul, to have (it) for the sake of himself

opprimendi : quòd nĭsi decedat (pres. subj.) aut
 to-be-oppressed : that unless he depart or

deducat (pres. subj.) exercĭtum ex his regionĭbus,
 lead-away (his) army from these regions,

sese habiturum illum non pro amico, sed
 himself about-to-have him not for a friend, but

pro hoste : quòd si interfecĕrit (perf. subj.) ĕum,
 for an enemy : that if he killed him,

sese esse facturum gratum multis
 himself to be about-to-do a grateful (thing) to many

nobilĭbus que principĭbus Romani popŭli :
 nobles and chiefs of the Roman people :

se habere id compertum ab ipsis
 himself to have that found-out from themselves

per nuntĭos eorum ; gratĭam atque amicitĭam
 by messengers of them ; the favour and friendship

omnĭum quorum posset (imp. subj.) redimĕre
 of all of whom he was-able to purchase

morte ejus : quòd si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.)
 by the death of him : that if he had departed

ac tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) libĕram possessionem
 and had delivered free possession

Galliæ sĭbi, se remuneraturum illum
 of Gaul to himself, himself about-to-remunerate him

magno præmiō, et confecturum, quæcunque
 with great reward, and about-to-dispatch, whatever

bella vellet (imp. subj.) gĕri sĭne ullo
 wars he did will to be carried-on without any

labore et pericŭlo ejus.
 labour and danger of him.

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsäre in eam
Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon that
 sententiã, quare posset (imp. subj.) non
opinion, wherefore he was-able not
 desistere negotio, et neque suam neque
to desist from the business, and neither his nor
 consuetudinem Romani populi pati, uti
the custom of the Roman people to suffer, that
 desereret socios meritos optimè; neque
he should desert allies having deserved best; nor
 se judicare Galliam esse potius
himself to judge Gaul to be rather (the property)
 Ariovisti, quàm Romani populi. Arvernos
of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people. The Arverni
 et Rutenos superatos-esse bello à Quinto
and Ruteni to have been overcome in war by Quintus
 Fabio Maximo; quibus Romanus populus
Fabius Maximus; to whom the Roman people
 ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), neque redegisset (pl. perf.
had pardoned, nor had reduced (them)
 subj.) in provinciam neque imposuisset (pl. perf.
into a province nor had imposed
 subj.) stipendium: quòd si oporteret (imp. subj.)
tribute: that if it did behove
 quodque antiquissimum tempus spectari, imperium
every most-ancient time to be regarded, the empire
 Romani populi in Gallia esse justissimum; si
of the Roman people in Gaul to be most-just; if
 oporteret (imp. subj.) judicium Senatûs
it did behove the judgment of the Senate
 servari, Galliam debere esse liberam,
to be kept, Gaul to owe (ought) to be free.
 quam victam bello voluisset (pl. perf.
which (though) conquered in war it had willed.
 subj.) uti suis legibus" (abl.).
to use its-own laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in collo-
Whilst these (things) are carried-on in the confe-
 quō, nuntiatum-est Cæsāri, equites Ariovisti
rence, it was-told to Cæsar, the horsemen of Ariovistus
 accedēre propiūs tumūlum, et adequitare ad
to approach nearer the hillock, and to ride-up to
 nostros, conjiċere lapīdes que tela in
our (men) to throw stones and darts against
 nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que
our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and
 recepit se ad sūos, que imperavit
betook himself to his-own (men), and ordered
 sūis ne-rejiċerent quod
to his-own (men) that they should not throw-back any
 telum omnino in hostes: nam etsi
dart at-all against the enemies: for although
 videbat prœlium fore cum equitatu
he did see a battle to be-about-to-be with the cavalry
 sine ullo pericūlo delectæ legionis; tamen
without any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet
 putabat committendum non, ut, hostibus
he did think to be committed not, that, the enemies
 pulsīs, posset dici, eos
being driven-away, it might be-able to be said, them
 circumventos à se per fidem in collo-
circumvented by himself through faith in the con-
 quō. Posteaquam elatum-est in
ference. After-that it was carried-out (reported) into
 vulgus militum, quā arrogantia (abl.)
(among) the common-sort of soldiers, what arrogance
 Ariovistus usus interdixisset (pl. perf. subj.)
Ariovistus having used had interdicted
 Romanis (dat.) omni Galliā; que equites
the Romans from all Gaul; and the horsemen
 ejus cecissent (pl. perf. subj.) impetum in nostros;
of him had made an attack upon our (men);

que ēa res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.)
and that thing had broken-off

colloquium ; multò major alacritās que majus
the conference ; by-much greater alacrity and greater

studium pugnandi injectum-est exercitui.
desire of fighting was thrown-in to the army.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus mittit
In two-days afterwards Ariovistus sends

legatos ad Cæsarem, "se velle agere
ambassadors to Cæsar (to say), "himself to will to act

cum eo de his rebus, quæ cœptæ-essent
(treat) with him about these things, which had been-begun

(pl. perf. subj.) āgi inter eos,
to be acted (treated) between them,

nēque perfectæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.) : ūti aut
nor had been perfected that either

constitueret iterum diem colloquio, aut
he would determine again a day for a conference, or

si vellet (imp. subj.) minus id, mitteret
if he did will less (not) that, he would send

aliquem ex suis legatis ad se. Causa
some-one out-of his ambassadors to himself. A cause

colloquendi visa-est non Cæsari; et
of conferring seemed not (was not evident) to Cæsar; and

etō-māgis, quod pridie ejus diei, Germani
by that-more, that the-day-before of that day the Germani

potuerant non retineri, quin conicerent
had been-able not to be restrained, but-that they would throw

tela in nostros. Existimabat sese missurum
darts against our (men). He did think himself about-to-send

legatum ex suis cum magno periculo ad
an ambassador out-of his-own with great danger to

eum, et objecturum feris hominibus
him, and about-to-expose to savage men.

Visum-est commodissimum mittere ad eum Cæsum
It seemed most-convenient to send to him Cæsus

Valerium Procillum, filium Caii Valerii
Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius
 Caburi, adolescentem summâ virtute et
Caburus, a young-man with highest virtue and
 humanitatē, (pater cuius donatus-erat
politeness, (the father of whom had been presented
 civitatē à Caio Valerio Flacco) et
with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus) and (both)
 propter fidem et propter scientiam
on-account-of (his) fidelity and on-account-of (his) knowledge
 Gallicæ linguæ, quâ (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur
of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus did use
 multâ (adj.) jam longinquâ consuetudinē, et quòd
much (fluently) now by long custom, and because
 caussa peccandi esset (imp. subj.) non
a cause of transgressing was not
 Germanis in eo; et Marcum Mettium, qui
to the Germani in him; and Marcus Mettius, who
 usus-erat hospitio (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit
had used the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged
 his, ut cognoscèrent, quæ Ariovistus
to these, that they should know, what (things) Ariovistus
 diceret, et referrent ad se. Quos
might say, and should bring-back to himself. Whom
 quum Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in
when Ariovistus had beheld in
 castris (pl.) apud se, suo exercitu
(his) camp with himself, his army (being)
 præsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)
present, he cried-out: "Why did they come
 ad se? an caussâ speculandi?" Prohibuit
to himself? whether by reason of spying!" He prevented
 conantes dicere, et conjecit in
(them) endeavouring to speak, and cast (them) into
 catenas.
chains.

48. Eodem die promovit castra (pl.),
In the same day he moved-forward (his) camp,
 et consedit sub monte sex millibus (abl.)
and sat-down under a mountain six thousands
 passuum à castris (pl.) Cæsaris. Postridie
of paces from the camp of Cæsar The day-after
 ejus diei transduxit suas copias præter castra (pl.)
of that day he led-over his forces beyond the camp
 Cæsaris et fecit castra (pl.) duobus
of Cæsar and made camp (encamped) by two
 millibus (abl.) passuum ultra eum, eo
thousands of paces beyond him, with this
 consilio, uti intercluderet Cæsarem frumento
design, that he might shut-in. Cæsar from corn
 que commeatu, qui supportaretur ex
and provision, which might be carried-u, from
 Sequanis et Æduis. Ex eo die Cæsar
the Sequani and the Ædui. From that day Cæsar
 produxit suas copias quinque continuos
led-forth his forces five continual (successive)
 dies pro castris (pl.), et habuit aciem
days before the camp, and had † (his) battle-line
 instructam, ut si Ariovistus vellet contendere
arrayed, that if Ariovistus might will to contend
 proelio, potestas deesset non ei.
in battle, the power might be-wanting not to him.
 Ariovistus omnibus his diebus continuè exercitum
Ariovistus in all these days retained (his) army
 castris (pl.); contendit quotidie proelio equestri (adj.).
in camp; he contended daily in battle of-horse.
 Hoc erat genus pugnæ, quo Germani
This was the kind of battle, in which the Germans
 exercuerant se. Erant sex millia
had exercised themselves. (There) were six thousands
 equitum, totidem numero pedites velocissimi
of horsemen, as many in number foot-soldiers most-swif

ac	fortissimi,	singulos	quos	singuli
and	most-brave,	each	whom	each

delegerant	ex	omni	copiâ,	caussâ
had chosen	from	all	the force,	by reason (for the

sûæ	salutis.	Versabantur	cum
of-their-own	safety.	They were employed	with

his	in	præliis ;	equites	recipiebant
these	in	battles;	the horsemen	dia betake

se	ad	hos :	hi,	si	quid
themselves	to	these :	these,	if	any (thing)

erat	durius,	concurrabant :	si	qui,
was	more-hard,	did run-together (to succour) :	if	any,

graviore	vulnere	accepto,	deciderant
a heavier (very severe)	wound	being received,	had fallen-down

ëquo,	circumsistebant :	si	erat
from horse,	they did stand-around :	if	it was

prodeundum	longius	aut	recipiendum
to-be-advanced	further	or	to-be-retreated

celerius	quò,	tanta	erat	celeritas
more-quickly	any-where,	so great	was	the speed

horum	exercitatione,	ut,	sublevati	jübis
of these	by exercise,	that,	lifted-up	by the manes

equorum,	adæquarent	cursum.
of the horses,	they would equal	(their) course.

49. Ubi	Cæsar	intellexit	ëum	tenere	sese
When	Cæsar	understood	him	to hold	himself

castris,	ne-prohiberetur	diutius
in camps,	that he might not be prohibited	longer

commeatu,	delegit	lōcum	idonëum	castris,
from provision,	he chose	a place	suitable	for camps,

circiter	sex-cētos	passus	ultra	ëum	lōcum,	in quo
about	six hundred	paces	beyond	that place,	in which	

lōco	Germani	consederant,	que	triplici
place	the Germans	had sat-down (encamped)	and	a triple

acie	instructâ,	venit	ad	ëum	lōcum.	Jussit
line	being arrayed,	he came	to	that	place.	He ordered

primam et secundam aciem esse in armis, tertiam
the first and second line to be in arms, the third

munire castra (pl.). Hic locus, ut dictum-est,
to fortify the camp. This place, as has been said,

aberat ab hoste circiter sex-centos passus.
was-distant from the enemy about six-hundred paces.

Eò Ariovistus misit numerum hominum circiter
Thither Ariovistus sent a number of men about

sexdecim millia expedita, cum omni equitatu;
sixteen thousands light-armed, with all the cavalry;

quæ copiae perterrerent nostros, et prohiberent
which forces should alarm our (men), and should prohibit

munitione. Nihilò secius Cæsar,
from fortifying. By nothing less (nevertheless) Cæsar,

ut constituerat antè, jussit duas acies
as he had determined before, ordered the two lines

propulsare hostem, tertiam perficere opus.
to repel the enemy, the third to complete the work.

Castris munitis, reliquit ibi duas legiones
The camps being fortified, he left there two legions

et partem auxiliorum; reduxit quatuor
and part of the auxiliaries; he led-back the four

reliquas in maiora castra (pl.).
remaining (legions) into the greater camp.

50. Proximo die, Cæsar suo instituto
In the next day, Cæsar in his institution (custom)

eduxit suas copias ex utrisque castris; que
led-forth his forces out-of each camps; and

progressus paullulum à majoribus, instruxit
having advanced very-little from the greater, arrayed

aciem que fecit hostibus potestatem pugnandi.
(his) line and made to the enemies power of fighting.

Ubi intellexit eos ne tum quidem
When he understood them not then indeed (even)

prodire, circiter meridiem reduxit exercitum
to come-forth, about mid-day he led-back the army

in castra (pl.). Tum demum Ariovistus misit
into camp. Then at-last Ariovistus sent

partem suarum copiarum, quæ oppugnaret minora
part of his forces, which might assault the less

castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est acriter utrinque usque
camp. It was fought sharply on-both-sides until

ad vesp̄erum. Occasu solis Ariovistus reduxit
to evening. With setting of the sun Ariovistus led-back

sũas copias in castra (pl.), multis vulneribus et
his forces into camp, many wounds both

illatis et acceptis. Quum Cæsar
being brought-on (given) and received. When Cæsar

quæreret (imp. subj.) ex captivis, quamöbrem
did inquire from the captives, wherefore

Ariovistus decertaret (imp. subj.) non prælio,
Ariovistus did contend not in battle,

reperiebat hanc causam: Quòd ea consuetudo
he did find this the cause: Because that custom

esset (imp. subj.) apud Germanos, ut matres-
was with the Germans, that the mothers-

familiās eorum declararent sortibus et
of family of them should declare by lots and

vaticinationibus, utrũ esset ex usu
by prophecies, whether it might be out-of use (ad-

præliũ committi necne: eas dicere
vantageous) battle to be engaged or-not: them to say

ita, "Non esse fas Germanos superare, si
thus, "Not to be lawful the Germans to conquer, if

contendissent prælio ante novam
they might have contended in battle before the new

lunam."
moon."

51. Postridie ejus diei, præsidio relicto
The day-after of that day, a guard being left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est satis, constituit
to each camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro
all the flankers in sight of the enemies before
 minoribus castris (plur.), (quod valebat
the less camp, (because he did avail (was strong)
 minus multitudine legionariorum militum pro
less in the multitude of legionary soldiers for
 numero hostium;) ut uteretur
(considering) the number of the enemies;) that he might use
 alariis (abl.) ad speciem. Ipse, triplici
the flankers to (for) appearance. (He) himself, a triple
 acie instructa, accessit usque ad castra
line being arrayed. approached as-far-as to the camps
 hostium. Tum demum necessario Germani
of the enemies. Then at-last necessarily the Germans
 eduxerunt suas copias e castris: que
led-out their forces from the camps: and
 constituerunt generatim; que paribus
arranged (them) by-sorts (tribes); and at equal
 intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboccos,
intervals, the Harudes, Marcomani, Tribocci,
 Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos; que
Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusii, Sueni; and
 circumdederunt omnem suam aciem rhedis
surrounded all their line with carriages
 et carris. Eo imposuerunt mulieres, quæ,
and waggons. There they placed-on the women, who,
 crinibus passis, flentes
(their) hairs (locks) being spread (dishevelled), weeping
 implorabant milites proficiscentes in prælium,
did implore the soldiers setting-out into battle,
 ne-tradèrent se in servitutem
that they would not deliver themselves into slavery
 Romanis.
to the Romans.

52. Cæsar præfecit singulos legatos
Cæsar set-over each (separate) lieutenants

et quæstorem singulis legionibus, uti quisque
and a quæstor to each legions, that every-one
 haberet eos testes suæ virtutis. Ipse
might have them witnesses of his valour. (He) himself
 à dextro cornu, quod animadverterat
from the right horn (wing), because he had observed
 eam partem hostium esse minimè firmam,
that part of the enemies to be least firm,
 commisit proelium. Nostri, signo dato,
engaged battle. Our (men), the sign being given,
 fecerunt impetum ita acriter in hostes: que
made an attack so sharply upon the enemies: and
 hostes procurrerunt ita repentè que celeriter, ut
the enemies ran-forward so suddenly and quickly, that
 spatium conjiciendi pila in hostes
space of throwing the javelins against the enemies
 daretur non. Pila rejectis,
might be given not. The javelins being thrown-away,
 pugnatum-est cominus gladiis. At Germani
it was fought hand-to-hand with swords. But the Germans
 celeriter ex sua consuetudine, phalange
quickly according-to their custom, a phalanx
 factâ, exceperunt impetum gladiatorum. Complures
being made, received the attacks of the swords. Very-many
 nostri milites reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in
our soldiers were-found, who would leap-up upon
 phalanges et revellerent scuta
the phalanxes and would pull-back the shields
 manibus, et vulnerarent desuper. Quum
with (their) hands, and would wound from above. When
 acies hostium pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à
the line of the-enemies had been repulsed from (on)
 sinistro cornu, atque conversa in fugam,
the left horn (wing), and turned into flight,
 premebant nostram aciem vehementer à
they did press our line vehemently from (on)

dextro cornu multitudine suorum.
the right horn (wing), by the multitude of their (men).

Quum Publius Crassus adolescens, qui præerat
When Publius Crassus a young-man, who was-over

equitatūi, animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id,
to the cavalry, had perceived that,

quòd erat expeditior quàm hi, qui
because he was more-disengaged than these, who

versabantur inter aciem, misit tertiam aciem
were engaged amid the line, he sent the third line

nostris laborantibus subsidio.
to our (men) labouring (distressed) for a reserve.

53. Ita prælium restitutum-est atque omnes
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, nèque destiterunt
the enemies turned (their) backs, nor desisted

fugère, prius quàm pervenerunt ad flumen
to flee, before than they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circiter quinquaginta millia passuum ex
Rhine, about fifty thousands of paces from

eo loco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi
that place. There very-few, either having trusted

viribus (pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut,
to strength, strained (endeavoured) to swim-over; or,

lintribus inventis, petierunt salutem sibi.
barks being found, sought safety to themselves.

In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, nactus
In these was Ariovistus, who, having obtained

naviculam deligatam ad ripam, profugit eâ:
a little-ship bound at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equites consecuti interfecerunt omnes
our horsemen having overtaken killed all

reliquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt duæ,
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva natione, quam adduxerat
one a Suevian by nation, whom he had led-up

secum dōmo ; altēra Norīca, sōror
with himself from home ; the other a Norican, sister
 regis Vocionis, quam duxerat Galliā,
of king Vocio, whom he had led (married) in Gaul,
 missam à fratre : utrāque perīit in eā
sent by (her) brother : each perished in that
 fūgā : dūæ filiæ harum, altēra
flight : (there were) two daughters of these, the other
 occisa-est, altēra capta. Caius Valerius
(one) was slain, the other taken. Caius Valerius
 Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)
 fūgā vinctus trinis catenis à custodībūs,
flight bound with three chains by (his) keepers,
 incidit in Cæsārem ipsum persequentem
fell upon (fell in with) Cæsar himself pursuing
 equitatum hostiūm. Quæ res quīdem
the cavalry of the enemies. Which thing indeed
 attulit non minorem voluptatem Cæsāri, quā
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than
 victoriā ipsa ; quod videbat honestissimū
the victory itself ; because he did see a most-honourable
 homīnem provinciæ Galliæ, sūm familiarem
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance
 et hospitem, ereptum è manībūs hostiūm,
and host, rescued out-of the hands of the enemies,
 restitutum sibi : nēque fortuna diminuērat
restored to himself : nor fortune had diminished
 quidquam de tantā voluptate et gratulatione
any-thing from so-great pleasure and congratulation
 calamitate ejus. Is dicebat consultum (-esse)
by the calamity of him. He did say to have been consulted
 sortībūs ter, se præsente, de
by lots thrice, himself (being) present, about
 se, utrūm necaretur statim igni,
himself, whether he should be killed immediately with fire,

an reservaretur in aliud tempus : se
 or should be reserved unto another time : himself

esse incolūmen beneficio sortium. Item
 to be safe by the kindness of the lots. Likewise

Marcus Mettius repertus-est et reductus ad eum.
 Marcus Mettius was found and led back to him.

54. Hoc proelio nuntiato trans Rhenum,
 This battle being announced beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venērunt ad ripas Rheni,
 the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine,

cœperunt reverti dōmum : quos Ubii, qui
 began to return home : whom the Ubii, who

incolunt proximè Rhenum, insecuti
 inhabit nearest the Rhine, having followed-up

perterritos, occiderunt magnum numerum ex his.
 dismayed, slew a great number out-of these.

Cæsar, duobus maxīmis bellis confectis unâ
 Cæsar, two greatest wars being finished in one

æstatē, seduxit paullo maturiūs, quàm tempus
 summer, led-away a little earlier, than the time

anni postulabat, exercitum in hiberna
 of the year did demand, the army into winter-quarters

in Sequānos : præposuit Labienum hibernis :
 into the Sequani : he set-over Labienus to the winter-quarters :

ipse profectus-est in citeriorem Galliam ad
 himself departed into hither Gaul to

conventus agendos.
 assemblies to-be-acted (held)

LIBER SECUNDUS.

BOOK SECOND.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Secundus liber continet quatuor bellicas expeditiones;
The second book contains four warlike expeditions;

nempe, bellum contra Belgas, contra Nervios;
namely, the war against the Belgæ, against the Nervii;

contra Atuaticos; contra Armoricos, quos
against the Atuatici; against the Armorici, whom

postremos P. Crassus legatus ejus debellavit
last P. Crassus lieutenant of him vanquished

sub auspiciis ejus. Hæc gesta-sunt
under the auspices of him. These (things) were done

sexcentesimo nonagesimo septimo anno ab
in the six hundredth ninetyeth seventh year from

urbe conditâ.
the city being built.

1. QUUM Cæsar esset (imp. subj.) in citeriore
When Cæsar was in hither

Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti demonstravimus
Gaul in winter-quarters, so as we have shown

suprà, crebri rumores afferebantur ad eum, que
above, frequent rumours were brought to him, and

item fiebat certior litēris (pl.) Labieni,
likewise he was made more-sure by letters of Labienus,
 omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertiam
all the Belgæ, which we have said to be the third
 partem Galliæ, conjurare contra Romanum populum,
part of Gaul, to conspire against the Roman people,
 que dare obsides inter se. Has esse
and to give hostages between themselves. These to be
 causas conjurandi: primum, quod vererentur
the causes of conspiring: first, because they did fear
 (imp. subj.) ne, omni Galliâ pacatâ, noster
lest, all Gaul being subdued, our
 exercitus adduceretur ad eos: deinde, quod
army should be led-up to them: next, because
 sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim
they were solicited by some Gauls, partly
 qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos versari
who, as they were-unwilling the Germani to be engaged
 diutius in Galliâ, ita ferebant molestè exercitum
longer in Gaul, so they did bear uneasily the army
 Romani populi hiemare atque inveterascere in
of the Roman people to winter and to grow-old in
 Galliâ; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate animi,
Gaul; partly who, by fickleness and lightness of mind,
 studebant novis imperiis; etiam
aid study (were favourable) to new governments; also
 ab nonnullis, quod in Galliâ regna vulgò
by some, because in Gaul kingdoms commonly
 occupabantur à potentioribus atque iis, qui
were occupied by the more-pouwerful and by those, who
 habebant facultates ad homines conducendos; qui
did have means to men to-be-hired; who
 poterant minùs facîle consēqui eam rem nostro
were-able less easily to attain that thing (under) our
 imperio.
government.

2. Cæsar commotus iis nuntiis que
Cæsar moved by those announcements and
 litēris conscripsit duas nōvas legiones in citeriore
letters levied two new legions in hither
 Galliā, et æstate inītā, misit Quintum
Gaul, and summer being entered, he sent Quintus
 Pedium legatum qui deducēret in
Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into
 interiorem Galliām. Ipse, quum primū copīa
inner Gaul. Himself, when first plenty
 pabūli incipēret (imp. subj.) esse, venit ad exercitum.
of forage did begin to be, came to the army.
 Dat negotiū Senonibus que
He gives business (he commissions) to the Senones and
 reliquis Gallis, qui erant finitimi Belgis,
to the remaining Gauls, who were bordering to the Belgæ,
 ut cognoscant ēa, quæ gerantur
that they may learn those (things), which are carried-on
 (pres. subj.) apud eos, et faciant se
with them, and may make himself
 certiores de his rebus.
more-certain (may inform him) about these things.
 Omnes hi constanter nunciaverunt, manus
All these constantly announced, bands
 cogi, exercitum conduci
to be brought-together (collected), an army to be led-together
 in unum locum. Tum verò existimavit non
into one place. Then indeed he thought not
 dubitandum, quin proficisceretur ad eos
to-be-doubted, but-that he should set-out to them
 duodecimo diē. Re frumentariā
on the twelfth day. The affair relating-to-corn (the supplies)
 provisā, movet castra (pl.) que diebus
being provided, he moves camp and in days
 circiter quindēcim pervēnit ad fines Belgarum.
about fifteen arrives to the borders of the Belgæ.

3. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) ěd de
When he had come thither from
 improviso que celerius opinione
unexpected (unexpectedly) and more-quickly than the opinion
 omnium, Rhemi, qui sunt proximi ex Belgis
of all, the Rhemi, who are nearest out-of the Belgæ
 Galliæ, miserunt ad ěum legatos, Iccium et
to Gaul, sent to him ambassadors, Iccius and
 Antebrogium primos sũæ civitatis, qui dicērent,
Antebrogius first (men) of their state, who might say,
 “permittēre se que omnia sũa
to permit (to yield) themselves and all their (effects)
 in fidem atque potestatem Romani populi,
into the faith and power of the Roman people,
 nēque se consensisse cum reliquis
nor themselves to have consented with the remaining
 Belgis, nēque conjurāsse omnino contra
Belgæ, nor to have conspired at all against
 Romanum populum, que esse paratos et dare
the Roman people, and to be prepared both to give
 obsides, et facere imperata, et recipere
hostages, and to do (things) commanded, and to receive
 oppidis et juvare frumento que cætēris
(them) in towns and to aid with corn and with other
 rebus; omnes reliquos Belgas esse in armis:
things; all the remaining Belgæ to be in arms:
 que Germanos, qui incōlunt cis Rhenum
and the Germans, who inhabit on-this-side the Rhine
 conjunxisse sese cum his; que
to have joined-together themselves with these (Belgæ); and
 tantum esse furorem omnium eorum, ut
so-great to be the fury of all of them, that
 potuērint (perf. subj.) deterrere ne quidem
they have been able to deter not indeed (even)
 Suessiones, suos fratres que consanguineos, qui
the Suessiones, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem
 use with the same right, with the same

legibus, habēant (pres. subj.) unum imperium, que
 laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin
 one magistracy with themselves, but-that

consentirent cum his.
 they would consent with these.

4. Quum quæreret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ
 When he did inquire from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,
 states and how-great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello, reperiebat
 and what they were-able in war, he did find

sic : plerosque Belgas ortos-esse
 thus ; the most-of the Belgæ to have sprung from

Germanis que antiquitùs transductos Rhenum,
 the Germans and anciently led-over the Rhine,

consedissee ibi propter fertilitatem
 to have sat-down (settled) there on-account-of the fertility

agri ; que expulisse Gallos, qui
 of the land ; and to have driven-out the Gauls, who

incolērent (imp. subj.) eā loca ; que esse solos,
 did inhabit those places ; and to be alone,

qui, memoriâ nostrorum patrum, omni Galliâ
 who, in the memory of our fathers, all Gaul

vexatâ, prohibuērint (perf. subj.) Teutōnes que
 being harassed, prohibited the Teutones and

Cimbros ingredi intra suos fines. Ex quâ
 Cimbri to enter within their borders. Out-of which

re fieri uti sumērent (imp. subj.)
 thing to be made (it happened) that they did take

magnam auctoritatem que magnos spiritus in
 great authority and great spirits in

militari re sibi, memoriâ earum
 military affair to themselves, by the memory of those

rerum. Rhemi dicebant se habere
things. The Rhemi did say themselves to have

omnia explorata de numero eorum, propterea
all (things) explored about the number of them, because

quod conjuncti propinquitatibus (pl.) atque
that joined-together by kindred and

affinitatibus, cognoverint (perf. subj.) quantam
by marriage-alliances, they knew how-great

multitudinem quisque pollicitus-sit (perf. subj.) in
a multitude each promised in

communi concilio Belgarum ad id bellum.
the common council of the Belgæ to that war.

Bellovacos valere plurimum inter eos, et
The Bellovaci to prevail most among them, both

virtute, et auctoritate, et numero hominum;
in valour, and in authority, and in the number of men;

hos posse conficere centum millia
these to-be-able to accomplish (raise) a hundred thousands

armata; pollicitos sexaginta millia lecta
armed (men); having promised sixty thousands chosen

ex eo numero, que postulare imperium
out-of that number, and to demand the supreme-authority

belli sibi. Suessiones esse suos
of the war to themselves. The Suessiones to be their

finitimos; possidere latissimos que feracissimos
neighbours to possess the most-wide and most-productive

agros; Divitiacum fuisse regem apud eos,
lands: Divitiacus to have-been king with (over) them,

potentissimum totius Galliae, etiam nostram
the most-powerful of the whole Gaul, even in our

memoriam, qui cum obtinuerit (perf. subj.)
memory, who when (both) obtained

imperium magnae partis harum regionum, tum
the empire of great part of these regions, then (as)

etiam Britanniae; Galbam nunc esse regem;
also of Britain; Galba now to be (their) king;

summam totius belli deferri
the sum (chief command) of the whole war to be conferr'd

ad hunc voluntate omnium; habere duodēcim
to this (man) by the will of all; to have twelve

oppīda numēro: polliceri quinquaginta millia
towns in number; to promise fifty thousands

armata: Nervios, totidem, qui habeantur (pres.
armed: the Nervii, just-as-many, who are-had (deemed)

subj.) maximē-fēri inter ipsos que absint (pres. subj.)
the most-fierce among them and are-distant

longissimē; Atrebātes, quindēcim millia;
farthest; the Atrebatēs, fifteen thousands;

Ambianos, decem millia; Morinos, viginti
the Ambiani, ten thousands; the Morini, twenty

quinque millia; Menapios, novem millia;
five thousands; the Menapii nine thousands;

Calētes decem millia; Velocasses et
the Caletes ten thousands; the Velocasses and

Veromandūos totidem; Aduaticos, viginti novem
Veromandui just-as-many; the Aduatici, twenty nine

millia; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cæresos,
thousands; to deem the Condrusi, Eburones, Cæresi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomine Germani,
Pæmani, who are called by one name Germans,

ad quadraginta millia.
to forty thousands.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus Rhemos, que
Cæsar, having encouraged the Rhemi, and

prosecutus liberaliter oratione, jussit
having followed-up liberally (kindly) with speech, ordered

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que
all (their)-senate to come-together to himself, and

liberos principum adduci obsides ad
the children of chiefs to be brought (as) hostages to

se. Omnia quæ facta-sunt diligenter
himself. all which (things) were-done diligently

ab his ad diem. Ipse cohortatus
 by these to the day. Himself having encouraged
 magnopere Ædūum Divitiācum, que docet
 earnestly the Æduan Divitiacus, both teaches.
 quantopere intersit (pres. subj.) Reipublicæ (gen.) que
 how-greatly it concerns the Republic and
 communis salutis, manus hostium distineri,
 the common safety, the bands of the enemies to be separated,
 ne sit cōfigendum uno tempore cum
 lest it may be to be fought in one time with
 tantā multitudīne; id posse fieri, si
 so-great a multitude; that to be able to be done, if
 Ædūi introduxerint suas copias in
 the Ædui shall have introduced their forces into
 fines Bellovacorum et cœperint (fut. subj.)
 the borders of the Bellovaci and begun
 populari agros eorum. His mandatis,
 to ravage the lands of them. These (things) being enjoined,
 dimittit eum ab se. Postquam cognovit
 he dismisses him from himself. After-that he knew
 ab his exploratoribus, quos miserat, et
 from these scouts, whom he had sent, and
 ab Rhemis, omnes copias Belgarum coactas
 from the Rhemi, all the forces of the Belgæ collected
 in unum locum venire ad se, neque jam
 into one place to come to himself, nor now
 abesse longē; maturavit transducere flumen
 to be-distant far; he hastened to lead-over (cross) the river
 Axōnam, quod est in extremis finibus Rhemorum,
 Axona, which is in the extreme borders of the Rhemi,
 exercitum, atque ibi posuit castra (pl.). Quæ
 the army, and there placed (his) camp. Which
 res et muniebat unum latus castrorum (pl.)
 thing both did fortify one side of the camp
 ripis fluminis et reddebat ea
 by the banks of the river and did render those (things)

quæ ěrant pòst, tuta ab hostĩbus, et
which were behind, safe from the enemies, and

efficiebat, ut commeatus posset portari
did effect, that provision might-be-able to be carried

ad ěum ab Rhemis, que reliquis civitatĩbus
to him from the Rhemi, and the remaining states

sine pericũlo. Pons ěrat in ěo flumĩne;
without danger. A bridge was in (on) that river;

ibi ponit præsidiũ, et reliquit Quintum
there he places a guard, and left Quintus

Tituriũ Sabinum legatum in altĕrâ parte
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant in the other part (side)

flumĩnis cum sex cohortĩbus; jũbet
of the river with six cohorts; he orders (them)

munire castra (pl.) vallo in altitudĩnem
to fortify the camp with a rampart into height

duodĕcim pĕdum que fossâ duodeviginti
of twelve feet and with a trench of eighteen

pĕdum.
feet.

6. Oppĩdum Rhemorum, nomĩne Bibrax, abĕrat
A town of the Rhemi, by name Bibrax, was-distant

octo millia passũum ab castris ipsis;
eight thousands of paces from the camps themselves;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impĕtu
the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinĕre: sustentatum est
out-of (on) (their) journey (march): it (the assault) was sustained

ĕgrĕ ěo die. Oppugnatio Gallorum
hardly in that day. The assault of the Gauls

Belgarum est eãdem. Hi, ũbi, multitudĩne
of the Belgæ is the same. These, when, a multitude

homĩnum circumjectâ totis mœnĩbus (dĩcĩtũr).
of men being thrown-around the whole walls

lapĩdes cœpti-sunt jãci in mœnĩbus
stones were-begun to be thrown against the walls

undique que murus nudatus-est defensoribus ;
on-all-sides and the wall was-stripped from defenders ;
 testudinē factâ, succedunt
a tortoise (a military covering) being made, approach
 portis (dat.) que subrūunt murum. Quod tum
the gates and undermine the wall. Which then
 fiebat facile ; nam tanta multitudo conjiciebant
was done easily ; for so-great a multitude did throw
 lapides ac tela, ut potestas consistendi in
stones and darts, that a power of standing in (on)
 muro esset (imp. subj.) nulli. Quum nox fecisset
wall was to none. When night had made
 (pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Rhemus Iccius,
an end of assaulting, the Rhemian Iccius,
 summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter
with (of the) highest nobility and favour among
 suos, qui tum præerat oppido ; unus ex
his-own, who then was-over to the town ; one out-of
 iis, qui venérant ad Cæsarem legati
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors
 de pace, mittit nuntios ad eum, nisi
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless
 subsidium mittatur (pres. subj.) sibi, se
a succour is sent to himself, himself
 posse non sustinere diutius.
to be able not to sustain (hold out) longer.

7. Eò de mediâ nocte, Cæsar usus
Thither about middle night, Cæsar having used
 iisdem ducibus, qui venérant nuntii
with the same guides, who had come (as) messengers
 ab Iccio, mittit Numidas et Cretas sagittarios
from Iccius, sends Numidian and Cretan archers
 et Baleares funditores subsidio oppidanis.
and Balearic slingers for a succour to the townsmen.
 Adventu quorum, et studium propugnandi
By the arrival of whom, both eagerness of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit
with hope of defence approached (was added)

Rhemis, et de eâdem caussâ spes
to the Rhemi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppidi discessit hostibus.
of gaining the town departed from the enemies.

Itaque morati paulisper apud oppidum
Therefore having delayed a little-while at the town

que depopulati agros Rhemorum, omnibus
and having laid-waste the lands of the Rhemi, all

vicis que ædificiis incensis, quò
the villages and edifices having been burnt, where

poterant adire, contenderunt
they were able to approach, they strained (hastened)

ad castra Cæsaris cum omnibus copiis,
to the camps of Cæsar with all (their) forces,

et posuerunt castra (pl.) à minùs duobus
and placed camp from (at) less than two

millibus passuum, quæ castra (pl.), ut significabatur
thousands of paces, which camp as was signified

funio atque ignibus, patebant in latitudinem
by smoke and by fires, did extend into breadth

amplius octo millibus passuum.
more (than) eight thousands of paces.

8. Cæsar primò statuit supersedere
Cæsar at-first determined to supersede (abstain

prælio (abl.) et propter multitudinem
from) battle both on-account-of the multitude

hostium et propter eximiam opinionem
of the enemies and on-account-of the eminent opinion

virtutis; tamen periclitabatur quotidie
of (their) valour; yet he did hazard (make trial) daily

equestribus præliis, quid hostis posset
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might-be-able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi
in valour, and what our (men) might-dare. When

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores, lōco
he understood our (men) to be not inferior, the place

pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque idoneo
before the camp (being) opportune and fit-

naturā ad aciem instruendam; quōd is
by nature to the line to-be-arrayed; because that

collis ūbi castra (pl.) posita-erant, editus
hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

pauclūlum ex planitiē, patebat in
a little out-of the plain, did lie-open (extend) into

latitudinē adversus antum lōci, quantum
breadth opposite so-much of place, as-much-as

acies instructa potērat occupare atque habebat
the line (of battle) arrayed was-able to occupy, and did have

dejectus latēris ex utrāque parte, et
descents of the side from (on) either part, and

lenīter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim redibat
gently pointed (sloping) in front, gradually did return

ad planitiē: ab utroque latēre ejus collis
to a plain: from each side of that hill

obduxit transversam fossam circīter quadringenorum
he led-over a transverse trench about of four-hundred

passūum, et ad extremas fossas
paces, and at the extreme (both ends of) the trenches

constituit castella, que ibi collocavit tormenta;
he erected castles, and there placed engines;

ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.) aciem,
lest, when he had arrayed (his) line,

hostes (quōd potērant tantum multitudine)
the enemies (because they were-able so-much by multitude)

possent circumvenire à laterībus suos
might be-able to surround from (on) the flanks his (men)

pugnantes. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas
fighting. This being done, two legions, which

conscripsērat proximē, relictis in castris,
he had levied most-nearly (last), being left in camp

ut, si quid ōpus esset possent
that, if any need should be, they might be-able

duci subsidio, constituit reliquas sex
to be led for a relief, he arranged the remaining six

legiones in acie pro castris (pl.). Item
legions in line before the camp. Likewise

hostes instruxerant suas copias eductas ex
the enemies had arrayed their forces led-out from

castris (pl.).
the camp.

9. Pālus non magna erat inter nostrum atque
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercitum hostium; hostes expectabant, si
the army of the enemies; the enemies did await, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri erant
our (men) would pass-over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initium transeundi
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of passing

fieret ab illis, aggrederentur impeditos.
should be made by them, they might attack (them) entangled.

Intērim contendebatur equestri praelio
Meanwhile it was contended in an equestrian battle

inter duas acies. Ubi neutri faciunt
between the two lines. When neither make

initium transeundi, praelio nostrorum equitum
a beginning of passing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit suos in
(being) more successful, Cæsar led-back his (men) into

castra. Hostes protinus contenderunt
the camps. The enemies forthwith strained (hastened)

ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam, quod
from that place to the river Axona, which

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi
has been pointed-out to be behind our camp; there

valdis repertis, conati-sunt transducere
fords being found, they endeavoured to lead-over

partem suarum copiarum, ěo consilio, ut,
part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,
if they should be-able, they might storm the castle,

cui Q. Titurius legatus præerat, que
to which Q. Titurius the lieutenant was-over, and

interscindèrent pontem: si mīnus, popula-
might cut-down the bridge: if less (not), they might

rentur agros Rhemorum, qui ěrant magno
ravage the lands of the Rhemi, which were for (of) great

usui nobis ad bellum gerendum que sustinebant
use to us to the war to-be-carried-on and did sustain

nostros commeatus.
our provisions.

10. Cæsar factus certior à Titurio,
Cæsar being made more-sure by Titurius,

transducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numidas
leads-over the bridge all the cavalry. and Numidians

lēvis armaturæ, funditores que sagittarios, atque
of light armour, the slingers and archers, and

contendit ad ěos. Pugnatum-est acriter in
strains (hastens) to them. It was fought sharply in

ěo lōco: nostri aggressi hostes
that place: our (men) having attacked the enemies

impeditos in flumine, occiderunt magnum numĕrum
entangled in the river, slew a great number

eorum: repulerunt multitudīne telorum
of them: they repulsed with a multitude of weapons

reliquos conantes audacissimè transire
the remaining (men) endeavouring most-boldly to pass

per corpōra eorum: interfecerunt primos, qui
through the bodies of them: they killed the first, who

transiĕrant, circumventos equitatu. Hostes,
had passed, surrounded with the cavalry. The enemies,

ubi intellexerunt spem fefellisse se
when they understood hope to have deceived themselves

et de oppido expugnando, et de flumine
and (both) of the town to-be-stormed, and of the river

transeundo, nēque viderunt nostros progrēdi
to-be-passed-over, nor saw our (men) to advance

in iniquiorem locum caussâ
into more-unequal (disadvantageous) place by cause (for

pugnandi, atque frumentariâ res
the sake) of fighting, and corn thing (provisions)

cœpit deficere eos; concilio convocato,
began to fail them; a council being called-together,

constituerunt esse optimum quemque reverti suam
they resolved to be best each to return (to) his

dōmum: et convenire undique ad eos
home: and to assemble from-all-sides to them

defendendos, in fines quorum Romani
to-be-defended, into the borders of whom the Roman-

primū introduxissent exercitum; ut decertarent
first might have led-in the army; that they might contend

potius in suis, quàm alienis finibus, et
rather in their-own, than in foreign borders, and

uterentur domesticis copiis (abl.) frumentariæ rei.
might use domestic supplies of corn thing

Quoque hæc ratio, cum reliquis
(provisions). Also this reason, with the remaining

caussis, deduxit eos ad eam sententiā,
causes, brought them to that opinion (resolution),

quod cognoverant Divitiacum atque Ædūos
because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædui

appropinquare finibus Bellovacorum. Poterat
to approach to the borders of the Bellovaci. It-was-able

non persuaderi his, ut morarentur
not to be persuaded to those, that they should delay

diutius, nēque ferrent auxilium suis.
longer, nor should bring assistance to their (countrymen).

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ,
That thing being resolved, in the second watch,

egressi castris cum magno strepitu
having gone-out from the camps with great noise

ac tumultu, nullo certo ordine, neque imperio,
and tumult, in no certain order neither command,

quum quisque petēret (imp. subj.) primum locum
when each did seek the first place

itinēris sibi, et properaret (imp. subj.)
of the journey to himself, and did-hasten

pervenire domum, fecerunt, ut profectione
to arrive (to) home, they made, that (their) departure

videretur (imp. subj.) consimilis fugæ. Hæc
did seem like to a flight. This

re statim cognita per speculatores, Cæsar
thing immediately being known by scouts, Cæsar

veritus insidias, quod perspexerat nondum
having feared snares, because he had seen-clearly not-yet

de quâ causâ discederent (imp. subj.) continuavit
from what cause they did depart held

exercitum, que equitatum castris. Primâ luce,
the army, and cavalry in camp. In first light.

re confirmatâ ab exploratoribus,
the thing being confirmed by scouts,

præmisit omnem equitatum, qui moraretur
he sent-before all the cavalry, which should delay

novissimum agmen; que præfecit
(detain) the last troop (rear); and he appointed

Quintum Pedium, et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam
Quintus Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

legatos ei: jussit Titum Labienum
lieutenants to it: he ordered Titus Labienus

legatum subsequi cum tribus legionibus.
the lieutenant to follow-close with three legions

Hi adorti novissimos et persecuti
These having attacked the last (rear) and having pursued

multa millia passuum, conciderunt magnam
(them) many thousands of paces, cut-up a great

multitudinem eorum fugentium. Quum hi ab
multitude of them fleeing. When those from (on)

extremo agmine, ad quos ventum-erat,
the last troop (rear), to whom it had been come,

consisterent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)
did stand-together, and did sustain

fortiter impetum nostrorum militum; priores,
bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former (the

quod viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à
van), because they did seem to be distant from

periculo, neque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ
danger, nor were held-together by any

necessitate neque imperio, clamore exaudito,
necessity nor command, the noise being heard,

ordinibus perturbatis, omnes posuerunt
the ranks being disturbed (confused), all placed

praesidium sibi in fugâ. Ita sine ullo
safe-guard to themselves in flight. Thus without any

periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudinem
danger our (men) killed so-great a multitude

eorum, quantum spatium diei fuit; que
of them, as the space of the day was; and

sub occasum solis destiterunt
under (about) the going-down of the sun they desisted

sēqui, que receperunt se in castra, uti
to follow, and betook themselves into camps, as

imperatum-erat.
it had been commanded.

12. Postridie ejus diei, prius-quàm hostes
The day after of that day, before-that the enemies

reciperent se ex terrore ac fugâ,
might recover themselves out-of terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercitum in fines Suessi-
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Su-

onum, qui erant proximi Rhemis; et
essionses. who were nearest to the Rhemi. and

magno itinēre confecto, contendit ad
a great journey being accomplished, he hastened to
 oppidum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm
 id ex itinēre, quod audiebat
that out-of the journey (in his march), because he did hear
 esse vacūum ab defensoribus, potuit
(it) to be void from (of) defenders, he was-able
 non expugnare propter latitudinem fossæ,
not to storm (it) on-account-of the breadth of the ditch,
 que altitudinem muri, paucis defendentibus.
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).
 Castris munitis cœpit agere
The camps being fortified he began to act (to apply);
 vinæas, que comparare quæ erant
mantlets, and to prepare (the things) which were
 usui ad oppugnandum. Intērim omnis multitudo
to use to to-storming. Meanwhile all the multitude
 Suessionum ex fugâ convēnit in
of the Suessiones out-of flight comes-together into
 oppidum proximâ nocte. Vinæis actis
the town in the nearest (next) night. Mantlets being applied
 celeriter ad oppidum, aggere jacto, que
quickly to the town, a mound being thrown-up, and
 turribus constitutis, Galli permoti
towers erected, the Gauls much-moved (alarmed)
 magnitudine op̃erum, quæ nēque vidērant
by the greatness of the works, which neither they had seen
 antè nēque audiērant, et celeritate
before nor had heard, and by the quickness
 Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsārem
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar
 de deditione; et, Rhemis petentibus,
about a surrender; and, the Rhemi seeking (asking),
 ut conservarentur, impētrant.
that they might be preserved, they obtain (safety)

13. **Primis** civitatis, atque duobus filiis
The first (men) of the state, and two sons
regis Galbæ ipsius acceptis obsidibus, que
of king Galba himself being received (as) hostages, and
annibus armis transdītis ex oppīdo, Cæsar
all arms being delivered out-of the town, Cæsar
accepit Suessiones in deditionem; que duxit
received the Suessiones into a surrender; and led
exercitum in Bellovācos: qui quum contu-
the army into the Bellovaci: who when they had
lissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnia
brought-together themselves and all
sua in oppīdum Bratuspantiū, atque Cæsar,
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and Cæsar,
cum exercitu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab eo oppīdo
with the army, was-distant from that town
circiter quinque millia passuum, omnes
about five thousands of paces, all (those)
maiores natu egressi ex oppīdo,
greater by birth (elders) having gone-out from the town,
cœperunt tendere mānus ad Cæsārem,
began to stretch (their) hands to Cæsar,
significare voce, sese venire in fidem
to signify by voice, themselves to come into the faith
ac potestatem ejus nēque contendere contra
and power of him nor to contend against
Romanum populum armis: item, quum
the Roman people with arms: also, when
accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppīdum, que
he had approached to the town, and
poneret (imp. subj.) castra ibi, puēri que
aid place camps there, the boys and
muliēres ex muro, manibus passis,
women out-of (from) the wall, with hands stretched-out,
suo more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.
by their custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiācus facit verba pro his
Divitiacus makes words (a speech) for these
 (nam post discessum Belgarum, copiis
(for after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces
Æduorum dimissis, revertērat ad
of the Ædui being sent-away, he had returned to
 ĕum) : Bellovācos omni tempore fuisse
him (Cæsar) : the Bellovaci in all time to have been
 in fide atque amicitīā Ædūæ civitatis ;
in the faith and friendship of the Æduan state :
 impulsos à suis principibus, qui dicērent (imp.
impelled by their chiefs, who did say
 subj.) Ædūos redactos in servitutem à Cæsāre,
the Ædui reduced into servitude by Cæsar,
 perferre omnes indignitates que contumelias, et
to endure all indignities and affronts, and
 defecisse ab Ædūis, et intulisse
(both) to have revolted from the Ædui, and to have brought-on
 bellum Romano populo. Qui fuissent
war to the Roman people. (Those) who had been
 (pl. perf. subj.) principes hujus consilii, quod
chiefs (authors) of this counsel, because
 intelligērent (imp. subj.) quantam calamitatem
they did understand how-great a calamity
 intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati, profugisse
they had brought-on to the state, to have fled
 in Britanniam. Non solum Bellovācos petere,
into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci to entreat
 sed etiam Ædūos, pro his, ut utatur
but also the Ædui, for these, that he may use
 suā clementiā ac mansuetudinē in eos :
with his clemency and mildness towards - them.
 quod si fecerit, amplificaturum auctoritatem
which if he shall have done. about-to-enlarge the authority
 Æduorum apud omnes Belgas, auxiliis
of the Ædui at (among) all the Belgæ, by aids

atque opibus quorum consueverint (perf. subj.)
and resources of whom they have been-accustomed

sustentare, si qua bella incidērint.
to sustain, if any wars may have happened.

15. Cæsar, caussâ honoris
Cæsar, by cause (for the sake) of the honour

Divitiâci atque Æduorum, dixit sese
of Divitiacus and of the Ædui, said himself

recepturum eos in fidem et conservaturum ;
about-to-receive them into faith and about-to-preserve

et quod civitas erat magna et
(them) ; and because the state was great and

præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate ac multitudine
aid excel among the Belgæ in authority and in multitude

hominum, poposcit sex-centos obsides : his
of men, he required six-hundred hostages : these

traditis que omnibus armis collatis
being delivered and all (their) arms brought-together

ex oppido, pervenit ab eo loco in
out-of the town, he arrived from that place into

fines Ambianorum, qui dediderunt se
the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered themselves

que omnia sua sine morâ. Nervii
and all their (things) without delay. The Nervians

attingebant fines eorum : de naturâ que
did reach-to the borders of them : of the nature and

moribus quorum, quum Cæsar quæreret (imp. subj.),
manners of whom, when Cæsar did inquire,

reperiebat sic ; nullum aditum esse mercatoribus
he did find thus ; no access to be to merchants

ad eos : pati nihil vini, que reliquarum
to them ; to suffer nothing of wine, and of remaining

rerum pertinentium ad luxuriâ, inferri :
things tending to luxury, to be brought-in :

quod existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum
because they did think the minds of them

relanguescere, que virtutem remitti his
to grow-feeble, and (their) virtue to be relaxed by these

rebus : homines esse feros, que magnæ virtutis :
things : the men to be fierce, and of great virtue

increpidare atque incusare reliquos
(valour) : to chide and to blame the remaining

Belgæ, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se
Belgæ, who had surrendered themselves

Romano populo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to the Roman people, and had cast-off

patriam virtutem ; confirmare, se neque
(their) native virtue ; to affirm, themselves neither

missuros legatos, neque accepturos ullam
about-to-send ambassadors, nor about-to-receive any

conditionem pacis
condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) iter
When he had made a journey

triduo per fines eorum, inveniebat
for three-days through the borders of them, he did find

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab
from the captives, the river Subis to be-distant from

suis castris non amplius decem millia
his camps not more (than) ten thousands

passuum : omnes Nervios consedissee
of paces : all the Nervii to have sat-down (were posted)

trans id flumen, que ibi una cum
beyond that river, and there together with

Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, suis finitimis,
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbours,

expectare adventum Romanorum ; nam
to await the arrival of the Romans ; for

persuasérant utrisque his, ut experirentur
they had persuaded to both these, that they should try

eandem fortunam belli ; etiam copias
the same fortune of war ; also the forces

Aduaticorum expectari ab his, atque esse
of the Aduatici to be waited-for by these, and to be

in itinēre: coniecisse mulieres,
in way (march): to have thrown-together the women,

que qui per ætatem viderentur (imp. subj.)
and (those) who through age did seem

inutiles ad pugnam, in eum locum, quò
'useless to fight, into that place, whither

propter paludes aditus esset non exercitui.
on-account-of the marshes access might be not to an army.

17. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar præmittit
These things being known, Cæsar sends-before
 exploratores, que centuriones, qui deligant locum
scouts, and centurions, who may choose a place

idoneum castris: que quum complures ex
fit for camps: and when many out-of

Belgis que reliquis Gallis deditiis,
the Belgæ and remaining Gauls surrendered,

secuti Cæsarem, facerent (imp. subj.)
having followed Cæsar, did make (their)

iter unà: quidam ex his, ut
journey together: certain-ones out-of these, as

postea cognitum-est ex captivis, consuetudine
afterwards it was known from the captives, the custom

itinēris nostri exercitūs eorum dierum
of the journey (march) of our army of those days

perspectâ, pervenerunt nocte ad Nervios
being fully-seen, arrived by night to the Nervii

atque demonstraverunt iis magnum numerum
and shewed to those a great many

impedimentorum intercedere inter singulas
of baggage-waggons to come-between between each

legiones; necque esse quidquam negoti,
(the several) legions; nor to be any-thing of business

cum prima legio venisset in
difficulty), when the first legion might have come into

castris, que reliquæ legiones abessent
camps, and the remaining legions might be-distant
 magnum spatium, adoriri hanc sub sarcinis :
a great space, to attack this under packs
 (baggage) : quâ pulsâ, que impedimentis
which being routed, and the baggage-waggon
 direptis, futurum, ut reliquæ
being plundered, about-to-be, that the remaining (legions)
 auderent non consistere contrâ. Etiam adjuvabit
would dare not to stand against. Also it did assist
 consilium eorum, qui deferebant rem,
the counsel of those, who did bring (report) the thing,
 quod Nervii antiquitus, quum possent
because the Nervii anciently, when they were able (to do)
 (imp. subj.) nihil equitatu, (enim neque ad hoc
nothing in cavalry, (for neither to this
 tempus student ei rei, sed, quidquid
time they study to that thing, but, whatever
 possunt, valent pedestribus copiis,) quod
they are-able, they are-strong in foot forces,) that
 impedirent facilius equitatum fini-
they might hinder more-easily the cavalry of (their)
 timorum, si venisset ad eos caussâ
neighbours, if it might have come to them by cause
 prædandi, teneris arboribus incisis
(for the sake) of robbing, tender trees being cut
 atque inflexis, que crebris ramis enatis in
and bent-in, and thick boughs sprung-forth into
 latitudinem, et rubis que sentibus inter-
breadth, and brambles and thorns being cast-
 jectis, effecerant, ut hæ sepes præberent
between, they had effected, that these hedges did afford;
 (imp. subj.) munimenta instar muri; quod
fortifications like of a wall; whither
 posset (imp. subj.) non modo non intrari, sed
it was able not only not to be entered, but

ne quidem perspici. Quum iter
not indeed to be seen-through. When the journey

nostri agminis impediretur (imp. subj.) his
(march) of our army was hindered by these

rebus Nervii existimaverunt consilium non
things the Nervii thought the advice not

omittendum sibi.
to-be-omitted (neglected) to (by) themselves.

18. Hæc erat natura loci, quem
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegerant castris. Collis æqualiter
(our) men had chosen for camps. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad
slanting from the highest (place) did decline to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavimus supra :
the river Sabis (Sambre), which we have named above :

ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis
from that river with equal acclivity a hill

nascebatur adversus et contrarius huic, infimus
did rise opposite and facing to this, the lowest

circiter ducentos passus apertus,
(the bottom of the hill) about two-hundred paces open,

silvestris ab superiore parte ; ut posset (imp.
woody from (on) the higher part ; that it was able

subj.) non perspici facile introrsus. Intra
not to be seen-through easily inwardly. Within

ëas silvas hostes continebant se in
those woods the enemies did hold themselves in

occulto. In aperto loco, secundum flumen,
secret. In the open place, near (along) the river,

paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Altitudo
a few stations of horsemen were seen. The depth

fluminis erat circiter trium pedum.
of the river was about of three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur
Cæsar, the cavalry being sent before, did follow-closely

omnibus copiis : sed ratio que ordo
with all (his) forces : but the manner and order

agminis habebat se aliter ac
of the troop (on the march) did have itself otherwise and

Belgæ detulērant ad Nervios.
(than) the Belg had carried (reported) to the Nervii.

Nam, quōd hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar suā
For, because the enemy did approach, Cæsar by his

consuetudinē ducebat sex expeditas legiones : post
custom did lead six light-armed legions : after

ēas collocabat impedimenta
(behind) those he did place the baggage-waggons

totius exercitūs : inde duæ legiones, quæ
of the whole army : then two legions, which

conscriptæ-erant proximè, claudebant totum
had been enrolled last, did shut (close) the whole

agmen, que erant præsidio impedi-
army (march), and were for safeguard to the baggage-

mentis. Nostri equites cum funditoribus que
waggons. Our horsemen with the slingers and

sagittariis transgressi flumen, commiserunt proelium
archers having passed the river, joined battle

cum equitatu hostium. Quum illi identidem
with the cavalry of the enemies. When they now-and-then

recipērent (imp. subj.) se in silvas ad suos,
did betake themselves into the woods to their

ac rursus facērent (imp. subj.) impetum in
(men), and again did make an attack upon

nostros ex silvâ ; nēque nostri auderent
our (men) out-of the wood ; nor our (men) did dare

(imp. subj.) insēqui cedentes longiūs, quam ad
to pursue (those) yielding further, than to

quem finem porrecta ac aperta loca pertinebant :
what end the extended and open places did reach :

intērim sex legiones, quæ venēran primæ,
meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,

opĕre dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.
the work being measured, began to fortify camps.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītūs visa-
When the first baggage-waggōns of our army were-

sunt ab iis, qui latebant abditi in silvis,
seen by those, who did lie-hid concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenĕrat inter ĕos
which time had been agreed-upon between them

committendi prœlium : ut constituĕrant intra
of joining battle : as they had placed within

silvas aciem que ordines, atque
the woods the line (of battle) and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavĕrant sese, subitò
themselves had strengthened themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnibus copiis, que fecerunt
they flew-forth with all (their) forces, and made

impĕtum in nostros equites. His pulsus
an attack upon our horsemen. These being routed

facilè ac proturbatis, decucurrent incredibili
easily and disordered, they ran-down with incredible

celeritate ad flumen ; ut penè uno tempore
quickness to the river ; so-that almost in one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad
the enemies did seem and (both) at

silvas, et in flumine, et jam in nostris
the woods, and in the river, and now in our

manibus. Autem contenderunt eādem
hands (close at hand). But they hastened with the same

celeritate adverso colle at nostra castra, atque ĕos
quickness in (up) the opposite hill to our camps, and those

qui ĕrant occupati in opĕre.
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnia ĕrant agenda Cæsāri uno
All (things) were to-be-acted to (by) Cæsar in one

tempore : vexillum proponendum, quod ĕrat
time : the standard to-be-set-up, which was

insigne, quum oporteret concurrere ad
the sign, when it might behove to be run-together to
 arma: signum dandum tubâ: milites
arms: the signal to-be-given with trumpet: the soldiers
 revocandi ab opère: qui processerant
to-be-recalled from the work: (those) who had proceeded
 paullo longius, causâ aggere
a little further, by cause (for the sake) of the rampart
 petendi, accersendi, acies
(materials) to-be-sought (were) to-be-sent-for: the line
 instruenda: milites cohortandi:
(of battle) to be arranged: the soldiers to-be-exhorted:
 signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum
the signal to-be-given. A great part of which things
 brevis temporis, et successus et incursus
the shortness of the time, and the coming-up and charge
 hostium impediēbat. Dux res erant subsidio
of the enemies did hinder. Two things were for aid
 his difficultatibus, scientia atque usus
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience
 militum, quod, exercitati superioribus
of the soldiers, because, being exercised in former
 praeliis, poterant ipsi prescribere
battles, they were-able themselves to prescribe
 sibi quid oporteret fieri, non minus
to themselves what it might behove to be done, not less
 commodè, quam doceri ab aliis;
conveniently (properly), than to be taught by others;
 et quod Cæsar vetuerat singulos legatos
and because Cæsar had forbid the several lieutenants
 discedere ab opère que singulis legionibus,
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,
 nisi castris munitis. Hi, propter
unless the camps being fortified. These, on-account-of
 propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium,
the nearness and swiftness of the enemies,

spectabant nihil jam imperium Cæsaris ;
did regard (await) not-at-all now the command of Cæsar :

sed per se, administrabant quæ
but by themselves, did manage what (things)

videbantur.
did seem (fit).

21. Necessariis rebus imperatis, Cæsar
The necessary things being commanded, Cæsar

decucurrit ad milites cohortandos in partem,
ran-down to the soldiers to-be-encouraged into a part,

quam fors obtulit ; et devenit ad decimam
which chance presented ; and came-down to the tenth

legionem. Cohortatus-est milites non longiore
legion. He encouraged the soldiers not with longer

oratic , quàm uti retinerent memoriâ
speech, than that they should retain the memory

sue pristinae virtutis, neu perturbarentur animo
of their former valour, nor should be troubled in mind

que sustinerent fortiter impetum hostium ;
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemies ;

et, quod hostes aberant non longius,
and, because the enemies were-distant not farther,

quàm quò telum posset adjici, dedit
than whither a dart might be-able to be cast, he gave

signum proelii committendi : atque profectus
the signal of battle to be engaged : and having set-out

item in alteram partem, caussâ
likewise into another part, by cause (for the sake)

cohortandi, occurrit pugnantibus. Tanta
of encouraging, he meets (them) fighting. So-great (such)

fuit exiguitas temporis, que tam paratus animus
was the smallness of the time, and so prepared the mind

hostium ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuërit
of the enemies to contending, that time was wanting

(verf. subj.) non modò ad insignia accommodanda,
not only to the ensigns to-be-arranged,

sed etiā ad galēas induendas, quę tegmenta
but even to the helmets to-be-put-on, and the coverings
 detrahenda scutis. In quam partem
to-be-drawn-off from the shields. Into what part

quisque devenit casu ab opēre, quę quę
each came-down by chance from the work, and what

signa conspexit prima, constitit ad læc, ne
standards he beheld first, he stood at these, lest

dimitteret tempus pugnandi in quærendo
he might let-slip the time of fighting in seeking

suos.
his-own (comrades).

22. Exercitu instructo, māgis ut natura
The army being arranged, rather as the nature
 loci quę dejectus collis, et necessitas
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempōris postulabat, quā ut ratio atque
of the time did require, than as the plan and

ordo militaris rei; quum alię legiones
arrangement of military affair; when other legions

in aliā parte resistērent (imp. subj.)
in another part did resist (i. e. some in one part, some

hostibus diversis locis, quę
in another) to the enemies in different places, and

densissimis sepibus interjectis, ut demon-
very-thick hedges being thrown-between, as we have

stravimus antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.):
shown before, the view was impeded:

nēque certa subsidia poterant collocari, nēque
neither sure reserves were able to be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset opus in quāque
to be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nēque omnia imperia administrari ab
part; nor all the orders to be managed by

uno. Itaque, in tantā iniquitate
one, Therefore, in so-great unfavourableness

rerum, vari eventus fortunæ quōque sequebantur.
of things, various events of fortune also did follow.

23. Milites nonæ et decimæ legionis,
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legion,

ut constitērant in sinistrâ parte aciei,
as they had stood in the left part of the line, (their)

pilis emissis, celeriter compulerunt ex
javelins being thrown, quickly forced from

superiore lōco in flumen Atrebatas, (nam
the higher place into the river the Atrebatas, (for

ēa pars obvenērat his) exanimatos cursu
that part had chanced to these) spent with running

ac lassitudine, que confectos vulneribus;
and fatigue, and finished (exhausted) with wounds;

et insecuti gladiis conantes
and having pursued with swords (them) endeavouring

transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum
to cross-over, they killed a great part of them

impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire flumen;
encumbered. They hesitated not to cross the river;

et progressi in iniquum lōcum,
and having advanced into an unfavourable place,

dederunt in fūgam hostes regressos
gave (put) into flight the enemies having returned

rursus ac resistentes, prælio redintegrato. Item
again and resisting, the battle being renewed. Also

in aliâ parte, dūæ diversæ legiones, undecima
in another part, two different legions, the eleventh

et octava, Veromandūis profligatis, cum quibus
and eighth, the Veromandui being routed, with whom

congressi-erant, præliabantur ex superiore
they had encountered, did fight from the higher

lōco in ripis ipsis fluminis. At
place in (on) the banks themselves of the river But

totis castris fère nudatis à fronte
the whole camps nearly being exposed from the front

et à sinistrâ parte, cùm duodecīma legio
and from the left part (side), when the twelfth legion

et septīma non magno intervallo ab eâ,
and the seventh not in great distance from it

constitisset (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu
had stood-together in the right wing,

omnes Nervii confertissīmo agmine, duce
all the Nervii in closest troop (array), the leader

Boduognato, qui tenebat summam
(being) Boduognatus, who did hold the chief-place

imperii, contenderunt ad eum locum: pars
of command, hastened to that place: part

quorum cœpit circumvenire legiones aperto
of whom began to surround the legions (on) the open

latere pars petere summum locum castrorum.
flank, part to seek (attack) the highest place of the camps.

24. Eodem tempore nostri equites que pedites
In the same time our cavalry and infantry

lævis armaturæ, qui iuerant unâ cum his,
of light armour, who had been together with these,

quos dixeram pulsos(-esse) primo impetu
whom I had said to have been routed in the first attack

hostium, cùm recipèrent (imp. subj.) se
of the enemies, when they did betake themselves

in castra, occurrebant hostibus adversis
into camps, did meet to the enemies opposite (in front)

ac rursus petebant fugam in aliam partem.
and again did seek flight into another part.

Et calones, qui conspexerant à
And the soldiers'-servants, who had beheld from

Decumanâ portâ, ac summo iugo collis
the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi
our (men) conquerors to cross the river, having gone-out

caussâ prædandi, quum respex-
by cause (for the sake) of plundering, when they had

issent (pluperf. subj.) et vidissent (pluperf. subj.)
looked-back and had seen

hostes versari in nostris castris, præcipites
the enemies to be engaged in our camps, hasty

mandabant sese fugæ : simul
did commit themselves to flight : at the same-time

clamor que fremitus eorum qui veniebant cum
the cry and uproar of those who did come with

impedimentis oriebatur, que alii
the baggage-waggons did arise, and others (some)

perterriti ferebantur in aliam partem.
dismayed were borne into another (one) part, (others

into another part). Omnibus quibus rebus Treviri
By all which things, the Treviriæ

equites permoti, virtutis quorum est
cavalry being alarmed, of the valour of whom there is

singularis opinio inter Gallos, qui
a singular (very high) opinion among the Gauls, who

missi caussâ auxilii à civitate,
being sent by cause (for the sake) of aid by the state,

venérant ad Cæsarem, quum vidissent (pluperf. subj.)
had come to Cæsar, when they had seen

nostra castra compleri multitudine hostium,
our camps to be filled with a multitude of the enemies,

legiones præmi, et teneri penè
the legions to be pressed, and to be held almost

circumventas, calones, equites, Numidas
surrounded, the soldiers'-servants, cavalry, Numidian

funditores, diversos que dissipatos fugere in omnes
slingers, apart and scattered to flee into all

partes, nostris rebus desperatis, contenderunt
parts, our things (affairs) being despaired of hastened

dömum ; renduntiaverunt civitati, Romanos pulsos
home ; they announced to the state, the Romans routed

que superatos, hostes potitos castris
and overcome, the enemies having possessed the camps

que impedimentis eorum.
and baggage-waggons of them.

25. Cæsar	profectus	ab	cohortatione
Cæsar	having set-out	from	the exhortation
decimæ	legionis	ad dextrum	cornu, ubi vidit
f the tenth	legion	to the right	wing, when he saw
suos	urgeri,	que	signis
his (men)	to-be-pressed-hard,	and	the standards
collatis	in unum	locum,	militēs
being brought-together	into one	place,	the soldiers
duodecimæ	legionis	confertos	esse impedi-
of the twelfth	legion	close-together	to-be for an impe-
mento	sibi-ipsis	ad pugnam,	omnibus centurionibus
diment	to themselves	to battle;	all the centurions
quartæ	cohortis	occisis,	que signi-
of the fourth	cohort	being killed,	and the standard-
fēro	interfecto,	signo amisso,	fērē omnibus
bearer	being slain,	the standard being lost,	almost all
centurionibus	reliquarum	cohortium,	aut
the centurions	of the remaining	cohorts,	either
vulneratis	aut	occisis,	in his
being wounded	or	killed,	in (among) these
primopilo	Publio	Sextio	Baculo, fortissimo
the first-centurion	Publius	Sextius	Baculus, a very-brave
viro,	confecto	multis	que gravibus vulneribus,
man,	being spent	with many	and heavy wounds,
ut	jam	posset (imp. subj.)	non sustinere
(so) that	now	he was able	not to support
se;	relíquos	esse	tardiores, et nonnullos
himself;	the rest	to be	more-slow, and some
desertos	à	novissimis	excedere prælio,
being deserted	by	the rear	to depart from the battle,
ac vitare	tela;	hostes	nēque inter-
and to avoid	the weapons;	the enemies	neither to inter-
mittere,	subeuntes	à	fronte ex
mit,	going-up (advancing)	from	the front from
inferiore	lōco,	et instare	ab utroque
the lower	place (ground),	and to press-on	from either

latère, et rem esse in angusto,
flank, and the affair to be in a narrow (critical state),

nēque esse ullum subsidium, quod posset
neither to be any aid, which might be-able

submitti; scuto detracto uni
to be sent-up; a shield being drawn-away to (from) one

militi ab novissimis (quòd ipse venērat
soldier from the latest (rear) (because himself had come

ēd sine scuto) processit in primam
thither without a shield) he advanced into the first

aciem; que centurionibus appellatis nominatim,
line; and the centurions being called by-name,

cohortatus reliquos, jussit milites
having encouraged the rest, he commanded the soldiers

inferre signa, et laxare
to bear-on the standards, and to loosen (widen)

manipulos, quòd possent uti
the companies, in-order-that they might be-able to us;

gladiis (abl.) faciliùs. Spe illatâ
(their) swords more-easily. Hope being brought-in

militibus adventu ejus, ac animo
to the soldiers by the arrival of him, and mind (spirit)

redintegrato, quum quisque pro se cuperet
,being renewed, when every-one for himself did desire

(imp. subj.) navare opëram
to ply (his) endeavour (to act with vigour)

in conspectu Imperatoris, etiã in suis extremis
in sight of the General, even in his extreme

rebus, impëtus hostium tardatus-est paullum.
affairs (danger), the violence of the enemies was retarded a-little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pluperf. subj.) septimam
When Cæsar had seen the seventh

legionem, quæ constitërat juxtâ, urgeri
legion, which had stood near, to be pressed

item ab hoste, monuit tribunos militum,
likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of soldiers,

ut legiones conjungerent sese paullatim, et
that the legions should join themselves gradually, and
 inferrent signa conversa
should-bear-on the standards turned (on different sides. i. e.

in hostes. Quo facto,
with double front) against the enemies. Which being done,
 quum alii ferrent (imp. subj.) subsidium
when others (some) did bring aid

aliis neque timerent (imp. subj.) ne aversi
to others nor did fear lest being turned

circumvenirentur ab noste, coeperunt
they might be surrounded by the enemy, they began

resistere audacius ac pugnare fortius.
to resist more-boldly and to fight more-bravely.

Intërim milites duarum legionum, quæ
Meanwhile the soldiers of the two legions, which

fuërant in novissimo agmine præsidio
had been in the last troop (rear) for protection

impedimentis, prælio nuntiato, cursu
to the baggages, the battle being announced, (their) course

incitato, conspiciebantur in summo
being accelerated, were beheld on the highest (the top

colle ab hostibus: et Titus Labienus
of) the hill by the enemies: and Titus Labienus

potitus castris (abl.) hostium, et
having possessed the camps of the enemies, and

conspicatus ex superiore loco, quæ res
having beheld from the higher place, what things

gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit
were carried-on in our camps. sent

decimam legionem subsidio nostris; qui
the tenth legion for (as) aid to our (men); who

quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj.) ex fuga
when they had known from the flight

equitum et calonum, in quo
of the cavalry and of the soldiers'-servants, in what

lōco res esset (imp. subj.), que
place (situation) the affair was, and

quanto pericūlo et castra et legiones
in how-great danger both the camps and legions

et Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nihil
and the Commander might-be, made nothing

reliqui sibi ad celeritatem.
of left (left nothing undone) for themselves to speed.

27 Tanta commutatio rerum facta-est
So-great a change of things was made

adventu horum, ut nostri etiam qui
by the arrival of these, that our (men) even who

procubuissent (pluperf. subj.) confecti vulneribus,
had lain-down spent with wounds,

innixi scutis, redintegrarent (imp. subj.)
having leaned to (on) the shields, did renew

proelium. Tum calones conspicati
the battle. Then the soldiers'-servants having beheld

hostes perterritos, etiam inermes occurrerent
the enemies dismayed, even unarmed did oppose

(imp. subj.) armatis : equites verò,
the armed (enemies): the cavalry indeed,

ut delerent turpitudinem fugæ virtute,
that they might blot-out the disgrace of flight by valour,

pugnabant in omnibus locis, quò præferrent
did fight in all places, in-order-that they might prefer

se legionariis militibus. At
themselves (surpass) to the legionary soldiers. But

hostes, etiam in extremâ spe salutis,
the enemies, even in extreme (last) hope of safety

præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut, quum
performed (exhibited) so-great valour, that, when

primi eorum cecidissent proximi insis-
the first of them might have-fallen the nearest would

tērent jacentibus, atque pugnarent
stand-on (those) lying-down (the slain), and would fight

ex corporibus eorum : his dejectis, et
from the bodies of them : these being prostrated, and

inadvēribus coacervatis qui
the dead-bodies being heaped-up (so that) (those) who

superessent, conicērent tela in nostros ut ex .
might remain, would hurl the darts upon our (men) as from

tumūlo, quē remittērent intercepta pila :
a hillock, and would hurl-back the intercepted javelins :

ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non nequidquam
so-that it ought to be judged not in vain

homīnes tantæ virtutis ausos-esse transire
men of so-great valour to have dared to cross

latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas,
a very-broad river, to ascend very-high banks,

subire iniquissimum locum ; quæ
to go-up a most-unfavourable place : which (things)

magnitudo animi redeğerat
the greatness of (their) mind had reduced (had rendered)

facilia ex difficillimis.
easy from most-difficult.

28. Hoc prælio facto, et gente
This battie being made (fought), and the nation

fac nomīne Nerviorum redacto prōpè ad
and name of the Nervii being reduced nearly to

interneccionem : majores natu,
utter-destruction : (those) greater by birth (the elders),

quos dixeramus collectos unà cum puēris
whom we had said being collected together with the boys

que mulieribus in æstuariâ ac paludes, hæc
and women into the estuaries (swamps) and marshes, these

pugnâ nuntiatâ, quum arbitrarentur (imp. subj.)
battle being announced, when they did think

nil impeditum victoribus, nihil
nothing entangled (an obstacle) to the conquerors, nothing

tutum victis ; consensu omnium, qui
safe to the conquered ; by consent of all, who

supererant, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem que
did remain, sent ambassadors to Cæsar and

dediderunt se ei: et in calamitate
surrendered themselves to him: and in the calamity

civitatis commemorandâ, dixerunt: sese
of the state to-be-recounted, they said: themselves

esse redactos ex sexcentis ad tres senatores;
to be reduced out-of six-hundred to three senators;

ex sexaginta millia hominum, ad vix
out-of sixty thousands of men, to scarcely

quingentos, qui possent ferre arma; quos
five-hundred, who might be-able to bear arms; whom

Cæsar conservavit diligentissimè, que jussit
Cæsar preserved most-carefully, and commanded

uti suis finibus atque oppidis, ut
to use with their-own territories and towns, that

videretur usus misericordiâ in
he might seem having used with compassion unto

miseros ac supplices; et imperavit
the wretched and suppliant; and ordered

finitimus ut prohiberent
to the neighbouring (people) that they would prohibit (restrain)

se que suos ab injuriâ et
themselves and their-own (people) from injury and

maleficio.
malice.

29. Aduaticî, de quibus scripsimus supra,
The Aduaticî, of whom we have written above,

quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnibus copiis
when they did come with all (their) forces

auxilio Nervii, hæc pugna nuntiata,
for (as) aid to the Nervii, this battle being announced,

reverterunt domum ex itinere; cunctis
returned home from the journey (march); all

oppidis que castellis desertis, ontulerunt
the towns and castles being deserted, they brought-together

omnīa sūa in unum oppidum egregiè
all their (effects) into one town excellently

munitum naturâ : quum quod habere
fortified by nature : when which (town) aid have

(imp. subj.) altissimas rupes que despectus
very-high rocks and views (precipices)

ex omnibus partibus in circuitu,
out-of all parts in compass (all round),

aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex unâ
an access gently steep was left, from one

parte, non ampliùs ducentis pēdum in
part, not more (than) two-hundred of feet into (in)

latitudīnem : quem locum muniērant
breadth : which place they had fortified

altissimo duplici muro : tum collocārant
with a very-high double wall : then they had placed

saxa magni pondēris, et præacutas trābes
stones of great weight, and sharp-pointed beams

in muro. Ipsi ērant prognati ex Cimbris
on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutōnis. qui, quum facērent (imp. subj.)
and Teutoni : who, when they did make

iter in nostram Provinciā atque Italiā,
(their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis, quæ potērant non agere
those baggages, which they were-able not to act

ac portare secum, depositis
(manage) and to carry with them, being deposited

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unâ
on-this-side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millia hominum ex suis custodiæ
six thousands of men out-of their-own for a guard

ac præsidio. Hi, post obitum eorum,
and protection. These, after the death of them,

exagitati multos annos à finitimis,
being harassed many years by (their) neighbours,

quum aliàs inferrent (imp. subj.)
when otherwise (sometimes) they did bring on

bellum, aliàs defendērent (imp.)
war, otherwise (at another time) did repel (it)

subj.) illatum, pace factâ consensu
brought-on, a peace being made by consent

omnium, delegerunt hunc locum domicilio.
of all, chose this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercitûs,
And in the first arrival of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex
they did make frequent excursions (sallies) from

oppido, que contendebant parvulis proeliis
the town, and did contend in trifling battles

cum nostris. Postea circummuniti
with our (men). Afterwards being fortified-around

vallo duodēcim pēdum, quindēcim millium
with a rampart of twelve feet, fifteen thousand

(feet) in circuitu, que crebris
(feet) in compass, and with frequent (numerous)

castellis, continebant sese oppido.
castles, they did contain themselves in the town.

Ubi, vinēis actis, aggēre
When, the mantelets being acted (advanced), a mound

extructo, viderunt turrim constitūi
being constructed, they saw a tower to be erected

pröcul, primūm irridere ex
at-a-distance, (they began) firstly to mock from

muro atque increpitare vocibus : quò
the wall and to chide by sayings : whither (to

tanta machinatio institueretur
what purpose) so-great a machine might be constructed

ab tanto spatio ! quibusnam manibus,
from so-great a space (distance) ! with what hands,

aut quibus viribus, confidērent sese
or with what forces, might they trust themselves

collocare turrim tanti onëris in muros,
to place' a tower of so-great burden against the walls,
 præsertim homines tantulæ staturæ, (nam nostra
especially men of so-little stature, (for our
 brevitās est contemptūi plerisque Gallis hominibus,
shortness is for contempt to most Gallic men,
 præ magnitudīne suorum
before (in comparison with) the magnitude of their-own
 corporum).
bodies).

31. Verò ubi viderunt moveri, et
But when they saw (it) to be moved, and
 appropinquare mœnibus, commoti novâ
to approach to the walls, being alarmed by the new
 et inusitatâ specie, miserunt legatos ad
and unusual appearance, they sent ambassadors to
 Cæsarem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc
Cæsar about peace: who spoke to this
 mōdum: Se existimare Romanos gerere
manner: Themselves to think the Romans to carry-on
 bellum non sine ōpe Deorum, qui
war not without the assistance of the Gods, who
 possent promovere machinationes tantæ
might be able to move-forward machines of so-great
 altitudinis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex
height with so-great speed, and to fight from
 propinquitate: dixerunt permittēre se que
nearness (close quarters): they said to give-up themselves and
 omnia sua potestati eorum: petere
all their (effects) to the power of them: to seek
 ac deprecari unum, si pro sua
and to beg one (thing), if for (according-to) his
 clementiâ ac mansuetudinē, quam ipsi audissent
clemency and mildness, which they had heard
 (pluperf. subj.) ab aliis, statuisset
from others, he might have determined

fortè Aduaticos esse conservandos,
by-chance (perhaps) the Aduatici to be to-be-preserved.

ne-despoliaret se armis : omnes
he would not-deprive themselves from (of) arms : all

finitimos fère esse inimicos sibi, ac,
the neighbours nearly to be hostile to themselves, and

invidere suæ virtuti, à quibus possent
to envy to their valour, from whom they might be-able

non defendere se, armis traditis ;
not to defend themselves, (their) arms being delivered ;

præstare sibi pati quamvis
to excel (to be better) for themselves to endure any

fortunam à Romano populo, si deducerentur
fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led

in eum casum, quàm interfici ab his inter
into that calamity, than to be slain by those among

quos consuèssent (pluperf. subj.) dominari.
whom they had been accustomed to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc : Se
Cæsar answered to these (words) : Himself

conservaturum civitatem magis suâ consuetudine
about-to-preserve the state rather by his, custom

quàm merito eorum, si dedidissent
than by the merit of them, if they might have surrendered

se, prius-quàm aries attigisset
themselves, before-that the battering-ram might have touched

murum : sed nullam conditionem deditiois esse,
the wall : but no condition of surrender to be,

nisi armis traditis : se facturum
unless the arms being delivered-up : himself about-to-do

id, quod fecisset (pluperf. subj.) in Nervios ;
that, which he had done unto the Nervii ;

que imperaturum finitimis,
and about-to-order to the neighbouring (people),

ne-inferrent quam injuriam dedititiis
that they should not-bring any injury to the surrendered

Romani populi. Re nuntiata
 (subjects) of the Roman people. The thing being announced
 ad suos, illi dixerunt se facere, quæ
 to their-own, they said themselves to do, what

imperarentur. Magna multitudo armorum
 (things) might be ordered. A great multitude of arms

jacta de muro in fossam, quæ erat
 being thrown from the wall into the ditch which was

ante oppidum; sic ut acervi armorum
 before the town, so that the heaps of arms

adæquarent (imp. subj.) propè summam altitudinem
 did equal nearly the highest height

muri que aggeris : et tamen circiter
 of the wall and of the mound : and however about

tertiâ parte celatâ, (ut perspectum-est
 a third part being concealed, (as was clearly-seen

postea,) atque retentâ in oppido, portis
 afterwards,) and being retained in the town, the gates

patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.) eo
 being thrown-open, they used (enjoyed) peace on that

die.

day.

33. Sub vesp̃erum Cæsar jussit
 Under (towards) evening Cæsar ordered

portas claudi, que milites exire
 the gates to be shut, and the soldiers to go-out

ex oppido, ne oppidani accip̃erent quam
 from the town, lest the townsmen might receive any

injuriâ à militibus noctu. Illi, consilio
 injury from the soldiers by night. They, a plan

inïto antè, ut intellectum-est, quodd,
 being entered-into before, as it was understood, because,

deditione factâ, credid̃erant nostros
 the surrender being made, they had believed our (people)

non inducturos præsidia, aut denique
 not about-to-introduce garrisons, or in-fine

servaturos indiligentiùs : partim cum
about-to-keep (watch) very-carelessly : partly with

his armis, quæ retinuërant et celavërant,
those arms, which they had retained and had concealed,

partim scutis factis ex cortice, aut intextis
partly with shields made out-of bark, or woven

viminibus, quæ induxërant pellibus
twigs, which they had laid-on (covered) with hides

subitò (ut exiguitas temporis, postulabat),
suddenly (as the smallness of the time did require),

fecerunt eruptionem repente ex oppido omnibus
made a sally suddenly from the town with all

copiis, tertîâ vigiliâ, quâ ascensus ad
the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to

nostras munitiones videbatur minimè arduus.
our fortifications did seem least difficult.

Significatione factâ celeriter ignibus, ut Cæsar
A signal being made quickly by fires, as Cæsar

imperavërat antè, concursum-est èò ex
had ordered before, it was run-together thither from

proximis castellis ; que pugnatum (-est) ab
the nearest castles ; and it was fought by

hostibus ita acriter, ut debuit pugnari
the enemies so vigorously, as it ought to be fought

à fortibus viris in extremâ spe salutis,
by brave men in the last hope of safety,

iniquo loco, contra eos, qui jacërent (imp.
in an unfavorable place, against those, who did cast

subj.) tela ex vallo que turribus, quum
weapons from the rampart and towers, when

omnis spes salutis consistëret (imp. subj.) in
all hope of safety did consist in

virtute unâ. Ad quatùor millibus hominum
valour alone. To (about) four thousands of men

occisis, reliqui rejecti-sunt in oppidum.
being killed the rest were thrown-back into the town.

Postridie ejus diei, portis refractis, quum
The-day-after of that day, the gates being broken, when
 nemo jam defendēret (imp. subj.), atque nostris
no-one now did defend, and our
 militibus intromissis, Cæsar vendidit universam
soldiers being let-in, Cæsar sold the entire
 sectionem ejus oppidi. Numērus quinquaginta
section (allotment) of that town. The number of fifty
 trium millium capĭtum relatus-est ab
three thousands of heads was brought back (reported) by
 his qui emērant.
those who had bought (them).

34. Eodem tempore factus-est certior
In the same time he was made more-sure (was
 à Publio Crasso, quem misērat cum
informed) by Publius Crassus, whom he had sent with
 unâ legione ad Venētos, Unellos, Osismios,
one legion to the Veneti, Unelli, Osismii,
 Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quæ
Curiosolitæ, Sesuvii, Aulerci, Rhedones, which
 sunt maritimæ civitates, que attingunt oceānum,
are maritime states, and touch-on the ocean,
 omnes eas civitates redactas-esse in ditionem
all those states to have been-reduced into the authority
 que potestatem Romani populi.
and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia
These things being carried-on, all Gaul
 pacatâ, tantâ opinio hujus belli
being subdued, so-great an opinion of this war
 perlata-est ad Barbāros, ut legati
was-carried to the Barbarians, that ambassadors
 mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsārem ab nationibus,
were-sent to Cæsar by the nations,
 quæ incolērent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ
which did inhabit across the Rhine, which

pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas obsides,
did promise themselves about-to-give hostages,

facturas imperata : quas legationes
about-to-do (the things) commanded : which embassies

Cæsar jussit reverti ad se, proximâ
Cæsar commanded to return to himself, the next

æstate inīitâ, quòd properabat in
summer being entered-on, because he did hasten into

Italiâ, que Illyricum. Ipse profectus-est in
Italy, and Illyricum. Himself set-out into

Italiâ, legionibus deductis in hiberna
Italy, the legions being led-down into winter-quarters

in Carnutes, Andes, Turōnes, quæ civitates
into the Carnutes, Andes, Turones, which states

erant propinquæ his locis, ubi gesserat
were neighbouring to those places, where he had carried-on

bellum. Ex litēris Cæsāris, supplicatio
war. From the letters of Cæsar, a general-thanks-giving

quindēcim dies decreta-est ob eas
(for) fifteen days was decreed on-account-of those

res : quod accidērat nulli ante id
things : which had happened to no-one before that

tempus.

time.

FERTIUS LIBER.

THIRD BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Quinque bella gesta adversus varias gentes
Five wars carried-on against various nations
 Galliae describuntur hoc libro: primum adversus
of Gaul are described in this book: the first against
 Veragros et Sedunos, quod gestum-fuit,
the Veragri and Seduni, which was carried-on,
 ipso quidem absente, sed auspiciis
himself indeed (being) absent, but (under his) auspices
 à Galbâ legato: secundum, contra
by Galba (his) lieutenant: the second, against
 Venetos, quod ipse confecit navali praelio:
the Veneti, which himself finished by a naval battle:
 tertium, quod à legato
the third, which (was carried on) by (his) lieutenant
 Titurio Sabino contra Unellos, Aulercos,
Titurius Sabinus against the Unelli, Aulerci,
 Eburovices, et Lexovios: quartum, quo
Eburovices, and Lexovii: the fourth, in which
 Sontiates et cæteri Aquitani debellati-sunt
the Sontiates and the other Aquitani were subdued
 à Publio Crasso: quintum, adversus Morinos
by Publius Crassus: the fifth, against the Morini

et Menapios, quod coactus-est relinquere
and Menapii, which he was compelled to leave

infectum propter tempus anni Omnia
unpunished on-account-of the time of the year. All

quæ peracta-sunt tertio anno Gallici
which were accomplished in the third year of the Gallic

belli, qui fuit sexcentessimus nonagesimus
war, which was the six-hundredth ninetyeth

octavus ab urbe condita, Cneio Lentulo
eighth from the city being built, Cneius Lentulus

Marcellino, Lucio Marcello Philippo
Marcellinus, Lucius Marcellus Philippus

Consulibus.

(being) Consuls.

1. QUUM Cæsar proficisceretur (imp. subj.) in
When Cæsar did set-out into

Italiam, misit Sergium Galbam cum duodecimâ
Italy, he sent Sergius Galba with the twelfth

legione et parte equitatus in Nantuates,
legion, and part of the cavalry into the Nantuates,

Veragros, que Sedunos; qui pertinent à
Veragri, and Seduni; who reach from

finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemano
the borders of the Allobroges, and the lake Lemanus

et flumine Rhodano, ad summas
and the river Rhone, to the highest (top of the)

Alpes. Causa mittendi fuit, quod
Alps. The cause of sending (him) was, because

volebat iter patefieri per Alpes,
he did will a passage to be laid-open through the Alps,

quo mercatores consueverant ire cum
by which merchants had been accustomed to go with

magno periculo que magnis portoriis, Permisit
great danger, and great tolls. He permitted

huic, si arbitraretur esse opus, uti
to him, if he should think (it) to be necessary, that

collocaret legionem in iis locis, caussâ
he might place a legion : in those places, by cause

hiemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis
(for the sake) of wintering. Galba, some successful

proeliis factis, que compluribus castellis eorum
battles being made, and several castles of them

expugnatis, legatis missis undique ad
being stormed, ambassadors being sent from-every-side to

eum, que obsidibus datis, et pace factâ,
him, and hostages being given, and peace being made,

constituit collocare duas cohortes in
resolved to place two cohorts in (among)

Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum reliquis
the Nantuates; himself to winter with the rest

cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico
(remaining) cohorts of that legion, in a village

Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui
of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which

vicus positus in valle, non magnâ planitiæ
village being placed in a valley, not a great plain

adjectâ, continetur undique altissimis
being added, is bounded on-every-side by very-high

montibus.
mountains.

2. Quum hic divideretur (imp subj.) in duas
Since this was divided into two

partes flumine, concessit alteram partem
parts by the river, he granted the other (one) part

ejus vici Gallis; attribuit alteram
of that village to the Gauls; he assigned the other

relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad-hiemandum:
left vacant by them to the cohorts to-winter:

munivit eum locum vallo que fossâ.
he fortified that place with a rampart and with a trench.

Quum complures dies hibernorum transissent
When several days of the winter-quarters had passed

(pluperf. subj.) *que* *jussisset* (pluperf. subj.) *frumentum*
and he had ordered corn

comportari *ěd,* *factus-est* *certior*
to be brought thither, he was made more sure (was in-

formed) *subitò* *per* *exploratores,* *omnes*
suddenly by scouts, all (the people)

discessisse *noctu* *ex* *ěa* *parte* *vici,*
to have departed by night from that part of the village,

quam *concesserat* *Gallis;* *que* *montes,*
which he had granted to the Gauls; and the mountains,

qui *impenderent* (imp. subj.), *teneri* *à* *max-*
which did impend, to be held by a very-

imā *multitudine* *Sedunorum* *et* *Veragrorum.*
great multitude of the Seduni and of the Veragri.

Id *acciderat* *de* *aliquot* *caussis,* *ut*
That had happened from some causes, that

Galli *capèrent* (imp. subj.) *subitò* *consilium*
the Gauls did take suddenly the design

belli *renovandi* *que* *legionis* *opprimendæ.*
of the war to-be-renewed and of the legion to-be-overwhelmed.

Primùm, *quòd* *despiciebant* *legionem,* *propter*
First, because they did despise the legions, on-account-of

paucitatem, *něque* *ěam* *plenissimam,* *duabus*
(its) fewness, neither that very-full, two

cohortibus *detractis* *et* *compluribus*
cohorts having been drawn-out (of it) and many (men)

sigillatim *absentibus,* *qui* *missi-ěrant* *caussā*
individually (being) absent, who had been sent by cause

commeatūs *petendi:* *tum etiam,*
(for the purpose) of provision to-be-sought: then also,

quòd *existimabant* *ne* *quidem* *primum*
because they did think not indeed (even) the first

impetum *posse* *sustineri,* *quum*
shock to be able to be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi *decurrērent* *ex* *montibus* *in* *vallem,*
themselves might run-down from the mountains into the valley

et conjicērent tela. Accedebat,
and they might hurl (their) darts. It did approach
 quòd dolebant suos libēros
 (added to this), *because they did grieve their children*
 abstractos ab se nomīne
being drawn-away from themselves (under) the name
 obsīdum ; et habebant persuasum
of hostages ; and they did have (it) persuaded
 sibi Romanos conari occupare culmīna
to themselves the Romans to endeavour to occupy the tops
 Alpium non solūm caussā
of the Alps not only by cause (for the sake)
 itinēris, sed etiā perpetuæ possessionis,
of a way (passage), but also of perpetual possession,
 et adjungere ēa loca finitimæ
and to unite those places to the neighbouring
 provinciæ.
province.

3. His nunciis acceptis, quum
 These messages (news) being received, when
 nēque ōpus hibernorūm, que muni-
neither the work of the winter-quarters, and the for-
 tiones essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nēque
tifications were fully finished, nor
 esset (imp. subj.) provisum sātis de frumento,
it was provided sufficiently about corn,
 que reliquo commeatu, quòd, deditione
and the rest (other) provision, because, a surrender
 factā, que obsidibus acceptis, Galba
being made, and hostages being received, Galba
 existimaverat nihil timendum de bello :
had thought nothing to-be-feared about war :
 concilio convocato celeriter, cœpit exquirere
council being called-together quickly, he began to seek
 sententiās. In quo concilio, quum
(its) opinions. In which council, when (since)

tantum repentini pericūli accidisset (plup.
so-great (so much) of sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fēre omnia
 contrary-to opinion, and now nearly all

superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa
the higher places were seen filled

 multitudīne armatorum, nēque posset (imp.
with a multitude of armed (men), neither it was-abl.

subj.) veniri subsidio, nēque commeatus
 to become to aid (secure re-inforcements), neither provision

supportari, itineribus interclusis : jam salute
to be brought-up, the ways being shut-up : now safety

propē desperatā, nonnullæ sententiæ hujusmodi
nearly being despaired-of, some opinions of this kind

dicebantur ; ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione
were said ; that, the baggages being left, a sally

factā, contendērent ad salutem, iisdem
being made, they should set-out to safety, by the same

itineribus, quibus pervenissent (plup. subj.) eō.
ways, by which they had arrived thither.

Tāmen placuit majori parti, hoc consilio
However it pleased to the greater part, this counsel

reservato ad extremum, experiri eventum
being reserved to the last, to try the issue

rei interim, et defendere castra.
of the thing meanwhile, and to defend the camps.

4. Brēvi spatio interjecto,
A short space being cast-between (having elapsed),

vix ut tempus daretur his rebus,
scarcely that time might be given for these things,

quas constituissent (pluperf. subj.), collocandis
which they had resolved, to-be-arranged

atque administrandis, hostes decurrere
and to-be-managed, the enemies (began) to run-down

ex omnibus partibus, signo dato,
from all parts, a sign being given, (and)

conjiçère lapides que gæsa in vallum.
to hur' stones and heavy darts into the rampart

Nostri primò repugnare fortiter intëgris
Our (men) at first to (did) repulse (resisted) bravely with entire

viribus nèque mittère
forces (while their strength was fresh), nor to (did they) cast

ullum telum frustrà ex superiore lqco : ut
any weapon in-vain from the higher place : as

quæque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus
each part of the camps stripped from (of) defenders

videbatur præmi, occurrere èò, et ferre
did seem to be pressed, to run thither, and to bring

auxilium : sed superari hoc, quòd hostes
aid : but to be surpassed in this, because the enemies

defessi diuturnitate pugnae excedebant prælio,
wearied by the length of the fight did retire from battle,

alii succedebant intëgris viribus :
others did succeed with entire (fresh) forces (strength) :

nihil quarum rerum potërat fieri à
nothing of which things was-able to be done by

nostris propter paucitatem ; ac non
our (men) on-account-of (their) fewness ; and not

mòdò facultas dabatur defesso excedendi
only (no) power was given to a wearied (man) of retiring

ex pugna, sed ne quidem saucio
from the fight, but not indeed (even) to a wounded (man)

relinquendi ejus loci, ubi constitërat, ac
of leaving of that place, where he had stood, and

recipiendi sui.
of taking-away of himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur jam continenter amplius
When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires sed etiam
six hours, and not only forces (strength) but also

tela deficërent (imp. subj.) nostris, atque
weapons did fail to our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acriùs, que
the enemies did press-on more-vigorously, and
 nostris languidioribus, cœpissent (pluperf. subj.)
our (men) (being) more-faint, had begun
 scindere vallum et complere fossas, que
to tear the rampart and to fill-up the ditches, and
 res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad
the affair was now led (brought) to
 extremum casum; Publius Sextius Baculus, centurio
the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion
 primipili quem diximus confectum (-esse)
of the first-rank whom we have said to have been finished
 compluribus vulneribus Nervico
(exhausted) with many wounds in the Nervian
 prælio, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum,
battle, and also Caius Volusenus, a tribune of soldiers,
 vir et magni consilii et virtutis, accurrunt ad
a man both of great counsel and valour, run-up to
 Galbam, atque docent unam spem
Galba, and teach (inform him) one (the only) hope
 salutis esse, si eruptione factâ, experirentur
of safety to be, if a sally being made, they should try
 extremum auxilium. Itaque centurionibus
the last aid. Therefore the centurions
 convocatis, facit milites certiores
being called-together, he makes the soldiers more-sure
 intermittērent prælium paullisper,
(informs them) they should intermit the battle a little-while,
 ac excipērent tantummōdo tela missa,
and should receive only the weapons sent
 que reficērent se ex labore;
(thrown), and should refresh themselves from labour;
 post, signo dato, erumpērent
afterwards, a sign being given, they should burst-forth
 è castris, atque ponērent omnem spem
from the camps, and should place all hope
 salutis in virtute.
of safety in valour.

6. Faciunt, quod jussi-suñt; ac eruptione
They do, what they were-ordered; and a sally
 factâ subito omnibus portis, relinquunt
being made suddenly from all the gates, they leave
 facultatem hostibus neque cognoscendi quid
power to the enemies neither of knowing what
 fieret, neque sui colligendi.
might be done, nor of themselves to-be-collected (of
collecting themselves). Ita, fortunâ commutatâ,
Thus, fortune being changed,
 interficiunt eos circumventos undique, qui
they slay those surrounded on-every-side, who
 venerant in spem castrorum potiundorum; et
had come into hope of the camps to-be-possessioned; and
 ex amplius triginta millibus hominum, (quem
out-of more (than) thirty thousands of men, (which
 numerum barbarorum constabat venisse
number of the barbarians it was-manifest to have come
 ad castra) plus tertiâ parte interfectâ,
to the camps) more (than) the third part being killed,
 conjiciunt in fugam reliquos perterritos; ac
they throw into flight the rest affrighted; and
 patiuntur consistere ne quidem in superioribus
suffer (them) to stand not indeed (even) in the higher
 locis. Sic omnibus copiis hostium
places. Thus all the forces of the enemies
 fusis, que exutis armis, recipiunt
being routed, and stripped-of (their) arms, they betake
 se in castra que suas munitiones.
themselves into the camps and their fortifications.
 Quo proelio facto, quod Galba nolebat
Which battle being made, because Galba was-unwilling
 tentare fortunam sæpius, atque meminērat
to try fortune too-often, and he had remembered
 sese venisse alio consilio
himself to have come with another (different) intention

in hiberna, videbat occurrisse
 into winter-quarters, he did see (himself) to have met
 aliis rebus ; permotus maximè inopiâ
 to other things ; being moved chiefly with the want
 frumenti que commeatûs : postëro die,
 of corn and of provtsion : on the following day,
 omnibus ædificiis ejus vici incensis,
 all the buildings of that village being burned,
 contendit reverti in provinciâ : ac nullo
 he hastened to return into the province : and no
 hoste prohibente, aut demorante iter, perduxit
 enemy preventing, or delaying (his) journey, he led
 legionem incolumem in Nantuates, inde in
 the legion safe into the Nantuates, thence into
 Allobrôges, que hiemavit ibi.
 the Allobroges, and he wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar
 These things being carried-on, when Cæsar
 existimaret (imp. subj.) Galliâ pacatam de omnibus
 did think Gaul subdued from all

caussis ; Belgis superatis, Germanis
 (these) reasons ; the Belgæ being overcome, the Germans
 expulsis, Sedunis in Alpibus victis,
 being expelled, the Seduni in the Alps being conquered,
 atque ita hieme initâ profectus-esset
 and thus the winter being entered-on had set-out

(plup. subj.) in Illyricum, quòd volebat
 into Illyricum, because he did wish

adire eas nationes quòque et cognoscere
 to go-to those nations also and to know (become

acquainted with) regiones ; subitum bellum
 the countries ; a sudden war

coortum-est in Galliâ Hæc fuit causa ejus
 arose in Gaul. This was the cause of that

belli. Publius Crassus adolescens hiemabat cura
 war. Publius Crassus a young-man did winter with

septimâ legione in Andibus proximus Oceānum
the seventh legion in the Andes nearest the Ocean
 märe. Is dimisit complures præfectos que
sea. He dismissed many prefects and
 tribunos militum in finitimas civitates,
tribunes of soldiers into the neighbouring states,
 caussâ frumenti que commeatûs
by cause (for the sake) of corn and of provision
 petendi, quòd inopiâ frumenti erat in his
to-be-sought, because a want of corn was in these
 locis : in quo numero Titus Terrasidius
places : in which number Titus Terrasidius
 missus-erat in Eusubios ; Marcus Trebius
had been sent unto the Eusubii ; Marcus Trebius
 Gallus in Curiosolitas ; Quintus Velanius cum
Gallus unto the Curiosolitæ , Quintus Velanius with
 Tito Silio in Venetos.
Titus Silius unto the Veneti.

8. Auctoritas hujus civitatis est longè
The authority of this state is by-far
 amplissima omnis maritimæ oræ earum
the most-extensive of all the maritime coast of those
 regionum ; quòd Veneti habent et plurimas
countries ; because the Veneti have both very-many
 naves, quibus consueverunt navigare in
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into
 Britanniam ; et antecedunt cæteros scientiâ
Britain ; and they excel the rest in the knowledge
 atque usu nauticarum rerum ; et in magno atque
and use of naval things ; and in a great and
 aperto impetu mæris, paucis portibus interjectis,
open violence of sea, few harbours being cast-between
 quos ipsi tēnent, hābent fēre
(intervening), which themselves hold, they have nearly
 omnes vectigales, qui consueverunt uti
all tributary, who have been accustomed to use

eodem mări. Initium Silii atque
with the same sea. The beginning of Silius and

Velanii retinendi fuit ab iis, quod per
of Velanius to be retained was from those, because through

eos existimabant se recuperaturos suos
them they did think themselves about-to-recover their

obsides, quos dedissent (pluperf. subj.) Crasso.
hostages, whom they had given to Crassus.

Finitimi adducti auctoritate
The neighbouring (people) induced by the authority

horum (ut consilia Gallorum sunt subita et
of these (as the counsels of the Gauls are sudden and

repentina) retinent Trebium que Terrasidium de
immediate) detain Trebius and Terrasidius from

eandem causam: et legatis missis celeriter,
the same cause: and ambassadors being sent quickly,

conjurant inter se per suos principes;
they conspire among themselves through their chiefs;

esse acturos nihil nisi communi consilio,
to be about-to-act (would do) nothing unless by common counsel.

que latus eundem exitum omnis fortunae; que
and about-to-bear the same issue of all fortune; and

solicitant reliquas civitates, ut mallent
they solicit the remaining states, that they would-rather

permanere in ea libertate, quam acceperant
to remain in that liberty, which they had received

a majoribus, quam perferre servitutem
from (their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery

Romanorum. Omni maritimam ora perductam
of the Romans. All the maritime coast being led-over

celeriter ad suam sententiam, mittunt communem
quickly to their opinion, they send a common

(general) legationem ad Publium Crassum, "Si
embassy to Publius Crassus, "If

velit recipere suos, remittat
he may will to receive his (ambassadors), he may send-back

obsides sibi."
(their) hostages to themselves."

9. De quibus rebus Cæsar factus
Concerning which things Cæsar being made
 certior
more-sure (being informed) à Crasso, jūbet
by Crassus, he orders
 longas naves ædificari intērim in
long ships (ships of war) to be built meanwhile on
 flumīne Ligēri, quod inflūit Oceānum,
the river Liger (Loire), which flows-into the Ocean,
 remiges institūi ex Provinciā, nautas
rowers to be prepared from the Province, sailors
 que gubernatores comparari, quòd ipse
and pilots to be procured, because himself
 abērat longius. His rebus administratis
was-distant farther (too far). These things being managed
 celeriter, ipse contendit ad exercitum, quā-primū
quickly, himself hastened to the army, as-soon-as
 potuit per tempus anni. Venēti
he was-able through the time of the year. The Veneti
 que item reliquæ civitates, adventu Cæsāris
and also the rest (other) states, the arrival of Cæsar
 cognito, simul quòd intelligebant
being known, at the same-time because they did understand
 quantum facinus admisissent (pluperf. subj.) in
how-great a crime they had admitted unto
 se legatos, nomen quod semper fuisset
themselves, the ambassadors, a name which always had been
 (pluperf. subj.) sanctum que inviolatum apud
holy and inviolate at (among)
 omnes nationes, retentos ab se et
all nations, being detained by themselves and
 coniectos in vincula; institūunt parare bellum
cast into chains; resolve to prepare war
 pro magnitudine pericūli, et
for (in proportion to) the greatness of the danger, and
 maxime providere ea quæ pertinerent
chiefly to provide those (things) which did relate

(imp. subj.) ad usum navium ; hęc,
to the use of ships ; from this (on this
account), majore spe, quod confidebant
with greater hope, because they did trust
multum naturā loci. Sciebant
much in the nature of the place. They did know
pedestrā itinera concisa-esse æstuariis ;
the foot (land) ways to have been cut-up by æstuaries
navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam
navigation prevented on-account-of (our) ignorance
locorum que paucitatem portuum : confidebant
of the places and the fewness of the harbours : they did trust
nostros exercitus necque posse morari diutius
our armies neither to be able to delay longer
apud se, propter inopiam frumenti.
at (among) themselves, on-account-of the want of corn,
Ac jam, ut omnia acciderent contra
And now, though all (things) might-happen against
opinionem, tamen se posse
(their) opinion, yet themselves to be able (to do)
plurimum navibus : Romanos habere necque ullam
very much in ships : the Romans to have neither any
facultatem navium, necque novisse vada,
power of ships, nor to have-known the shallows,
portus, insulas eorum locorum, ubi essent (imp.
harbours, islands of those places, where they were
subj.) gesturi bellum : ac perspiciebant
about-to-carry-on war : and they did clearly-see
navigationem in concluso mari, atque in
navigation in an inclosed sea, and in
vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, esse longè
a most-immense and most-open Ocean, to be far
aliā. His consiliis initis,
other (different). These counsels being entered-into,
muniunt oppida, comportant frumenta (pl.)
they fortify the towns, they bring-together corn

ex agris in oppida; cogunt naves
from the lands into the towns; they collect (their) ships

quàm-plurimas possunt, in Venetiam, ubi
as-many-as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Cæsarem primum gesturum
it was-evident Cæsar (to be) first about to carry-on

bellum. Adsciscunt socios sibi ad id
the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves to that

bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambialites,
war the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannetes, Ambialites,

Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios; accersunt auxilia
Morini, Diablintes, Menapii; they send-for auxiliaries

ex Britannia, quæ est posita contra
from Britain, which is placed against (opposite)

eas regiones.
those countries.

10. Hæ erant difficultates belli gerendi,
These were the difficulties of a war to-be-carried-on,

quas ostendimus supra: sed tamen multa
which we have shown above: but however many (things)

incitabant Cæsarem ad id bellum: injuriæ
did urge Cæsar to that war: the injuries

Romanorum equitum retentorum: rebellio
of Roman knights being detained: the rebellion

facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidibus
being made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages

datis: conjunctio tot civitatum:
having been given: the conspiracy of so-many states:

in-particular, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquæ
in-particular, lest, this part being neglected, the rest

nationes arbitrarentur idem licere
(other) nations might think the same (thing) to-be-lawful

sibi. Itaque quum intelligeret (imp. subj.)
for themselves. Therefore when he understood

fere omnes Gallos studere nova
nearly all the Gauls to study (to be desirous) for new

rebus, et excitari mobiliter que
things (revolution), and to-be-roused changeably and
 celeriter ad bellum; autem omnes homines naturâ
quickly to war; but all men by nature
 studere libertati, et odisse
to study for liberty, and to have hated (to hate)
 conditionem servitutis; prius-quam plures civitates
the condition of slavery; before-that more states
 conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum, ac
should conspire, he thought the army to-be-divided, and
 distribuendum latius sibi.
to-be-distributed more-widely to (by) himself.

11. Itaque mittit Titum Labienum legatum
Therefore he sends Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant
 cum equitatu in Treviros, qui sunt proximi
with the cavalry unto the Treviri, who are nearest
 flumini Rheno. Mandat huic, adëat
to the river Rhine. He charges to him, (that) he may go-to
 Rhemos que reliquos Belgas, atque continëat
the Rhemi and the rest-of the Belgæ, and may constrain
 in officio; que prohibëat Germanos, qui
(them) in duty; and may prevent the Germans, who
 dicebantur accersiti auxilio à Belgis, si
were-said being sent-for to aid by the Belgæ, if
 conentur per vim transire flumen
they may attempt by force to cross the river
 navibus. Jübet Publium Crassum cum
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with
 duodëcim legionariis cohortibus, et magno numëro
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number
 equitatûs proficisci in Aquitaniam, ne auxiliâ
of cavalry to set-out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries
 mittantur ex his nationibus in Galliam, ac
may be sent out-of these nations into Gaul, and
 tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum
so-great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurium Sabinum legatum cum tribus legionibus
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiosolitas, que Lexovios; qui
unto the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet eam manum destinendam.
may take-care that band (of people) to-be-checked.

Præfecit Decium Brutum adolescentem classi,
He appointed Decius Brutus a young-man to the fleet,

que Gallicis navibus, quas jussērat
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonibus que Santonis, et
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni, and

reliquis pacatis regionibus; et jubet
the rest (other) subdued countries; and he orders

proficisci quam-primū posset, in
(him) to set-out as-soon-as he might be-able, unto

Venētos. Ipse contendit eō pedestribus
the Veneti. Himself hastens thither with the foot

copiis.
forces.

12. Situs oppidorum erant fere
The situations of (their) towns were nearly

ejusmodi, ut posita in extremis lingulis
of this-sort, that being placed in extreme little-tongues

que promontoriis, haberent (imp. subj.) neque aditum
and promontories, they had neither access

pedibus, quum æstus incitavisset se ex
by feet, when the tide might have urged itself from

alto, quod accidit semper bis spatio
the deep, which happens always twice in the space

duodecim horarum: neque navibus, quod
of twelve hours: neither by ships, because

æstu rursus minuente naves afflicta-
the tide again diminishing (ebbing) the ships might be

rentur in vādis. Ita utrāque re
dashed on the shallows. Thus from each thing

oppugnatio oppidorum impediēbatur. Ac, si
an assault of the towns was prevented. And, if

quando fortè superati magnitudīne
any-time by-chance being overcome by the greatness

opēris, mări extruso aggēre ac
of a work, the sea being shut-out by a mound and

molibus, atque his adæquatis fermè mœnibus
by moles, and these being equalled nearly to the walls

oppīdi, cœpērant desperare suis fortunis ;
of the town, they had begun to despair-of their fortunes ;

magno numēro navium appulso,
a great number of ships being brought-into-harbour,

cujus rei habebant summam facultatem,
of which thing they did have the highest power,

deportabant omnia sua que recipiebant
they did carry-away all their (effects) and did betake

se in proxima oppīda : ibi defendebant
themselves into the nearest towns : there they did defend

se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci.
themselves again by the same opportunities of place.

Faciebant hæc èd facilius magnam
They did do these (things) therefore more-easily a great

partem æstatis, quòd nostræ naves detinebantur
part of the summer, because our ships were detained

tempestatibus ; que erat summa difficultas
by tempests ; and (there) was the highest difficulty

navigandi vasto atque aperto mări, magnis
of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great

æstibus, raris ac pròpè nullis portibus,
tides, with few and nearly no harbours.

13. Namque naves ipsorum factæ-erant que
For the ships of them had been-made and

armatæ ad hunc modum : carinæ
armed (furnished) to (in) this manner : the keels (were)

aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navium ;
by something more-flat than (those) of our ships .

quò in-order-that	possent they might be-able	excipere to receive (sustain)		
vāda the shallows	ac and	decessum the departure	æstūs of the tide	faciliūs : more-easily :
proræ the prows (were)	admōdum very	erectæ, upright,	atque item and also	puppēs, the poops,
accommodatæ fitted	ad to	magnitudīnem the greatness	fluctūum of the waves	que and
tempestatum. tempests.	Totæ The whole	naves ships	factæ (were) made	ex out-of
robōre, oak.	ad at (with a view to)	quamvis any	vim et force and	contumeliām injury
perferendam : to-be-borne :	transtra the benches (were made)	ex out-of	pedalibus foot	
trabibus beams	in into	latitudīnem, width,	confixa fixed-together	ferrēis with iron
clavis, nails,	crassitudīne with (of) the thickness	pollicis of the thumb	digiti : finger :	
anchōræ the anchors	revinctæ (were) fastened	ferrēis with iron	catenis, chains,	pro instead-of
funibus. ropes.	Pelles Hides	que and	alutæ (pl.) thin-leather	tenuiter slenderly
	pro (were) instead-of	velis ; sails ;	sive whether	propter on-account-of
lini, of linen,	atque and	inscientiām ignorance	usūs of the use	ejus ; of it ;
		sive, or,		
quod what	est is	māgis more	verisimīle, likely,	quòd because
				arbitrabantur they did think
tantas so-great	tempestates tempests	oceāni of the ocean	que and	tantos so-great
				impētus violence
ventorum of winds	non not	posse to be-able	sustineri, to be supported,	ac and
onēra burdens	navium of ships	rēgi to be governed	velis by sails	sātis sufficiently
commōdè. conveniently.	Congressus The encounter	nostræ to our	classi fleet	cum his with these

navibus erat ejusmodi ut præstaret (imp. subj.)
ships was of this kind that it did excel

celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum; reliqua
in speed alone, and the beat (stroke) of ours; the rest

essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et
(other things) were more suitable and

accommodatiora illis pro naturâ
more-accommodated to them for (regarding) the nature

loci, pro vi tempestatum: enim
of the place, for the violence of the tempests: for

nostræ neque poterant nocere his
our (ships) neither were-able to injure to them

rostris, (tanta erat firmitudo in his) neque
with the beak, (so-great was the strength in them) neither

telum adjiciebatur facîle propter altitudinem;
a weapon was hurled easily on-account-of (their) height;

et de eâdem causâ continebantur
and from the same cause they were kept (close

scopulis minùs incommôdè. Accedebat
to the rocks less inconveniently. It did approach (was

ut quum ventus cœpisset (pluperf. subj.)
added), that when the wind had begun

sævire et dedidissent (pluperf. subj.) se
to rage and they had given themselves

vento, et ferrent tempestatem faciliùs,
to the wind, both they might bear a tempest more-easily,

et consistèrent tutiùs in vâdis, et
and might stop more-safely in the shallows, and

derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nihil
being left by the tide, they might fear nothing (not)

saxa et cautes: casus omnium quarum
the rocks and reefs: the accidents of all which

rerum erant extimescendi nostris navibus.
things were to-be-dreaded to (by) our ships.

14. Compluribus oppidis expugnatis, ubi Cæsar
Several towns being stormed, when Cæsar

intellexit tantum laborem sumi frustra, nēque
understood so-great labour to be taken in vain, nor
 fūgam hostiū reprimi, oppidis captis,
the flight of the enemies to be checked, the towns being taken,
 nēque posse noceri his, statuit
neither to be able to be injured to them, he resolved
 classem expectandam. Ubi quæ convenit
the fleet to-be-awaited. When which (fleet) assembled
 ac primum visa-est ab hostibus, circiter
and first was-seen by the enemies, about
 ducentæ viginti paratissimæ naves eorum,
two-hundred twenty most-prepared ships of them,
 atque ornatissimæ omnī genere armorum,
and most-furnished with every kind of arms,
 profectæ è portu, constiterunt adversæ
having set-out from port, stood opposite
 nostris. Nēque satis-constabat Bruto,
to our (ships). Neither was it sufficiently-evident to Brutus,
 qui præerat classi, nēque tribunis
who was-over (commanded) to the fleet, nor to the tribunes
 militum que centurionibus, quibus singulæ
of soldiers and to the centurions, to whom single
 naves attributæ-erant, quid agerent,
 (particular) ships had been-assigned, what they should act
 aut quam rationem pugnæ insist-
 (do), or what plan of battle they should
 ěrent : ěnim cognovĕrant non posse
determine on : for they had known not to be able
 noceri rostro : autem turribus excitatis,
to be injured by the beak : but towers being raised,
 tamen altitudo puppiū ex barbāris
yet the height of the poops out-of the barbarian
 navibus superabat has ; ut nēque tela
ships did over-top these ; (so) that neither darts
 possent adjici commodè satis ex
might be-able to be thrown conveniently enough from

inferiore lōco, et missa à Gallis
a lower place, and (those) sent by the Gaul

accidērent gravius. Una res præparata à
might fall more-heavily. One thing prepared by

nostris erat magno usui; præacutæ falces,
our (men) was for great use; sharp-pointed scythes,

insertæ que affixæ longuriis, non absimili
inserted and fastened to long-poles, not with unlike

formâ muralium falcium: quum funes, qui
form of mural scythes: when the ropes, which

destinabant antennis ad malos, comprehensi-erant
did brace the yards to the masts, had been-seized

que adducti his, navigio incitato
and drawn-to by these, the vessel being urged-forward

remis, prærumpebantur: quibus
with the oars, they were broken-asunder: which

abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidebant;
being cut-away, the yards necessarily did fall;

ut quum omnis spes consistēret (imp. subj.)
(so) that when all hope did consist

Gallicis navibus in velis que armamentis,
to the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus navium
these being torn-away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempore.
was torn-away in one time (at the same time).

Reliquum certamen erat positum in virtute;
The rest-of the contest was placed in valour,

quâ nostri milites facîle superabant; atque
in which our soldiers easily did excel; and

mâgis eò, quòd res gerebatur in
the more therefore. because the affair was carried-on in

conspectu Cæsaris atque omnis exercitûs, ut
sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum se paullò fortius posset latere;
no deed a little more-brave might be-able to lie-hid,

ēnim omnes colles et superiora loca, unde
for all the hills and higher places, whence
 propinquus despectus erat in mare, tenebantur
a near view was unto the sea, were held
 ab exercitu.
by the army.

15. Antennis disjectis, ut diximus,
The yards being thrown-down, as we have said,
 quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.
when two or three ships did surround
 subj.) singulas naves, milites contendebant
each (of our) ships, the soldiers did strive
 summâ vi transcendere in naves
with highest (utmost) force to climb-over into the ships
 hostium. Quod postquam barbari
of the enemies. Which after-that the barbarians
 animadverterunt fieri, compluribus navibus
perceived to be done, several ships
 expugnatis, quum nullum auxilium
being stormed (boarded), when no aid
 reperiretur ei rei, contenderunt petere
might be found for that thing, they hastened to seek
 salutem fugâ: ac jam navibus conversis in
safety by flight: and now the ships being turned unto
 eam partem, quò ventus ferebat, tanta
that part, whither the wind did bear, so-great
 malaciâ ac tranquillitas subito exstitit, ut
a calm and stillness suddenly existed, that
 possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex
they were-able not to move themselves from
 loco: quæ res quidem fuit maximè opportuna
the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable
 ad negotium conficiendum: nam nostri
to the business to be finished: for our (men)
 consecrati singulas expugnaverunt, ut
having pursued single (ships) stormed (them), so-that

perpaucae ex omni numero pervenērint
very-few out-of all the number may have arrived to
 terram, inventu noctis, quum pugnaretur
land, by interposition of the night, when it was fought
 (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque ad occasum
from the fourth hour until to the setting
 solis.
of the sun.

16. Quo praelio bellum Venetorum que
By which battle the war of the Veneti and
 totius maritimæ oræ confectum-est. Nam quum
of the whole maritime coast was finished. For when
 omnis juventus, etiam omnes gravioris
all (their) youth, also all of more serious
 ætatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis
age, in whom something of counsel or of dignity
 fuit, convenērant eò; tum coegērant
was, had assembled thither; then (also) they had collected
 in unum locum, quod navium fuerat ubique:
into one place, what of ships had been everywhere:
 quibus amissis, reliqui habebant neque quò
which being lost, the rest did have neither whither
 recipērent se, neque quemadmodum
they might betake themselves, nor how
 defendērent oppida. Itaque dediderunt
they might defend (their) towns. Therefore they surrendered
 se que omnia sua Cæsari: in
themselves and all their (effects) to Cæsar: against
 quos Cæsar statuit vindicandum gravius
whom Cæsar resolved to-be-avenged more-severely
 eò, quò jus legatorum con-
therefore, in-order-that the right of ambassadors might be
 servaretur diligentius à barbaris in
preserved more-carefully by the barbarians unto
 reliquum tempus. Itaque, omni senatu
the rest (future) time. Therefore, all the senate

necato, vendidit reliquos sub corona.
being put-to-death, he sold the rest under the crown (by auction).

17. Dum hæc geruntur in
Whilst these (things) are carried-on in (among)
 Venētis, Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit in
the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus arrived into
 fines Unellorum, cum his copiis, quas
the borders of the Unelli, with these forces, which
 accepērat à Cæsare. Viridōvix præerat
he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix was-over
 his, ac tenebat summam imperiī
to these, and did hold the height (presidency) of power
 omnium earum civitatum, quæ defecerant; ex
of all of those states, which had revolted; out-of
 quibus coëgerat exercitum que magnas
which he had collected an army and great
 copias. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,
resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,
 Eburovices, que Lexovii, suo senatu interfecto,
Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate being put-to-death,
 quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,
because they were-unwilling to be advisers of war,
 clausērunt portas, que conjunxerunt se
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves
 cum Viridovice: que præterea magna multitudo
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude
 perditorum hominum que latronum convenērat
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled
 undique ex Galliâ, quos spes
from-every-side out-of Gaul, whom the hope
 prædandi que studium bellandi revocabat
of plundering and an inclination of warring did call-away
 ab agriculturâ et quotidiano labore. Sabinus
from agriculture and daily labour. Sabinus

tenebat sese castris (pl.) lōco idoneo omnibus
did keep himself in camp in a place fit for all

rebus : quum Viridōvix consedisset (pluperf. subj.)
things : when Viridovix had sat-down (had encamped)

contra eum spatio dūūm millium, que
opposite him (at) a space of two miles, and

copiis productis quotidie faceret (imp. subj.)
(his) forces being led-forth daily did make

potestatem pugnandi ; ut Sabinus jam
power (opportunity) of fighting ; so-that Sabinus now

veniret (imp. subj.) in contemptionem non solum
could come into contempt not only

hostibus, sed etiam carperetur (imp. subj.)
to the enemies, but also was censured

nonnihil vocibus nostrorum militum : que
somewhat by expressions of our soldiers : and

præbuit tantam opinionem timoris, ut hostes
he afforded so-great an opinion of fear, that the enemies

auderent jam accedere ad vallum castrorum
would dare now to approach to the rampart of the camp.

(pl.). Faciebat id eā causā, quod
He did do that from that cause, because

existimabat non dimicandum legato
he did think (it) not to-be-contended t, (by) a lieutenant

cum tantā multitudīne hostium, præsertim eo
with so-great a multitude of enemies, especially he

absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.) summam
(being) absent, who did hold the height (chief)

imperii, nisi æquo lōco, aut aliquā
of command, unless on equal place, or some

opportunitate dātā.
opportunity being given.

18. Hæc opinione timoris confirmatā,
This opinion of fear being strengthened,

delegit quendam Gallum idoneum et callidum
he selected a certain Gaul a fit and shrewd

hominem, ex his, quos habebat secum
man, out-o, those, whom he did have with-him

caussâ auxiliî. Persuadet
by cause (for the purpose) of aid (as auxiliaries) He persuades

huic magnis præmiis que pollicitationibus, uti
to him by great rewards and promises, that

transëat ad hostes: - edocet quod
he may go-over to the enemies: he instructs (him) what

vêlit fieri. Qui, ubi venit ad eos
he may will to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfûgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:
for a deserter, sets-forth (describes) the fear of the Romans:

docet quibus angustiis Cæsar
he informs (them) in what straits (difficulties) Cæsar

ipse prematur (pres. subj.) à Venëtis: nèque
himself is pressed by the Veneti: neither

abesse longiùs, quin Sabinus educat
to be-distant farther, but-that Sabinus may lead-out

exercitum clàm ex castris (pl.) proximâ
(his) army secretly out-of the camp in the next

noctie, et proficiscatur ad Cæsarem, caussâ
night, and may set-out to Cæsar, by cause (for the

sake) auxiliî ferendi. Ubi quod
of aid to-be-brought. When which (report)

auditum-est, omnes conclamant, occasionem ne-
was-heard, all cry-out, an opportunity of the

gotiî gerendi bènè non amittendam-esse:
business to be carried-on well not to-be-lost:

oportere iri ad castra (pl.). Multæ
to behove (it ought) to be gone to the camp. Many

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilium:
things did encourage the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatio Sabini superiorum dierum;
the delay of Sabinus of (on) the former days:

confirmatio perfûgæ; inopia cibariorum.
the assertion of the deserter; the want of provisions,

cui provisum-erat ab his parum diligenter;
to (for) which it has been provided by these little carefully

spes Venetici belli; et quod
(inadequately) the hopes of the Venetian war; and because

homines fere credunt libenter id quod
men generally believe willingly that which

volunt. Adducti iis rebus, dimittunt
they will. Inauced by those things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que reliquos duces ex concilio
Viridovix and the rest-of the generals from the council

non prius quam concessum-sit ab his,
not before than it may have-been-granted by them,

ut capiant arma et contendant ad castra (pl.)
that they may take arms and may hasten to the camp.

Qua re concessa, laeti, velut victoriam
Which thing being granted, (they) joyful, as-if the victory

explorata, sarmentis que virgultis
being discovered (certain), faggots and twigs

collectis, quibus complent fossas
being collected. with which they may fill-up the ditches

Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).
of the Romans, proceed to the camp.

19. Locus castrorum (pl.) erat editus, et
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circiter
gradually steep from the lowest (the bottom), about

mille passus: huc contenderunt magno
a thousand paces: hither they hastened with great

cursu, ut quam minimum spatii
course (speed), that as least of space (as little

daretur Romanis ad
time as possible) might be given to the Romans to

se colligendos que armandos, que exanimati
themselves to-be-collected and to-be-armed, and breathless

pervenerunt. Sabinus, hortatus suos,
they arrived (there). Sabinus, having encouraged his (men),

dat <i>gives</i>	signum <i>the signal</i>	cupientibus : <i>to (them) desiring (it) :</i>	hostibus <i>the enemies</i>
impeditis <i>being encumbered</i>	propter <i>on-account-of</i>	ea <i>those</i>	onera, quæ <i>burdens, which</i>
ferebant, <i>they did bear,</i>	jubet <i>he orders</i>	eruptionem <i>a sally</i>	fieri subito <i>to be made suddenly</i>
duabus <i>from the two</i>	portis. <i>gates.</i>	Factum-est <i>It-was-done</i>	opportunitate <i>by the convenience</i>
loci, <i>of the place,</i>	inscientia <i>by the ignorance</i>	ac defatigatione <i>and fatigue</i>	hostium, <i>of the enemies,</i>
virtute <i>by the valour</i>	militum <i>of the soldiers</i>	ac exercitatione <i>and the exercise</i>	superiorum <i>of former</i>
pugnarum, <i>battles,</i>	ut <i>that</i>	ferrent (imp. subj.) <i>(the enemy) bore</i>	ne <i>not</i>
quidem <i>indeed (even)</i>	unum <i>one</i>	impetum <i>charge</i>	nostrorum ; <i>of our (men) ;</i>
statim <i>immediately</i>	vertērent (imp. subj.) <i>turned</i>	terga : <i>(their) backs :</i>	quos <i>whom</i>
impeditos <i>encumbered</i>	nostri <i>our</i>	milites <i>soldiers</i>	consecuti <i>having pursued</i>
			integris <i>with entire</i>
viribus, <i>(fresh) forces</i>	(strength), <i></i>	occiderunt <i>killed</i>	magnum numerum <i>a great number</i>
eorum : <i>of them :</i>	equites <i>the cavalry</i>	consecrati <i>having pursued</i>	reliquos reliquerunt <i>the rest left</i>
paucos, <i>few,</i>	qui <i>who</i>	evaserant <i>had escaped</i>	ex fuga. Sic Cæsar <i>from flight Thus Cæsar</i>
factus-est <i>was-made</i>	certior <i>more-sure (was informed)</i>	uno tempore et <i>in one time both</i>	
de navali <i>of the naval</i>	pugna, <i>battle,</i>	et de victoria <i>and of the victory</i>	Sabini : <i>of Sabinus :</i>
que omnes <i>und all</i>	civitates <i>the states</i>	dediderunt <i>surrendered</i>	se statim <i>themselves immediately</i>
Titurio. <i>to Titurius.</i>	Nam ut <i>For as</i>	animus <i>the mind (spirit)</i>	Gallorum est <i>of the Gauls is</i>
alacer ac <i>alert and</i>	promptus <i>ready</i>	ad bella <i>to wars</i>	suscipienda, sic <i>to-be-undertaken. so</i>

mens eorum est mollis ac minimè resistens
the mind of them is soft and by-no-means resisting
 ad calamitates perferendas.
to misfortunes to-be-borne.

20. Fèrè eodem tempöre, quum Publius Crassus
Nearly in the same time, when Publius Crassus

pervenisset (pluperf. subj.) in Aquitaniam, quæ pars,
had arrived in Aquitania, which part,

ut dictum-est antè, est æstimanda ex
as has been-said before, is to-be-esteemed from

tertiâ parte Galliae, et latitudine
the third part of Gaul, both in breadth (extent)

regionum et multitudine hominum; quum
of countries and by the multitude of men; when

intelligeret (imp. subj.) bellum gerendum
he understood war to be carried-on

sibi in illis locis, ubi paucis (abl.)
to (by) himself in those places, where a few

annis antè Lucius Valerius Præconinus legatus
years before Lucius Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant

interfectus-esset (pluperf. subj.), exercitu pulso;
had been killed, (his) army being routea,

atque unde Lucius Manilius Proconsul,
and whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul,

impedimentis amissis, profugisset (pluperf. subj.),
(his) baggages being lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentiam adhi-
he did understand not moderate diligence to-be-

bendam sibi. Itaque, frumentariâ re
applied to (by) himself. Therefore, corn affair

provisâ, auxiliis que equitatu comparato,
being provided, auxiliaries and cavalry being prepared,

præterea multis fortibus viris Tolosâ, Carcasone,
moreover many brave men from Tolosa, Carcaso,

et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates provinciae
and Narbo (which are cities of the province

Galliæ, finitimæ his regionibus) evocatis
of Gaul, neighbouring to these countries) being called-out
 nominatim, introduxit exercitum in fines
by name, he introduced (his) army into the territories

Sotiatum. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiates,
of the Sotiates. Whose arrival being known, the Sotiates,

magnis copiis coactis, que equitatu, quo
great forces being collected, and cavalry, in which

valebant plurimum, adorti nostrum agmen
they did prevail most, having attacked our army

in itinere, primum commiserunt equestre prælium;
on the march, first engaged (in) a cavalry fight;

deinde suo equitatu pulso, atque nostris
afterwards their cavalry being routed, and our (men)

insequentibus, ostenderunt subito pedestres copias,
pursuing, they showed suddenly the foot forces,

quas collocaverant in convalle in insidiis.
which they had placed in a valley in ambuscades.

Hi adorti nostros disiectos, renovârunt
These having attacked our (men) scattered, renewed
 prælium.
the battle.

21. Pugnatum-est diu atque acriter, quum
It was-fought long and sharply, when

Sotiates, freti superioribus victoriis,
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem totius Aquitanie
did think the safety of the whole of Aquitania

positam in sua virtute; autem nostri
placed in their-own valour; but our (men)

cupèrent (imp. subj.) perspicere, quid possent
did desire to be seen, what they might be-able

efficere sine imperatore, et sine
to perform without the commander-in-chief, and without

reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce.
the rest (other) legions, a very-young-man (being) general.

Tamen hostes tandem confecti vulneribus
However the enemies at-length being spent with wounds

vertère terga : magno numero quorum
turned (their) backs : a great number of whom

interfecto, Crassus cœpit oppugnare oppidum
being slain, Crassus began to storm the town

Sotiatium ex itinere ; quibus resistantibus
of the Sotiates from (his) march ; who opposing

fortiter, egit vineas que
bravely, he acted (put in motion) the mantelets and

turres. Illi, aliàs eruptione tentatâ,
towers. They otherwise (one time) a sally being tried,

aliàs cuniculis actis ad
otherwise (another time) mines being carried-on to

aggèrem que vineas ; cuius rei Aquitani
the rampart and mantelets ; of which thing the Aquitani

sunt longè peritissimi, propter eâ-quòd ærariæ sectoræ
are by-far most-skilful, because-that copper veins

sunt apud eos multis locis ; ubi intellexerunt
are among them in many places ; when they understood

nihil posse profici his rebus,
nothing to be-able to be profited by these things,

diligentiâ nostrorum, mittunt legatos ad
from the diligence of our (men), they send ambassadors to

Crassum que pètunt, ut recipiat se
Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves

in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,
into a surrender. Which thing being obtained,

jussi tradere arma, faciunt.
being ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it.)

22. Atque animis omnium nostrorum intentis
And the minds of all our (men) being intent

in eâ re, Adiatomus qui tenebat summam
in that thing, Adiatomus who did hold the neight (chief)

imperii, ex aliâ parte oppidi, cum
of command, from another part of the town, with

sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant
six-hundred devoted (men), whom they call

Solduriōs : quorum hęc est conditio ut
Soldurii : of whom this is the condition (of life), that

fruantur (pres. subj.) omnibus commodis in vitā
they enjoy with all advantages in life

unā cum his, amicitiae quorum
together with those, to the friendship of whom

dediderint se : si quid
they may have given-up (engaged) themselves : if any (thing)

accidat iis per vim, aut fērant
may happen to them through violence, either they may bear

eundem casum unā, aut consciscant mortem
the same calamity together, or may inflict death

sibi : nēque quisquam repertus-est
to (on) themselves : neither any-one has been-found

adhuc memoriā hominum, qui recusaret
as-yet in the memory of men, who would refuse

mōri, ēo interfecto, amicitiae cuius
to die, he being killed, to the friendship of whom

devōvisset se. Cum his Adiatōmus
he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomus

conatus facere eruptionem, clamore
having endeavoured to make a sally, a shout

sublato ab eā parte munitionis, quum
being raised from that part of the fortification, when

milites concurrissent (pluperf. subj.) ad arma,
the soldiers had run-together to arms,

que pugnatum-esset (pluperf. subj.) ibi vehementer,
and it had been-fought there violently,

repulsus-est in oppidum ; tamen impetravit
he was-repulsed into the town ; however he obtained

à Crasso, uti uteretur eādem
from Crassus, that he might use (possess) the same

conditione (abl.) deditionis.
condition of surrender-

23. Armis que obsidibus acceptis, Crassus
The arms and hostages being received, Crassus
 profectus-est in fines Vocatium et
set-out into the territories of the Vocates and
 Tarusatium. Tum verò barbãri
of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)
 commoti, quòd cognoverant oppidum munitum
alarmed, because they had known a town fortified
 et naturã loci et mãnu
both. by the nature of the place and by hand (by art)
 expugnatum paucis diebus, quibus
having been-overthrown (by the Romans), in a few days, in which
 ventum-fuerat eò; cœperunt
it had been-come thither (after their arrival); they began
 dimittẽre legatos quoquo-versus, conjurare, dãre
to send-about ambassadors in-every-direction, to conspire, to give
 obsides inter se, parare copias. Legati
hostages between themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors
 mittuntur etiã ad eas civitates, quæ sunt
are sent also to those states, which are
 citerioris Hispaniæ, finitimæ Aquitaniæ: inde
of the nearer Spain, bordering to Aquitania: thence
 auxilia que dũces accersuntur; adventu
auxiliaries and generals are sent-for; by arrival
 quorum conantur gerẽre bellum cum magnã
of whom they endeavour to wage war with great
 auctoritate et cum magnã multitudine hominum.
authority and with a great multitude of men.
 Verò ii deliguntur dũces, qui fuerant unã
But those are chosen generals, who had been together
 cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos, que existimabantur
with Quintus Sertorius all years, and were thought
 habere summam scientiam militaris rei. Ii
to have the highest knowledge of military affair. Those
 consuetudinẽ Romani populi institũunt capẽre
by custom of Roman people resolve to take

lōca, munire castra (pl.),
(choose) (their) places (ground), to fortify the camp,

intercludere nostros commeatibus. Quod ubi
to shut-in our (men) from provisions. Which when

Crassus animadvertit, suas copias non facile
Crassus perceived, (and) his-own forces not easily

diduci propter exiguitatem, et
to be divided on-account-of (their) smallness (fewness), and

hostem vagari et obsidere vias,
the enemy to wander-about and to block-up the ways,

et relinquere satis praesidii castris (pl.);
and to leave enough of protection to (their) camp;

ob eam causam, frumentum que commeatum
on-account-of that cause corn and provision

supportari sibi minus commode, numerum
to-be-brought-up to himself less conveniently, the number

hostium augeri in-dies; existimavit non
of the enemies to be increased daily; he thought not

cunctandum, quin decertaret pugnâ. Hâc
to-be-delayed, but-that he should contend in battle. This

re delatâ ad concilium, ubi intellexit
thing being referred to a council, when he understood

omnes sentire idem, constituit postêrum
all to think the same, he appointed the following

dîem pugnae.
day for the battle.

24. Omnibus copiis productis primâ
All (his) forces being drawn-out in the first

luce, duplici acie institutâ, que auxiliis
light, a double line being formed, and the auxiliaries

conjectis in mediâ aciem, expectabat quid
being thrown into the middle line, he did wait what

consilii hostes caperent. Illi, etsi
of plan the enemies might take. They, although

propter multitudinem, et vetêrem gloriam
on-account-of (their) multitude, and ancient glory

belli que paucitatem nostrorum existimabant
of war and the fewness of our (men) they did think

se dimicatuŕos tutò; tãmen arbitrabantur
themselves about-to-contend safely; however did think (it)

esse tutiùs potiri victoriã sine ullo
to be safer to possess a victory without any

vulnẽre, viis obsessis, commeatu
wound, the ways (roads) being blocked-up, provision

intercluso: et si Romani cœpissent (plup.
being intercepted: and if the Romans had begun

subj.) recipẽre sese, cogitabant
to take-away themselves (to retreat), they did think

adoriri impeditos agmine et sub
to attack (them) encumbered on the march and under

sarcinis (pl.), inferiores animo. Hoc consilio
baggage, inferior in mind (spirit). This plan

probato ab ducibus, copiis Romanorum
being approved by (their) generals, the forces of the Roman

productis, tenebant sese castris (pl.),
being drawn-out, they did keep themselves in camp.

Hac re perspectã, quum Crassus effecisset
This thing being clearly-seen, when Crassus had rendered

(pluperf. subj.) hostes timidiore sũã
the enemies more-fearful by their

cunctatione atque opinione, nostros milites
delay and expectation, our soldiers

alacriores ad-pugnandum, atque voces
more-cheerful to-fight, and the expressions

omnium audirentur (imp. subj.), non oportere
of all were heard, not to behave

expectari diutiùs, quin
to be waited (that they ought not to wait) longer, but-that

iretur ad castra (pl.);
it should be gone (they should go) to the camp;

cohortatus sũos, omnibus cupientibus,
having exhorted his (men), all desiring (it),

contendit ad castra (pl.) hostium.
he hastens to the camp of the enemies.

25. Ibi quum alii complerent (imp. subj.)
There when others (some) did fill

fossas, alii depellèrent (imp. subj.) defensores
the ditches, others did drive-off the defenders

vallo que munitionibus, multis telis
from the rampart and fortifications, many weapons

conjectis, que auxiliares, quibus Crassus
being thrown, and the auxiliaries, to whom Crassus

confidebat non multum ad pugnam, præberent (imp.
did confide not much to battle, did exhibit

subj.) speciem atque opinionem pugnantium
an appearance and supposition of fighting (men)

lapidibus que telis subministrandis, et cespitibus
in stones and weapons to-be-supplied, and turfs

comportandis ad aggèrem; quum item
to-be-brought to (for) a mound; when likewise

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) constanter ac non timèdè
it was fought resolutely and not fearfully

ab hostibus, que tela missa ex
by the enemies, and the weapons sent (thrown) from

superiore loco, accidèrent (imp. subj.) non frustrà;
the higher place, did full not in-vain;

equites, castris (pl.) hostium circumitis,
(some) horsemen, the camp of the enemies being gone-round,

renuntiaverunt Crasso castra (pl.) non esse
announced to Crassus the camp not to be

munita eâdem diligentîâ ab Decumanâ
fortified with the same diligence from (at) the Decuman

portâ, que habere facilem aditum.
gate, and to have an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equitum
Crassus having encouraged the prefects of the horse

ut excitarent suos magnis præmiis
that they should rouse their (men) by great rewards

que pollicitationibus, ostendit quid vèlit
and promises, shows (them) what he may will

fieri. Illi, ut imperatum-erat, quatuor
to be done. They, as it had been-commanded, four
 cohortibus eductis, quæ relictæ præsidio
cohorts being led-out, which being left for a guard
 castris (pl.), erant integræ ab labore: et
to the camp, were whole (fresh) from labour: and
 circumductis longiore itinere, ne possent
being led-round by a longer route, lest they might be-able
 conspici ex castris hostium; oculis quæ
to be seen from the camps of the enemies; the eyes and
 mentibus omnium intentis ad pugnam,
minds of all being engaged to (on) the fight,
 pervenerunt celeriter ad eas munitiones, quas
they arrived quickly to those fortifications, which
 diximus; atque his proruptis, constiterunt
we have said; and these being thrown-down, they stood
 in castris (pl.) hostium prius quam posset
in the camp of the enemies before than it might be-able
 videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid
to be seen plainly by these or to be known, what
 rei gereretur. Tum verò clamore audito
of thing might be carried-on. Then truly a shout being heard
 ab eâ parte, nostri, viribus
from that part, our (men), their forces (strength)
 redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit
being renewed, which generally has been-accustomed
 accidere in spe victoriæ, cœperunt impugnare
to happen in the hope of victory, began to assault
 acrius. Hostes circumventi undique,
more-vigorously. The enemies surrounded on-every-side,
 omnibus rebus desperatis, contenderunt dejicere
all things being despaired-of, hastened to cast-out
 se per munitiones, et petere salutem
themselves through the fortifications, and to seek safety
 fugâ. Quos equitatus consecutus apertissimis
by flight. Whom the cavalry having pursued in most-open

campis, recepit se in castra (pl.) multâ
plains, betook itself into camp in much
 nocte, vix quartâ parte relictâ
night (late at night), scarcely a fourth part being left
 ex numëro quinquaginta millium, quæ
out-of the number of fifty thousands, which
 constabat venisse ex Aquitanîâ que
it was-evident to have come out-of Aquitania and
 Cantâbris.
the Cantubri.

27. Hâc pugnâ auditâ, maxîma pars
This battle being heard, the greatest part
 Aquitanîæ dedidit sese Crasso, que misit
of Aquitania surrendered itself to Crassus, and sent
 obsides ultrò: in quo numëro fuerunt
hostages voluntarily: in which number were
 Tarbelli, Bigerriõnes, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates,
the Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates,
 Elusâtes, Garîtes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibutzates, que
Elusates, Garites, Ausci, Garumni, Sibutzates, and
 Cocosates. Paucæ ultimæ nationes, confisæ
Cocosates. A few remotest nations, having relied
 tempore anni, quòd hiems suberat,
in (on) the time of the year, because winter was-near
 neglexerunt facere id.
neglected to-do that.

28. Fêrè eodem tempore, etsi æstas
Nearly in the same time, although the summer
 erat jam pròpè exacta, tãmen quòd, omni
was already nearly finished, however because, all
 Galliâ pacatâ, Morîni que Menapii supererant,
Gaul being subdued, the Morini and Menapii did remain,
 qui essent (imp. subj.) in armis nèque misissent (plu-
who were in arms nor had sent
 perf. subj.) unquam ad eum legatos de pace,
ever to him ambassadors about peace;

Cæsar *arbitratus* *id* *bellum* *posse*
Cæsar *having thought* *that* *war* *to be-able*

confici *celeriter*, *adduxit* *exercitum* *ẽo* : *qui*
to be finished *quickly, led-on* *the army* *thither* : *who*

instituerunt *agẽre* *bellum* *ratione* *longẽ*
resolved *to act (conduct)* *war* *in a manner* *far*

aliã *ac* *reliqui* *Galli* : *nam*,
other (different) *and (than)* *the rest (other)* *Gauls* : *for,*

quòd *intelligebant* *maximas* *nationes*, *quæ*
because *they did understand* *the greatest* *nations*, *which*

contendissent (pluperf. subj.) *prælio* *pulsas-esse*
had contended *in battle* *to have been routed*

que *superatas*, *que* *habebant* *continentes* *silvas*
and overcome, *and* *they did have* *extended* *woods*

ac *paludes*, *contulerunt* *ẽd* *se* *que*
and marshes, *they bore-away* *thither* *themselves* *and*

omnia *sua*. *Ad* *initium* *quarum*
all *their (effects).* *To* *the beginning* *of which*

silvarum, *quum* *Cæsar* *pervenisset* (pluperf. subj.),
woods, *when* *Cæsar* *had arrived,*

que *instituisset* (pluperf. subj.) *munire* *castra* (pl.),
and had resolved *to fortify* *the camp,*

nẽque *intẽrim* *hostis* *visus-esset* (pluperf. subj.) ;
nor *meanwhile* *the enemy* *had been seen ;*

nostris *dispersis* *in* *opẽre*, *evolaverunt*
our (men) *being scattered* *in* *the work,* *they flew-out*

subitò *ex* *omnibus* *partibus* *silvæ*, *et*
suddenly *from* *all* *parts* *of the wood,* *and*

fecerunt *impẽtum* *in* *nostros*. *Nostri* *celeriter*
made *an attack* *upon* *our (men).* *Our (men)* *quickly*

ceperunt *arma*, *que* *repulerunt* *ẽos* *in* *silvas* ;
took *arms, and* *repulsed* *them* *into the woods ;*

et *compluribus* *interfectis*, *secuti*
and *many* *being killed,* *having followed (them)*

longiùs *impeditioribus* *lõcis*, *deperdiderunt*
further (too far) *in more-entangled* *places,* *they lost*

paucos *ex* *suis*.
a few *out-of* *their-own.*

29. Cæsar instituit cædere silvas deinceps
Cæsar . resolved to cut the woods afterwards
 reliquis diebus; et ne quis impetus
on the rest (remaining) days; and lest any attack
 posset fieri ab latere militibus
might be-able to be made from the flank to (on) the soldiers
 inermibus que imprudentibus, collocabat omnem
unarmed and unaware, he did place all
 eam materiam, quæ cæsa-erat, conversam
that material (timber), which had been-cut, turned
 ad hostem, que exstruebat pro vallo
to the enemy, and did construct (it) for a rampart
 ad utrumque latus. Magno spatio confecto
to (on) each flank. A great space being finished
 paucis diebus incredibili celeritate, quum
in a few days with incredible speed, when
 pecus atque extrema impedimenta tenerentur
the cattle and the farthest baggages were possessed
 (imp. subj.) jam ab nostris, ipsi petèrent
now by our (men), themselves did seek
 (imp. subj.) densiores silvas; tempestates ejusmodi
the thicker woods; tempests of this-kind
 consecutæ-sunt, uti opus intermitteretur (imp.
followed, that the work was intermitted
 subj.) necessariò; et continuatione imbrium,
necessarily; and from continuance of the rains,
 milites possent (imp. subj.) non contineri diutius
the soldiers were able not to be kept longer
 sub pellibus. Itaque, omnibus agris
under hides (tents). Therefore, all the lands
 eorum vastatis, vices que ædificiis
of them being ravaged, the villages and buildings
 incensis, Cæsar reduxit exercitum et collocavit
being burnt, Cæsar led-back the army and placed (it)
 in hibernis in Aulercis que Lexovii,
in winter-quarters in (among) the Aulerci and the Lexovii

Item reliquis civitatibus, quæ fecerant
 also the rest (remaining) states, which had made
 bellum proximè.
 war last.

QUARTUS LIBER.

FOURTH BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Bellum contra Usipètes et Tenchthēros
 The war against the Usipetes and Tenchtheri
 continetur hōc libro, atque obiter
 is contained in this book, and by-the-way
 mores Suevorum que Germanorum
 the manners of the Suevi and of the Germans
 describuntur generatim : deinde trajectus
 are described generally : afterwards the crossing
 Rheni, ut transiret in Germaniā ;
 of the Rhine, that he might pass-over into Germany ;
 et trajectus in Britanniā : utrumque quem
 and the crossing into Britain : each which
 nemo Romanus ausus-fuērat ante illum.
 no-one Roman had dared before him.

1. Eā hiēme quæ secuta-est, qui fuit annus,
 In that winter which followed, which was the year,

Cnejo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus,
 Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (being) consuls.

Germani Usipētes, et item Tenchthēri transiērunt
the German Usipetes, and also the Tenchtheri crossed

flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudīne homīnum,
the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,

non longè à mări, quò Rhenus inflūit.
not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows-in (to it).

Caussa transeundi fuit, quòd exagitati ab
The cause of crossing was, because being harassed by

Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,
the Suevi many years, they were oppressed by war,

et prohibebantur agriculturâ. Gens
and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxīma et bellicosissima
of the Suevi is by-far the greatest and most-warlike

omnium Germanorum. Ii dicuntur habere
of all the Germans. Those are said to have

centum pagos; ex quibus educunt
a hundred villages; out-of which they lead-out

quotannis singula (pl.) millia armatorum
yearly single thousands of armed (men) (i. e. a

thousand from each) ex suis finibus, caussâ
out-of their borders, by cause (for

bellandi: reliqui manent dōmi,
the sake) of warring: the rest remain of (at) home,

cōlunt pro se atque illis. Hi rursus
they till for themselves and them. These again

sunt in armis invicem anno pōst; illi
are in arms in-turn in the year after; they

remānent dōmi. Sic nēque agricultura, nēque
remain of (at) home. Thus neither agriculture, nor

ratio atque usus belli intermittitur.
the method and experience of war is interrupted.

Sed est nihil privati ac separati agri
But (there) is nothing of private and separate land

āpud eos: nēque licet remanere
at (among) them: neither is it lawful to remain

longiùs anno in uno lōco, caussā
longer (than) a year in one place, by cause (for the sake)
 incolendi: nēque vivunt multum frumento,
of inhabiting: neither do they live much by (on) corn,
 sed maximam partem lacte atque pecōre;
but the greatest part by (on) milk and cattle;
 que sunt multum in venationibus: quæ res
and they are much in huntings: which thing
 et ālit vires et efficit
both nourishes the forces (strength) and renders (them)
 immani magnitudine corporum et genere
with huge size of bodies both from the kind
 cibi, et quotidianā exercitatione, et libertate
of food and daily exercise, and freedom
 vitæ, (quòd assuefacti nullo officio aut
of life, (because being accustomed in no -duty or
 disciplinā à puëris, faciant (pres. subj.)
discipline from boys (boyhood), they do
 nihil omnino contra voluntatem): atque addux-
nothing at-all against (their) will): and they
 erunt se in eam consuetudinem, ut
have brought themselves into that habit, that
 habēant (pres. subj.) nēque quidquam vestitus frigid-
they have neither any (thing) of clothing in the
 issimis lōcis, præter pelles; propter exiguitatem
coldest places, except skins; on-account-of the smallness
 quarum, magna pars corporis est aperta; et
of which, great part of the body is uncovered; and
 laventur (pres. subj.) in fluminibus.
they are washed in the rivers.

2. Aditus est mercatoribus ad eos, māgis
Access is for merchants to them, more
 eò, ut habēant
therefore (on this account), that they may have (those)
 quibus vendant, quæ cepērint bello,
to whom they may sell, what they may have taken in war,

quàm quò desidèrent ullam rem importari
than that they may desire any thing to be imported
 ad se. Quinetiàm Germani utuntur non
to themselves. Moreover the Germans, use not
 importatis jumentis, quibus Gallia delectatur
imported beasts-of-burden, with which Gaul is delighted
 maxime que quæ parat impenso pretio;
most and which it procures with expensive price;
 sed efficiunt hæc, quæ sunt nata prava
but they render these, which are born mis-shapen
 atque deformia apud eos, quotidianâ exercitatione,
and deformed among them, by daily exercise,
 ut sint summi laboris. Equestribus
that they may be (capable) of the highest labour. In cavalry
 praeliis desiliunt sæpe ex equis, ac
fights they leap-down often from the horses, and
 praeliantur pedibus; que assuefaciunt equos
fight with (on) feet; and they accustom the horses
 remanere eodem vestigio, ad quos
to remain in the same footstep (spot), to which
 recipiunt se celeriter, quum usus poscit:
they betake themselves quickly, when need requires:
 neque quidquam habetur turpius aut
neither any (thing) is held more-shameful or
 inertius moribus eorum, quàm uti
more-lazy by the customs of them, than to use
 ephippiis (abl.). Itaque, quamvis pauci
saddles. Therefore, although (however) few
 audent adire ad quemvis numerum equitum
they dare to approach to any number of horsemen
 ephippiatorum. Sinunt non vinum importari
using-saddles. They permit not wine to be imported
 omnino ad se, quòd arbitrantur homines
at-all to themselves, because they think men
 remollescere eâ re ad laborem ferendum,
to become-relaxed by that thing to labour to-be-borne
 atque effoeminari.
and to be rendered-effeminate.

3. Publicè pütant esse maxímam
Publicly (as a nation) they think (it) to be the greatest
 laudem, agros vacare quàm latissimè
praise, the lands to be-vacant as most-extensively (as
 à suis finibus. Sig-
extensively as possible) from their borders. (They think it) to
 nificari hâc re, magnum numërum civitatum
be signified by this thing, a great number of states
 non potuisse sustinere suam vim. Itaque
not to have been-able to withstand their force. Therefore
 circiter sexcenta millia passuum agri dicuntur
about six hundred thousands of paces of land (country) are said
 vacare à Suevis ex unâ parte. † Ubi
to be-vacant from the Suevi from one part. The Ubi
 succedunt ad altëram partem, quorum civitas
come-next at the other part, whose state
 fuit ampla atque florens, ut captus
has been extensive and flourishing, as the capacity
 Germanorum est; et qui sunt paullò huma-
of the Germans is; and who are a little more-
 niores etiã cætëris, qui sunt ejusdem
civilized also than the rest, who are of the same
 genëris; propterëa, quòd attingunt Rhenum, que
race; because that they touch-on the Rhine, and
 mercatores ventitant multum ad eos, et ipsi
merchants often-come much to them, and they
 sunt assuefacti Gallicis moribus propter
are accustomed to Gallic manners on-account-of
 propinquitatem. Quum Suevi, experti hos
(their) nearness. When the Suevi, having tried these
 sæpè multis bellis, potuissent (pluperf. subj.) non
often in many wars, had been-able not
 expellere finibus, propter
to expel (them) from (their) borders, on-account-of
 amplitudinem que gravitatem civitatis,
the extent and weight (consequence) of the state,

tāmen fecerunt vectigales sibi,
however they made (them) tributary to themselves,
 ac redegerunt multò humilicres que
and reduced (brought them) by-much lower and
 infirmiores.
weaker.

4. Usipètes et Tenchthēri, quos diximus
The Usipetes and Tenchtheri, whom we have said
 suprā, fuerant in eādem caussā; qui sustinuerunt
above, were in the same cause (condition); who supported
 vim Suevorum complures annos : tāmen
the violence of the Suevi many years : however
 ad extremum expulsi agris, et
at last being driven-out from (their) lands, and
 vagati multis locis Germaniæ
having wandered in many places of Germany (during)
 triennium, pervenerunt ad Rhenum : quas
three-years'-space, they arrived at the Rhine : which
 regiones Menapii incolebant, et habebant
countries the Menapii did inhabit, and did have
 agros, ædificiā, que vicos ad utramque ripam
lands, buildings, and villages at each bank
 fluminis : sed perterriti adventu tantæ
of the river : but affrighted by the arrival of so-great
 multitudinis, demigraverunt ex his ædificiis,
a multitude, they emigrated from these buildings,
 quæ habuērant trans flumen : et præsidiiis
which they had had beyond the river : and garrisons
 dispositis cis Rhenum, prohibebant
being arranged on-this-side the Rhine, they did hinder
 Germanos transire. Illi experti omnia,
the Germans to cross-over. They having tried all (things)
 quum possent (imp. subj.) nēque contendere
when they were able neither to contend
 vi, propter inopiam navium, nēque
by force, on-account-of the want of ships, neither

transire clām, propter custodias
to cross-over secretly, on-account-of the watches

Menapiorum, simulaverunt se reverti in
of the Menapii, pretended themselves to return into

sūas sedes que regiones; et pro-
their seats (settlements) and countries; and having

gressi vīam tridui, reverterunt
advanced a way (distance) of three-days, they returned

rursus; atque omni hoc itinēre confecto unā
again; and all this journey being finished in one

nocte equitatu, opprēsserunt Menapios inscios
night by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant

que inopinantes; qui facti certiores de dis-
and unaware; who being made more-sure of the de-

cessu Germanorum per exploratores, remigraverant
parture of the Germans by spies, had re-emigrated

sine mētū in suos vicos trans Rhenum.
without fear into their villages beyond the Rhine.

His interfectis que navibus eorum occupatis,
These being slain and the ships of them being seized,

prius-quam ēa pars Menapiorum, quæ erat
before-that that part of the Menapii, which was

citra Rhenum, fieret (imp. subj.) certior,
on-this-side the Rhine, was made more-sure,

transierunt flumen; atque omnibus ædificiis
they crossed the river; and all the buildings

eorum occupatis, aluerunt se copiis
of them being seized, they supported themselves with the stores

eorum reliquam partem hiemis.
of them (during) the rest (remaining) part of the winter.

5. Cæsar factus certior de his rebus,
Cæsar being made more-sure of these things,

et veritus infirmitatem Gallorum, quòd
and having feared the weakness of the Gauls, because

sunt mobiles in consiliis capiendis, et
they are changeable in counsels to-be-taken. and

pierumque stūdent nōvis rebus, existimavit nīhil
generally study for new things, thought nothing
 committendum his. Autem hoc est Gallicæ
to-be-entrusted to these. But this is of Gallic
 consuetudinīs; ut et cogant (pres. subj.) viatores,
custom; that both they compel travellers,
 etiā invitos, consistēre; et quærant (pres. subj.)
even unwilling, to stop; and inquire
 quod quisque eorum audiērit aut
what each of them may have heard or
 cognovērit de quāque re: et
may have known about each thing: and
 vulgus circumsistat (pres. subj.) mercatores
the common-people stands-round the merchants
 in oppīdis: cogant (pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex
in the towns: compel (them) to declare from
 quībus regionībus veniant, que quas res
what countries they may come, and what things
 cognovērint ibi. Permoti his
they may have known there. Moved-much by these
 rumoribus atque auditionibus, inēunt consilia
reports and hear-says, they enter-on counsels
 sæpè de summis rebus: quorum
often concerning the most-important things: of which
 est necesse pœnitere eos è-vestigio, quum
it is necessary to repent them immediately, when
 serviānt (pres. subj.) incertis rumoribus,
(since) they are-slaves to uncertain reports,
 et plerique respondēant (pres. subj.) ficta
and most (travellers) answer feigned
 ad voluntatem eorum.
(things) to the will of them.

6. Quā consuetudinē cognītā, Cæsar proficiscitur
Which custom being known, Cæsar sets-out
 ad exercitum maturiūs quàm consueverat,
to the army sooner than he had been-accustomed,

ne occurreret graviori bello. Quum venisset
lest he might meet to a heavier war. When he had come

(pluperf. subj.)   d cognovit   a
thither he knew (learned) those (things)

facta, qu   suspicatus-  rat f  re :
done, which he had suspected to be-about-to-be :

legationes missas    nonnullis civitatibus ad
embassies being sent by some states to

Germanos, que   os invitatos   t   discederent
the Germans, and those being invited that they should depart

ab Rheno : que omnia qu  
from the Rhine : and all (things) which

postul  ssent f  re parata ab
they might have demanded to be-about-to-be prepared by

se. Qu   spe Germani adducti,
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced,

vagabantur jam latius, et pervenerant in
did wander now more-widely, and had arrived into

fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui
the borders of the Eburones and of the Condrusi, who

sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principibus Galli  e
are dependants of the Treviri. The chiefs of Gaul

evocatis, C  sar existimavit   a, qu  
being summoned, C  sar thought those (things), which

cognoverat, dissimulanda s  bi : que
he had known, to-be-dissembled to (by) himself : and

animis eorum permulsis et confirmatis, que
the minds of them being soothed and strengthened, and

equitatu imperato, constituit gerere
cavalry being ordered (to be sent), he resolved to carry-on

bellum cum Germanis.
war with the Germans.

7. Frumentari   re comparat  , que equitibus
Corn affair being prepared, and cavalry

delectis,   cepit facere iter in   a
being chosen, he began to make (his) march into those

lōca, in quibus lōcis audiebat Germanos
places in which places he did hear the Germans
 esse. A quibus quum abesset (imp. subj.)
to be. From whom when he was distant

iter paucorum dierum, legati venerunt ab
a journey of a few days, ambassadors came from
 iis, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germanos
them, of whom this was the speech: "The Germans

nēque inferre bellum Romano populo priores,
neither to bring-on war to the Roman people former

nēque tamen recusare, quin contendant
(first), nor however to refuse, but-that they may contend

armis, si lacescantur: quod hæc consuetudo
by arms, if they be provoked: because this custom

Germanorum tradita-sit (perf. subj.) à majoribus,
of the Germans has been delivered by (their) ancestors,

resistere, nēque deprecari, quicumque
to oppose, neither (and not) to beg-off, whosoever

inferant bellum: tamen dicere
may bring-on war: however to say (that they must

hoc: venisse invitos, ejectos domo:
say) this: to have come unwilling, cast-out from home:

si Romani velint suam gratiam, posse esse
if the Romans may will their favour, to be-able to be

utiles amicos eis: vel attribuant agros
useful friends to them: either they may assign lands

sibi, vel patiantur tenere eos, quos
to themselves, or may allow (them) to hold those, which

possederint armis: sese concedere
they may have possessed by arms: themselves to yield

Suevis unis; quibus ne quidem
to the Suevi one (alone); to whom not indeed (even)

immortales Dii possint esse pares: neminem
the immortal Gods may be-able to be equal: no-one

reliquum esse quidem in terris, quem
rest (else) to be indeed in the lands (on earth), when

non-possint superare."
they may not-be-able to overcome."

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ
Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)
 videtur : sed exitus orationis fuit :
seemed (fit) : but the conclusion of (his) speech was :
 “Nullam amicitiam posse esse sibi cum
 “No friendship to be-able to be for himself with
 his, si remanerent in Galliâ : neque esse
 them, if they should remain in Gaul : neither to be
 verum occupare alienos, qui
 true (proper for them) to seize others' (lands), who
 potuerint non tueri suos fines :
 may have been-able not to defend their-own borders :
 neque ullos agros vacare in Galliâ, qui
 neither any lands to be-vacant in Gaul, which
 possint dari sine injuriâ, præsertim
 may be-able to be given without injury, especially
 tantæ multitudîni : sed licere, si vellent,
 to so-great a multitude : but to be-lawful, if they may will,
 considerare in finibus Ubiorum ; legati
 to settle in the territories of the Ubi ; ambassadors
 quorum sint (pres. subj.) apud se, et
 of whom are at (with) himself, and
 querantur (pres. subj.) de injuriis Suevorum, et
 complain of the injuries of the Suevi, and
 petant (pres. subj.) auxilium à se : se
 ask aid from himself : himself
 impetraturum hoc ab Ubiis.”
 about-to-obtain this from the Ubi.”

9. Legati dixerunt se relatores
The ambassadors said themselves about-to-carry-back
 hæc ad suos, et re
 these (words) to their-own (people), and the thing
 deliberatâ, reversuros ad Cæsarem
 being considered, (to be) about-to-return to Cæsar
 post tertium diem : interea petierunt
 after the third day : meantime they requested

ne-moveret castra (pl.) propiùs se.
he would not-move (his) camp nearer themselves.

Cæsar dixit ne id quidem posse
Cæsar said not that indeed (even) to be-able

impetrari ab se. Enim cognovêrat
to be obtained from himself. For he had known

magnam partem equitatûs missam ab
a great part of (their) cavalry having been sent by

iis ad Ambivaritos trans Mösam, aliquot
them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some

diebus antè, caussâ prædandi que
days before, by cause (for the sake) of plundering and

frumentandi : arbitrabatur hos equites
of providing-corn : he did think these horsemen

expectari, atque möräm interponi caussâ
to be waited-for, and the delay to be interposed by cause

 ejus rēi.
(for the sake) of that thing.

10. Mōsa profliit ex monte Vogëso,
The Mosa (Meuse) flows from mount Vogesus

 qui est in finibus Lingōnum ;
(Vosges), which is in the territories of the Lingones ;

et quâdam parte Rheni receptâ, quæ
and a certain part of the Rhine being received, which

 appellatur Vahālis, efficit insulam
(part) is called Vahalis (Waal), it forms the island

Batavorum : nēque-longiùs ab ěo
of the Batavi : and-not-farther from that (than)

octoginta millibus passuum transit in Oceānum.
eighty thousands of paces it passes into the Ocean.

Autem Rhenus oritur ex Lepontiis, qui
But the Rhine arises out-of the Lepontii, who

incölunt Alpes, et fertur citatus longo spatio
habit the Alps, and is borne rapid in a long distance

per fines Nantuatiūm, Helvetiorum,
through the territories of the Nantuates, of the Helvetii,

Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Triboccorum, que
of the Sequani, of the Mediomatrici, of the Tribocci, and

Trevirorum; et ūbi appropinquat Oceāno,
of the Treviri; and when it approaches to the Ocean,

diffūit in plures partes; multis
it flows-dividedly into more (several) parts; many

que ingentibus insulis effectis; magna pars
and great islands being formed; a great part

quarum incolitur à fēris que barbāris
of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous

nationibus; (ex quibus sunt qui
nations; (out-of which (there) are (some) who

existimantur vivere piscibus atque ovis
are thought to live (on) fishes and the eggs

avium); que influit in Oceānum multis
of birds); and it flows-in into the Ocean by many

capitibus.
heads.

11. Quum Cæsar abesset (imp. subj.) ab
When Cæsar was-distant from

hoste non ampliùs duodēcim millibus
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousands

passuum, legati revertuntur ad eum,
of paces, the ambassadors returned to him,

ut constitutum-erat: qui congressi in
as it had been-appointed: who having met (him) on

itinēre, orabant magnopere, ne-progrederetur
the march, did pray greatly, that-he would not-advance

longiùs. Quum impetrassent (pluperf. subj.) non
farther. When they had obtained not

id, petebant, "ut præmitteret ad eos
that, they did ask, "that he would send-before to those

equites, qui antecessissent (pluperf. subj.) agmen,
horsemen, who had preceded the troop

que prohiberet eos pugnâ: que
(army), and would prohibit them from battle: and

uti faceret potestatem sibi mittendi
that he would make power to themselves of sending
 legatos in Ubios : si principes que senatus
ambassador unto the Ubii : if the chiefs and senate
 quorum fecissent fidem sibi
of whom might have made faith (given security) to themselves
 jurejurando, ostendebant se usuros eâ
by oath, they did show themselves about-to-use (accept) that
 conditione, quæ ferretur à Cæsare;
condition, which might be brought (was offered) by Cæsar ;
 daret sibi spatium tridui ad
he might give to themselves the space of three-days to
 has res conficiendas." Cæsar arbitrabatur
these things to-be-accomplished." Cæsar did think
 omnia hæc pertinere eodem-illò, ut,
all these (things) to tend to-that-same (point), that
 morâ tridui interpositâ, equites
the delay of three-days having been interposed, the cavalry
 eorum, qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur :
of them, who were-absent might return :
 tamen dixit sese non processurum longius
however he said himself not about-to-advance farther
 quatuor millibus passuum eo die causâ
(than) four thousands of paces in that day by cause
 aquationis : convenirent huc
(for the sake) of watering : they should assemble hither
 quàm frequentissimi postero
, as most-numerous (as numerous as possible) on the following
 die, ut cognosceret de postulatis
day, that he might know (learn) concerning the requests
 eorum. Intërim mittit ad præfectos,
of them. Meanwhile he sends (persons) to the commanders,
 qui antecesserant cum omni equitatu, qui
who had gone-before with all the cavalry, who
 nuntiarent, ne-lacessèrent hostes
might announce, they should not-provok^e the enemies

prœlio ; et, si ipsi lacesserentur,
to battle ; and, if themselves should be provoked,
 sustinerent quoad ipse accessisset
they should support (it) until himself might have approached
 propius cum exercitu.
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes, ubi primum conspexerunt
But the enemies, when first they beheld
 nostros equites, numerus quorum erat quinque
our cavalry, the number of whom was of five
 millium, quum ipsi haberent (imp. subj.) non
thousands, when themselves did have not
 amplius octingentos equites, quod ii,
more (than) eight-hundred cavalry, because those,
 qui ierant trans Mösam caussâ
who had gone beyond the Meuse for the sake
 frumentandi, redierant nondum ; nostris
of foraging, had returned not-yet ; our (men)
 timentibus nihil, quod legati eorum
fearing nothing, because the ambassadors of them
 discesserant paullo antè à Cæsare, atque
had departed a little before from Cæsar, and
 is dies petitus-erat ab iis induciis (pl.),
that day had been sought by them for a truce,
 impetu facto, perturbaverunt celeriter nostros.
an attack being made, confused quickly our (men).
 Nostris rursus resistentibus, desiliêrunt ad
Our (men) again resisting, they leaped-down to
 pedes, suâ consuetudine, que èquis
(on) feet, by their custom, and the horses
 suffossis, que compluribus nostris dejectis,
being stabbed, and many our (men) being thrown-down,
 conjecerunt reliquos in fugam ; atque egerunt
they threw the rest into flight, and drove (them)
 ita perterritos, ut desisterent (imp. subj.) non
so affrighted, that they did cease not

fūgâ, prius quàm venissent (pluperf. subj.)
from flight, before than they had come

in conspectum nostri agminis. Quatuor et
into sight of our troop (army). Four and

septuaginta ex nostris equitibus interficiuntur in
seventy out-of our cavalry are killed in

eo prælio; in his Piso, fortissimus vir,
that battle; in these (was) Piso, a most-brave man,

Aquitanus, natus amplissimo genere,
an Aquitanian, born from most-extensive (noble) birth,

cujus avus obtinuërat regnum
whose grand-father had obtained kingdom (sovereign

power) in sua civitate, appellatus amicus à
in his-own state, being called a friend by

nostro senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.)
our senate. When he did bring

auxilium fratri intercluso ab hostibus,
aid to (his) brother shut-in by the enemies,

eripuit illum ex periculo; ipse, equo
he rescued him from danger - himself, (his) horse

vulnerato, dejectus restitit fortissime
being wounded being thrown-down resisted most-bravely

quoad potuit. Quum circumventus
as-long-as he was-able. When being surrounded

cecidisset (plup. subj.); multis vulneribus acceptis,
he had fallen; many wounds being received,

atque frater, qui jam excesserat
and (his) brother, who already had departed

prælio, animadvertisset (pluperf. subj.) id
from the battle, had perceived that

procul, equo incitato obtulit sese
at-a-distance, (his) horse being urged-on, he offered himself

hostibus, atque interfectus-est
to the enemies, and was-slain.

13 Hoc prælio facto, Cæsar jam
This battle being made (fought), Cæsar now

arbitrabatur nēque legatos audiendos
did think neither the ambassador, (ought) to-be-heard

 sibi, nēque conditiones accipiendas ab
to (by) himself, neither conditions to-be-received from

 iis, qui, pace petitâ, intulissent (pluperf.
those, who, peace being sought, had brought-on

subj.) bellum ultrò, per dolum atque
 war voluntarily, through deceit and

insidiâs. Verò judicabat esse summæ
snare. But he did judge (it) to be of the highest

dementiæ expectare, dum copiæ hostium
madness to wait, until the forces of the enemies

 augerentur que equitatus reverteretur
might be increased and (their) cavalry might return

et infirmitate Gallorum cognîtâ,
and the weakness (levity) of the Gauls being known,

 sentiebat quantum auctoritatis hostes
he did perceive how-much of authority the enemies

consecuti-essent (pluperf. subj.) apud eos uno
had obtained among them by one

præliò; quibus existimabat nihil spatii
battle; to whom he did think nothing of space (time)

 dandum ad consilia capienda. His rebus
to-be-given to (for) counsels to-be-taken. These things

 constitutis, et consilio communicato
being determined, and (his) plan being communicated

cum legatis et quæstore, opportunissima
with the lieutenants and the quæstor, a most-convenient

res accidit, ne-prætermittēret quem diem
thing happened, that-he-might-not-pass-by any day

 pugnæ, quòd manè postridiè ejus
of a battle, because in-the-morning the day-after of that

diei, Germani usi et eâdem
day, the Germans having used both the same

perfidiâ et simulatione, frequentes, omnibus
treachery and pretence, numerous, all

principibus que majoribus-natu
(their) chiefs and (those) greater-by-birth (elders)

adhibitis, venerunt ad eum in castra (pl.);
being brought, came to him into the camp;

simul, ut dicebatur, caussâ
at-the-same-time, as it was said, by cause (for the sake)

sui purgandi, quod commisissent
of themselves to-be-cleared, because they had engaged

(pluperf. subj.) praelium pridie, contra atque
battle the day-before, contrary and

dictum-esset (pluperf. subj.), et ipsi
(than) it had been-said, and themselves

petissent (pluperf. subj.): simul ut
had requested: at-the-same-time that

impetrarent quid, si possent (imp. subj.),
they might obtain some (thing), if they could,

fallendo de induciis. Quos oblatos
by deceiving concerning the truces. Whom being presented

sibi Cæsar gavisus, jussit retineri:
to himself Cæsar having rejoiced, commanded to be detained:

ipse eduxit omnes copias castris (pl.);
himself led-out all (his) forces from the camp;

jussit equitatum subsequi agmen,
he ordered the cavalry to follow-near the troop (army),

quod existimabat perterritum-esse recenti
because he did think (it) to have been-dismayed by the late

prælio.
battle.

14. Triplici acie institutâ, et itinere
A triple line being arranged, and a march

octo millium confecto celeriter, pervenit ad
of eight miles being finished quickly, he arrived at

castra hostium, prius quam Germani
the camps of the enemies, before than the Germans

possent sentire quid ageretur: qui
might be-able to perceive what might be done: who

perterriti subito omnibus rebus, et
being affrighted suddenly by all things, both

celeritate nostri adventus, et discessu
by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure

suorum, neque spatio dato consilii
of their-own (people), neither space being given of counsel

habendi, neque capiendi arma, perturbantur,
to-be-had, nor of taking arms, are disturbed,

ne præstaret educere copias
whether it might be-better to lead-out (their) forces

adversus hostem, an defendere castra, an petere
against the enemy, or to defend the camps, or to seek

salutem fugâ. Quum timor quorum significaretur
safety by flight. When the fear of whom was signified

(imp. subj.) fremitu et concursu, nostri milites
by the noise and running, our soldiers

incitati perfidiâ pristini diei, irruerunt
urged-on by the treachery of the former day, burst-in

in castra (pl.): in quo loco, qui
into the camp: in which place, (those) who

potuerunt capere arma celeriter, restiterunt nostris
were-able to take arms quickly, resisted to our (men)

paulisper, atque commiserunt prælium inter
a little-while, and engaged battle between

carros que impedimenta. At reliqua
the waggons and baggages. But the rest (remaining)

multitudo puerorum que mulierum (nam
multitude of boys and of women (for

excesserant 'dômo cum omnibus suis
they had departed from home with all their

que transierant Rhenum,) coepit fugere
(people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee

passim, ad-consectandos quos Cæsar misit
every-where, to-pursue whom Cæsar sent

equitatum.
the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post
The Germans, a shout being heard behind
 tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) suos
the back (rear), when they did see their (people)
 interfici, armis abjectis que
to be slaughtered, (their) arms being cast-away and
 militariibus signis relictis, ejecerunt se
military standards being left, cast-out themselves
 ex castris (pl.); et quum pervenissent
out-of the camp; and when they had arrived
 (pluperf. subj.) ad confluentem Mösæ et
at the conflux of the Meuse and
 Rheni, reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, magnâ
of the Rhine, the rest-of flight being despaired-of, a great
 numero interfecto, reliqui præcipitaverunt se
number being killed, the rest precipitated themselves
 in flumen, atque oppressi ibi timore,
into the river, and being overpowered there by fear.
 lassitudine, et vi fluminis, periêrunt.
by fatigue, and by the force of the river, they perished.
 Omnes nostri incolûmes ad unum,
All our (men) safe to one (to a man),
 perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt se in
very few being wounded, betook themselves into
 castris (pl.) ex timore tanti belli, quum
camp out-of fear of so-great a war, when
 numerus hostium fuisset quadringentorum
the number of the enemies might have been of four-hundred
 triginta millium capîum. Cæsar fecit
thirty thousands of heads. Cæsar made (gave)
 potestatem discedendi iis, quos retinuêrat
power of departing to those, whom he had detainèd
 in castris (pl.). Illi veriti supplicia
in the camp. They having feared the punishments
 que cruciatus Gallorum, quorum agros vexa-
and tortures of the Gauls, whose lands they had

vērant, dixerunt se velle remanere apud
harassed, said themselves to will to remain at (with)

ĕum. Cæsar concessit libertatem his.
him. Cæsar granted (this) liberty to them.

16. Germanico bello confecto, Cæsar de
The German war being finished, Cæsar from
 multis caussis statuit Rhenum transeundum-esse
many causes resolved the Rhine to-be-crossed

sibi; quarum illa fuit justissima;
to (by) himself; of which that (this) was the most-just

quod, quum videret (imp. subj.)
(most cogent); because, when he did see

Germanos impelli tam facile, ut veni-
the Germans to be impelled so easily, that they might

rent in Galliam, voluit eos timere suis
come into Gaul, he willed them to fear for their-own

rebus quoque, quum intelligerent exercitum
things also, when they might understand the army

Romani populi et posse et audere
of the Roman people both to be-able and to dare

transire Rhenum. Accessit etiam,
to cross the Rhine. It-acceded (added to this) also,

quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et
because that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes and

Tenchtherorum, quam commemoravi suprâ
of the Tenchtheri, which I have mentioned above

transisse Mösam caussâ
to have crossed the Meuse by cause (for the sake)

prædandi que frumentandi, neque inter-
of plundering and of providing-corn, nor to have been-

fuisse prælio, recepērat se trans
present to (at) the battle, had betaken itself across

Rhenum, post fugam suorum in
the Rhine, after the flight of their-own (people) into

fines Sicambrorum, que conjunxerat se
the borders of the Sicambri, and had united itself

cum iis. Ad quos quum Cæsar misisset (plu-
with them. To whom when Cæsar had sent

perf. subj.) nuncios, qui postularent, "uti
messengers, who should demand, "that

dedèrent sibi eos, qui intulissent
they should surrender to himself those, who had brought-on

(pluperf. subj.) bellum sibi que Galliæ,"
war to himself and to Gaul,"

responderunt: Rhenum finire
they answered: the Rhine to end (that the Rhine terminates)

imperium Romani populi: si existimaret
the empire of the Roman people: if he might think (it)

non æquum Germanos transire in Galliā,
not just the Germans to cross-over into Gaul,

se invito, cur postularet quidquam
himself (being) unwilling, why should he require any

sui imperii aut potestatis esse trans Rhenum?
of his empire or power to be across the Rhine?

Autem Ubii, qui uni ex Transrhenanis
But the Ubii, who one (alone) out-of the Transrhenani

misérant legatos ad
(nations across the Rhine) had sent ambassadors to

Cæsarem, fecerant amicitiam, dedérant obsides,
Cæsar, had made friendship, had given hostages,

orabant magnopere, "ut ferret auxilium
did pray greatly, "that he would bring aid

sibi, quod premerentur (imp. subj.)
to themselves, because they were oppressed

graviter ab Suevis: vel, si prohiberetur
grievously by the Suevi: or, if he might be hindered

facere id occupationibus reipublicæ, modo
to do that by the engagements of the state, only

transportaret Rhenum exercitum: id
he would carry-over the Rhine (his) army: that

futurum satis sibi ad auxilium
about-to-be enough for themselves to (for) aid

que spem reliqui temporis : tantum
and hope of the rest (remaining) time : so-great

esse nomen atque opinionem Romani exercitûs,
to be the name and opinion of a Roman army,

Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo prœlio
Ariovistus being routed, and this newest (last) battle

facto, etiam ad ultimas nationes
being made (fought), even to the remotest nations

Germanorum, uti possint esse tuti
of the Germans, that they may be able to be safe

opinione et amicitia Romani populi.
by the opinion (prestige) and friendship of the Roman people.*

Pollicebantur magnam copiam navium ad
They did promise a great plenty of ships to

exercitum transportandum.
the army to-be-carried-over.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decreverat transire Rhenum : sed arbitrabatur
had resolved to cross the Rhine : but he did think (it)

næque esse satis tutum transire navibus,
neither to be sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

næque statuebat esse suæ
neither did he decide (it) to be (the part) of his-own

dignitatis, næque Romani populi : itaque,
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people : therefore,

etsi summa difficultas pontis faciendi
although the highest difficulty of a bridge to-be-made

proponeretur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem,
was set-before (him), on-account-of the breadth, rapidity,

que altitudinem fluminis ; tamen existimabat id
and depth of the river : however he did think that

contendendum sibi, aut aliter exercitum
to-be-endeavoured to (by) himself, or otherwise the army

non transducendum. Igitur instituit hanc
not to-be-led-over. Therefore he framed this

rationem <i>plan</i>	pontis. <i>of the bridge.</i>	Jungebat <i>He did join</i>	bina <i>double (two)</i>
sesquipedalia <i>foot-and-half-thick</i>	tigna, <i>beams,</i>	paullum <i>a little</i>	præacuta <i>sharp-pointed</i>
imo, <i>the lowest (part),</i>	dimensa <i>measured</i>	ad <i>to (according to)</i>	altitudinem <i>the depth</i>
fluminis, <i>of the river,</i>	intervallo <i>with (at) an interval</i>	duorum <i>of two</i>	pædum <i>feet</i>
inter <i>between</i>			
se : <i>themselves :</i>	cum <i>when</i>	defixerat <i>he had fastened</i>	hæc <i>these</i>
			demissa <i>sent-down</i>
in <i>into</i>			
flumen <i>the river</i>	machinationibus <i>by machines</i>	que <i>and</i>	adegerat <i>had driven (them)</i>
fistucis, <i>with rammers,</i>	non <i>not</i>	directa <i>straight</i>	ad <i>to</i>
			perpendiculum <i>a perpendicular</i>
modo <i>in the manner</i>	publicæ, <i>of a pile,</i>	sed <i>but</i>	prona <i>inclined</i>
			ac <i>and</i>
			fastigiata, <i>pointed,</i>
ut <i>that</i>	procumbērent <i>they might incline-forward</i>	secundum <i>according-to</i>	natura <i>the nature</i>
fluminis : <i>of the river :</i>	statuebat <i>he did place</i>	item <i>also</i>	duo <i>two (beams)</i>
			contra <i>opposite</i>
his <i>to these</i>	juncta <i>joined</i>	ad <i>to (in)</i>	eundem <i>the same</i>
			modum <i>manner</i>
			in <i>in (at)</i>
			intervallo <i>an interval</i>
quadragenum <i>of forty</i>	pædum <i>feet</i>	ab <i>from</i>	inferiore <i>the lower</i>
			parte <i>part</i>
			conversa <i>turned</i>
contra <i>against</i>	vim <i>the force</i>	atque <i>and</i>	impetum <i>violence</i>
			fluminis : <i>of the river :</i>
			utramque <i>each-of</i>
hæc <i>these</i>	distinebantur <i>were separated</i>	binis <i>by two</i>	fibulis <i>braces</i>
			utrimque <i>on-either-side</i>
ab <i>from</i>	extremâ <i>the extreme</i>	parte, <i>part (the top),</i>	bipedalibus <i>two-foot-wide</i>
			trabibus <i>beams</i>
immissis, <i>being let-in (to them),</i>	quantum <i>as-much-as</i>	junctura <i>the joining</i>	(the space
	eorum <i>of those</i>	tignorum <i>beams</i>	distabat : <i>was-distant :</i>
			quibus <i>which</i>
disclusis, <i>being shut-out (pushed out),</i>		atque <i>and</i>	revinctis <i>being fastened</i>
			in <i>on</i>

contrariam partem, tanta. erat firmitudo opëris,
the opposite part, so-great was the firmness of the work,

atque eã natura rerum, ut
and that (such) the nature of the things, that

quò-major vis aque incitavisset
by how-much-greater the force of the water might have urged

se, hòc arctius tenerentur
itself, by this (by so much) more-closely they were kept

(imp. subj.) illigata : hæc directa
fastened : these straight-forward

contexebantur materiã injectã,
were interwoven with material (timber) thrown-on (them),

ac consternebantur longuriis que cratibus :
and were strewed with long-stakes and hurdles :

ac nihilo secius publicæ adigebantur obliquè ad
and nevertheless piles were driven obliquely at

inferiorem partem fluminis, quæ subjectæ
the lower part of the river, which being subjoined

pro pariète, et conjunctæ cum omni opëre,
for (as) a wall, and united with all the work,

exciperent vim fluminis : et item aliæ
might receive the force of the river : and also other (piles)

mediocri spatîo supra pontem, ut si trunci
at a moderate distance above the bridge, that if trunks

arborum sive naves essent missæ à barbaris,
of trees or ships might be 'sent by the barbarians,

caussâ opëris dejiçendi,
by cause (for the sake) of the work to-be-thrown-down,

vis earum rerum minueretur his
the force of those things might be diminished by these

defensoribus, neu nocerent ponti.
protectors, nor (lest) they might injure to the bridge.

18. Omni opëre effecto decem diebus,
All the work being completed in ten days,

quibus materiã cœpta-erat comportari,
in which the material had been-begun to be brought-together,

exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, firmo præsidic
the army is led-over. Cæsar, a strong guard
 relicto ad utramque partem pontis,
being left at each part (side) of the bridge,
 contendit in fines Sicambrorum. Intërim
hastened into the territories of the Sicambri. Meantime
 legati à compluribus civitatibus veniunt
ambassadors from many states come
 ad eum, quibus petentibus pacem atque amicitiam
to him, to whom seeking peace and friendship
 respondit liberaliter, que jubet obsides adduci
he answered liberally, and orders hostages to be brought
 ad se. Sicambri, ex eo tempore,
to himself. The Sicambri, from that time,
 quo pons cœptus-est institui, fugâ
in which the bridge was begun to be framed, flight
 comparatâ, iis hortantibus, quos ha-
sing prepared, those exhorting (them), whom they
 bebant ex Tenchthëris atque Usipetibus
did have out-of the Tenchtheri and Usipetes
 apud se, excesserant suis finibus,
at (among) themselves, had departed from their territories,
 que exportaverant omnia sua, que
and had carried-away all their (effects), and
 abdidërant se in solitudinem ac silvas.
had concealed themselves into a desert and woods.
 19. Cæsar moratus paucos dies in finibus
Cæsar having delayed a few days in the terri-
 bus eorum, omnibus vicis que ædificiis
tories of them, all the villages and buildings
 incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succisis, recepit
being burned, and the corn being cut-down, betook
 se in fines Ubiorum; atque polli-
himself into the territories of the Ubi; and having
 citus sūm auxilium his, si premerentur
promised his aid to them, if they might be oppressed

à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab
by the Suevi, he knew (learned) these (things) from

iis; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pluperf.
them; the Suevi, after-that they had found

subj.) per exploratores pontem fieri, concilio
by spies a bridge to be made, a council

habito, suo more, dimisisse nuncios
being held, in their manner, to have sent messengers

in omnes partes, uti demigrarent de
into all parts, that they might emigrate from

oppidis, deponerent liberos, uxores, que
the towns, might deposit (their) children, wives, and

omnia sua in silvas, atque omnes,
all their (effects) into the woods, and all,

qui possent ferre arma, convenirent in
who might be-able to bear arms, should assemble into

unum locum: hunc delectum-esse fere
one place: this (place) to have been chosen nearly

medium earum regionum, quas Suevi
the middle of those countries, which the Suevi

obtinerent (imp. subj.): expectare ibi adventum
did possess: to await there the coming-up

Romanorum, atque constituisse decertare ibi.
of the Romans, and to have resolved to contend there.

Quod ubi Cæsar compertit, omnibus his rebus
Which when Cæsar discovered, all these things

confectis, causâ quarum rerum
being finished, by cause (for the sake) of which things

constituerat transducere exercitum, ut inji-
he had resolved to lead-over (his) army, that he might

ceret metum Germanis, ut ulcis-
cast-in fear to the Germans, that he might take-

ceretur Sicambros, ut liberaret
vengeance-on (punish) the Sicambri, that he might deliver

Ubios obsidione, octodécim diebus omnino
the Ubii from a siege, eighteen days altogether

consumptis trans Rhenum, arbitratus
being spent across the Rhine, having thought (himself)
 profectum (-esse) satis et ad laudem et
to have advanced enough both to (for) praise and
 ad utilitatem, recepit se in Galliam que
to utility, he betook himself into Gaul and
 rescidit pontem.
cut-down the bridge.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ, Cæsar,
A small part of the summer (being) left, Cæsar,
 etsi hiemes in his locis sunt maturæ,
although the winters in these places are early,
 quòd omnis Gallia vergit ad Septentrionem,
because all Gaul bends (inclines) to the North,
 tamen contendit proficisci in Britanniam;
yet hastened to set-out into Britain;
 quòd intelligebat auxilia subministrata (-esse)
because he did understand aids to have been supplied
 inde nostris hostibus, fère omnibus Gallicis
thence to our enemies, nearly in all the Gallic
 bellis: et, si tempus anni deficëret ad
wars: and, if the time of the year might fail to
 bellum gerendum: tamen arbitrabatur
war to-be-carried-on: yet he did think (it)
 fore magno usui sibi, si modò
to-be-about-to-be for great use to himself, if only
 adisset insulam; perspexisset
he might have gone-to the island; might have observed
 genus hominum; cognovisset loca, portus,
the kind of men; might have known the places, harbours,
 aditus; omnia quæ fère erant
approaches; all which (things) nearly were
 incognita Gallis. Enim nèque quisquam ãdit
unknown to the Gauls. For neither any-one goes
 illò temèrè præter mercatores; nèque est
thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum iis ipsis, præter maritimam
any (thing) known to those selves, except the maritime

oram, atque eas regiones, quæ sunt contra
coast, and those countries, which are opposite

Galliam. Itaque, mercatoribus convocatis
Gaul. Therefore, the merchants being called-together

undique ad se, poterat reperire neque
from-every-side to himself, he was-able to find neither

quanta esset magnitudo insulæ, neque
how-great might be the size of the island, neither

quæ aut quantæ nationes incolerent, neque
what or how-great nations might inhabit (it), neither

quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus
what method of warfare they might have, or with what

institutis uterentur, neque qui portus essent
institutions they might use, nor what harbours might be

idonæi ad multitudinem majorum navium,
fit to (for) a number of greater ships.

21. Arbitratus esse idoneum, prius quam
Having thought (it) to be proper, before than

faceret periculum, præmittit Caium
he should make the trial, he sends-before (him) Caius

Volusenum cum longâ navi, ad
Volusenus with a long ship (a ship of war), to (for)

hæc cognoscenda. Mandat huic ut,
these (things) to-be-known. He charges to him that,

omnibus rebus exploratis, revertatur ad
all things being examined, he may return to

se quamprimùm. Ipse proficiscitur cum
himself as-soon-as-possible. Himself sets-out with

omnibus copiis in Morinos, quod trajectus
all (his) forces into the Morini, because the passage

inde in Britanniam erat brevissimus. Jûbet
thence into Britain was the shortest. He orders

naves convenire huc undique ex
ships to assemble hither from-every-side from

finitimis regionibus, et classem, quam
the neighbouring countries, and the fleet, which

fecerat ad Veneticum bellum superiore
he had made to (for) the Venetian war in the former

æstate. Intërim consilio ejus cognïto, et
summer. Mean-time the design of him being known, and

perlato ad Britannos per
being carried (reported) to the Britons through

mercatores, legati veniunt ad eum à
the merchants, ambassadors come to him from

compluribus civitatibus ejus insulæ, qui polliceantur
very-many states of that island, who may promise

dare obsides, atque obtemperare imperio
to give hostages, and to obey to the empire

Romani populi. Quibus auditis, polli-
of the Roman people. Who being heard, having

citus liberaliter, que hortatus ut
promised liberally, and having exhorted (them) that

permanerent in eâ sententiâ remisit
they should remain-firm in that determination he sent-back

eos domum: et unâ cum his mittit
them home: and together with these he sends

Comium, quem ipse constituerat regem ibi,
Comius, whom himself had appointed king there,

Atrebatibus superatis, et cujus virtutem et
the Atrebatess being overcome, and whose valour and

consilium probabat, et quem arbitrabatur
counsel he did approve, and whom he did think

fidelem sibi, que cujus auctoritas habebatur
faithful to himself, and whose authority was accounted

magna in his regionibus: impërat huic,
great in these countries: he commands to him,

adëat quas civitates possit, que hortetur
(that) he may go-to what states he may be-able, and may exhort

ut sequantur fidem
(them) that they may follow the faith (secure the protection)

Romani popŭli, que nuntĭet se
of the Roman people, and he may announce himself
 venturum ěò celerĭter. Volusenus, regionĭbus
about-to-come thither quickly. Volusenus, the countries
 perspectis, quantum facultatis potŭit dări
being observed, as-much of power was-able to be given
 ěi, qui auderet non egrĕdi navi,
to him, who might dare not to go-out from the ship,
 ac committĕre se barbăris, revertĭtur
and to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns
 quinto dĭe ad Căsarĕm, que renuntĭat quă
on the fifth day to Căsar, and announces what
 perspexisset (pluperf. subj.) ĭbi.
(things) he had seen there.

22. Dum Căsar commoratur in his lŏcis
Whilst Căsar delays in these places
 caussă navĭum parandarum, legati
by cause (for the sake) of ships to-be-prepared, ambassadors
 venerunt ad ěum ex magnă parte Morinorum,
came to him from a great part of the Morini,
 qui excusarent se de consilio
who might excuse themselves concerning the counsel
 superioris tempŏris ; quŏd barbări
of the foregoing time ; because (being) barbarous
 homĭnes que imperiti nostrăe consuetudinis,
men and unacquainted of (with) our custom,
 fecissent (pluperf. subj.) bellum Romano popŭlo ;
they had made war to the Roman people ;
 que pollicerentur se facturos ěa,
and might promise themselves about-to-do those (things),
 quă imperăssset. Căsar arbitratus
which he might have commanded. Căsar having thought
 hoc accidisse opportunĕ sătis sĭbi ;
this to have happened conveniently enough to himself ;
 quŏd volĕbat nĕque relinquĕre hostem post
because he did will neither to leave an enemy after

tergum, nēque habebat facultatem
 (behind) (his) rear, neither did he have the power
 belli gerendi propter tempus anni ;
 of war to-be-carried-on on-account-of the time of the year ;
 nēque judicabat has occupationes tantularum
 nor did he judge these engagements of so-very-little
 rerum anteponendas sibi Britanniae :
 things to-be-preferred to (by) himself to Britain :
 impērat his magnum numerum
 commands to them (to furnish) a great number
 obsidum. Quibus adductis, recepit
 of hostages. Which being brought-to (him), he received
 eos in fidem. Circiter octoginta onerariis
 them into allegiance. About eighty burden (transport
 navibus coactis que contractis, quod
 ships being collected and brought-together, which
 existimabat esse satis ad duas legiones
 he did think to be sufficient to (for) two legions
 transportandas ; distribuit quæstori,
 to-be-carried-over ; he distributed to the quæstor,
 legatis que præfectis quidquid præterea
 to the lieutenants and prefects whatever besides
 longarum navium habebat : huc
 of long ships (ships of war) he did have . hither
 accedebant octodēcim onerariæ
 did approach (were added) eighteen burden (transport)
 naves, quas tenebantur vento octo millibus
 ships, which were detained by the wind eight thousands
 passuum ex eo loco, quod minus-possent
 of paces from that place, that they might not-be-able
 pervenire in eundem portum : distribuit has
 to arrive into the same harbour : he distributed these
 equitibus ; dedit reliquum exercitum Quinto
 to the cavalry ; he gave the rest-of the army to Quintus
 Titurio Sabino, et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ,
 Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,

legatis, deducendum in Menapios atque
 (his) lieutenants, to-be-led-down unto the Menapii and
 in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus
 unto those districts of the Morini, from which
 legati venerant non ad eum : jussit
 ambassadors had come not to him : he ordered
 Publum Sulpicium Rufum legatum tenere
 Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant to keep
 portum cum eo praesidio, quod arbitrabatur
 the harbour with that guard, which he did think
 esse satis.
 to be sufficient

23. His rebus constitutis, nactus idoneam
 These things being arranged, having got a proper
 tempestatem ad-navigandum, solvit
 time (weather) to-sail, he loosed (set sail,
 fere tertiam vigiliam, que jussit equites
 nearly in the third watch, and commanded the cavalry,
 progredi in ulteriorem portum, et conscendere
 to proceed unto the further harbour, and to mount
 naves, ac sequi se : ab quibus
 the ships (embark), and to follow himself : by whom
 cum administratum-esset (pluperf. subj.) paullo tar-
 when it had been executed a little more-
 dius, ipse attigit Britanniam cum
 slowly, himself touched (reached) Britain with
 primis navibus circiter quartam horam diei :
 the first ships about in the fourth hour of the day :
 atque ibi conspexit copias hostium
 and there he beheld the forces of the enemies
 firmatas, expositas in omnibus collibus.
 confirmed (in position), drawn-out on all the hills.
 Cujus loci haec erat natura : mare con-
 Of which place this was the nature : the sea was
 tinebatur montibus adeo angustis, ut telum
 bounded by mountains so close (to it), that a dart

posset adjici ex superioribus locis in
might be-able to be cast from the higher places unto
 littus. Arbitratus hunc locum nequaquam
the shore. Having thought this place by-no-means
 idoneum ad-egrediendum expectavit in
fit to-go-out (disembark) he waited in (at)
 anchoris ad nonam horam, dum reliquæ
anchors to the ninth hour, until the rest-of
 naves convenirent eò. Intèrim legatis
the ships might assemble there. Mean-time the lieutenants
 que tribunis militum convocatis,
and tribunes of soldiers being called-together,
 ostendit et quæ cognovisset (pluperf.
he showed (them) both what (things) he had known
 subj.) ex Voluseno, et quæ vellet
from Volusenus, and what he might will
 fieri : que monuit omnes res
to be done : and he advised (them that) all things
 administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad
should be managed by them at a nod and to
 tempus (ut ratio militaris rei, maxime
time (as the method of military affair, (and) chiefly
 ut maritimæ res postularent (imp. subj.), ut
as maritime affairs did require as (cir-
 quæ haberent (imp. subj.) celèrem atque
cumstances) which did have a quick and
 instabilem motum.) His dimissis, et
unstable movement.) These being dismissed, and
 nactus et secundum ventum et aestum
having got both a favourable wind and tide
 uno tempore, signo dato, et anchoris
in (at) one time, a signal being given, and the anchors
 sublatis, progressus circiter octo
being taken-up (weighed), having advanced about eight
 millia passuum ab eò loco, constituit
thousands of paces from that place, he placed

naves aperto ac plano littore.
the ships on an open and level shore.

24. At barbāri, consilio Romanorum
But the barbarians, the design of the Romans
 cognito, equitatu præmisso, et
being known, the cavalry being sent-before, and
 essedariis; quo genere consueverunt
the charioteers; with which kind they have been accustomed
 plerumque uti in præliis, subsecuti
generally to use in battles, having followed-near
 reliquis copiis, prohibebant nostros
with the rest-of (their) forces, they did hinder our (men)
 egrēdi navibus. Erat summa
to come-out from the ships. (There) was the highest
 difficultas ob has caussas, quōd
difficulty on-account-of these reasons, because
 naves, propter magnitudinem potērant non
the ships, on-account-of (their) size were-able not
 constitūi nisi in alto: autem erat et
to be placed unless in the deep: but it was both
 desiliendum simul de navibus, et
to-be-leaped-down at-the-same-time from the ships, and
 consistendum fluctibus, et pugnandum cum
to-be-stood in the waves, and to-be-fought with
 hostibus militibus, ignotis locis,
the enemies by the soldiers, in unknown places,
 impeditis manibus, pressis magno et
with encumbered hands, oppressed with a great and
 grāvi onēre armorum; quum illi aut conjicerent
heavy load of arms; when they either did hurl
 (imp. subj.) tela audacter ex arido aut
darts boldly from dry (ground) or
 progressi paullulum in æquam, expediti
having advanced a very-little into the water, unencumbered
 omnibus membris, notissimis locis, et
in all (their) limbs, in very-well-known places, and

incitarent (imp. subj.) ĕquos insuefactos. Quihus
did urge-on horses accustomed-to (it). By which

rebus nostri perterriti, atque imperiti
things our (men) being dismayed, and unskilled

omnino hujus genĕris pugnæ, omnes utebantur
altogether of this kind of battle, all did use

(exhibit) non eâdem alacritate ac studio,
not with the same cheerfulness and zeal,

quo consueverant uti in pedestribus
with which they had been accustomed to use in infantry

prœliis.
battles.

25. Quod ŭbi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit
Which when Cæsar perceived, he ordered

longas naves, species quarum
the long ships (ships of war), the appearance of which

et ĕrat inusitatior barbăris, et motus
both was more-unusual to the barbarians, and the motion

expeditior ad usum, removeri paullulum
more-quick to (for) use, to be removed a very-little

ab onerariis navibus, et incitari
from the burden (transport) ships, and to be pushed-on

remis, et constitui ad apertum lătus
with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank

hostium, atque hostes propelli ac
of the enemies, and the enemies to be repulsed and

submoveri inde fundis, tormentis, sagittis;
to be removed thence by slings, shooting-engines, arrows;

quæ res fuit magno usui nostris. Nam
which thing was for great use to our (men). For

barbări permoti et figurâ navium,
th barbarians much-alarmed both by the shape of the ships,

et motu remorum, et inusitato
and by the motion of the oars, and by the unusual

genĕre tormentorum, constiterunt, ac mōdō
kind of shooting-engines, halted, and now

retulerunt pëdem paullùm. Ac, nostris
carried-back foot (retreated) a little. And, our
 militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem
soldiers delaying, chiefly on account-of the depth
 maris, qui ferebat aquilam decimæ
of the sea, (he) who did bear the eagle of the tenth
 legionis, contestatus Deos, ut ea
legion, having attested (besought) the Gods, that that
 res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,
thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,
 Desilite, milites, nisi vultis prodere aquilam
Leap-down, soldiers, unless you will to betray the eagle
 hostibus; ego certe præstitero
to the enemies; I certainly shall have performed
 meum officium Reipublicæ atque Imperatori.
my duty to the state and (my) Commander.
 Quum dixisset (pluperf. subj.) hoc magnâ
When he had said this with a great (loud)
 voce, projecit se ex navi, atque
voice, he cast-forth himself from the ship, and
 cœpit ferre aquilam in hostes. Tum
began to carry the eagle against the enemies. Then
 nostri cohortati inter se, universi
our (men) having encouraged among themselves, the whole
 desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum dedecus
leaped-down from the ship, lest so-great a disgrace
 admitteretur. Quum alii item ex proximis
should be allowed. When others also out-of the nearest
 navibus conspexisset (pluperf. subj.) hos, sub-
ships had beheld these, having
 secuti appropinquârunt hostibus.
followed-close they approached to the enemies.

26. Pugnatum-est acriter ab utrisque (plur.)
It was fought vigorously by each.

Tamen nostri perturbabantur magnopere, quod
However our (men) were disordered greatly, because

potērant nēque servare ordines, nēque
they were-able neither to keep (their) ranks, neither
 insistēre firmīter, nēque subsēqui
to stand firmly (to get firm footing), nor to follow-closely
 signa, atque aliū ex aliā
the standards, and another from another (one from
 one, another from another) navi aggregabat se
ship did associate himself
 quibuscumque signis occurreret. Verū hostes,
to whatever standards he might meet. But the enemies,
 omnibus vadis notis, ubi conspexerant
all the shallows being known, when they had beheld
 ex littore aliquos egredientes singulares
from the shore some coming-out single
 ex navi, ēquis incitatis, adoriebantur
from a ship, (their) horses being urged-on, did attack
 impeditos. Plures circumsisiebant
(them) encumbered. More (several) did surround
 paucos : alii conjiciebant tela in
a few : others did hurl (their) darts upon
 universos ab aperto latere. Quod quum Cæsar
the whole from the open flank. Which when Cæsar
 animadvertisset (plup. subj.), jussit scāphas longarum
had observed, he ordered the skiffs of the long
 navium, item speculatoria-navigia
ships (ships of war), likewise the spy-boats
 compleri militibus ; et submittebat subsidia
to be filled with soldiers ; and he did send-up aids
 iis, quos conspexerat laborantes. Nostri
to those, whom he had beheld labouring. Our (men)
 simul-atque constiterunt in arido, omnibus
as-soon-as they stood on dry (ground), all
 suis consecutis, fecerunt impetum
their (comrades) having followed, made a charge
 in hostes, atque dederunt eos in
upon the enemies and gave (put) them into

fūgam : nēque potuerunt prosēqui longiūs
flight : nor were they able to pursue farther (very

quōd equites potuērāt non tenere
far) because the horsemen had been able not to hold-on

cursum, atque capere insulam. Hoc
(their) course, and to take (reach) the island. This

unum defūit Cæsāri ad pristīnam
one (thing) was-wanting to Cæsar to (his) ancient

fortunam.

(former) fortune.

27. Hostes, superati prœlio, miserunt
The enemies, being overcome in the battle, sent

stātīm legatos ad Cæsārem de pace,
immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about peace,

sīmul-atque receperunt se ex fūgā;
as-soon-as they recovered themselves from flight ;

pollicīti-sunt sese daturos obsides, que
they promised themselves about-to-give hostages, and

facturos quæ imperāset. Comius
about-to-do what (things) he might have commanded. Comius

Atrēbas venit unā cum his legatis,
the Atrebatian came together with these ambassadors.

quem demonstravēram suprā præmissum (-esse)
whom I had shown above to have been sent-before

in Britannīam : illi comprehendērant hunc
into Britain : they had seized him

egressum è navi, quum deferret (imp.
having gone-out from the ship, when he did carry

subj.) mandata Imperatoris ad eos, atque
the commands of the Commander to them, and

conjecērant in vincula. Tum prœlio
had thrown (him) into chains. Then the battle

facto, remiserunt et in pace
being made (fought), they sent-back and in peace

petendā contulerunt
to-be-sought (in requesting peace) they carried-over (imputed)

culpam ejus rei in multitudinem, et
the fault of that thing unto the multitude, and

petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter
requested, that it might be pardoned on-account-of

imprudentiam. Cæsar questus quod quum
ignorance. Cæsar having complained that when

petissent (pluperf. subj.) pacem à se,
they had sought peace from himself

legatis missis ultrò in continentem,
ambassadors being sent voluntarily unto the continent.

intulissent (pluperf. subj.) bellum sine causâ,
they had brought-on war without cause,

dixit ignoscere imprudentiæ, que imperavit
said to pardon (their) indiscretion, and commanded (to

obsides: partem quorum illi dederunt
furnish) hostages: part of whom they gave

statim: dixerunt sese daturus paucis
immediately: they said themselves about-to-give in a few

diebus partem accersitam ex longinquiore locis.
days a part sent-for from more distant places.

Inter hæc jusserunt suos remigrare in
Meantime they ordered their (people) to return into

agros; que principes convenire undique
the lands; and the chiefs assembled from-every-side

et commendârunt se que suas civitates
and recommended themselves and their states

Cæsari.
to Cæsar

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus, oc-
Peace being confirmed by these things, the

totdecim naves de quibus demonstratum-est
eighteen ships concerning which it has been shown

suprà, quæ sustulerant equites, solverunt
above, which had taken-up the cavalry, loosed (set

ex superiore portu leni vento,
sail) from the upper harbour with a gentle wind,

post quartum diem quàm ventum-est
after the fourth day than (since) it was come (they

in Britanniam : quum quæ appro-
came) into Britain : when which (ships) did ap-

pinquarent (imp. subj.) Britanniae, et viderentur (imp.
prouch to Britain, and were seen

sub.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas subito
from the camp, so-great a tempest suddenly

coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp. subj.)
arose, that no-one of them was able

tenere cursum, sed aliae referrentur (imp. subj.)
to hold the course, but others were carried-back

eodem unde profectae-erant ; aliae
to the same (place) whence they had set-out, others

dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem partem
were thrown- to the lower part

insulae, quæ est propius occasum solis
of the island, which is nearer the setting of the sun

cum magno periculo sui : quæ
(the West) with great danger of themselves : which

tamen, anchoris jactis, cum complerentur (imp.
however, anchors being cast, when they were filled

sub.) fiactibus, provectae necessariò in
with waves, borne-forward necessarily unto

altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt continentem.
the deep in unfavourable night, sought the continent.

29. Accidit eadem nocte, ut luna
It happened in the same night, that the moon

esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dies consuevit
was full, which day has been-accustomed

efficere maritimos aestus maximos in oceano ;
to render the maritime tides greatest in the ocean ;

que id erat incognitum nostris. Ita
and that was unknown to our (people). Thus

aestus complebat uno tempore et
the tide did fill in one (the same) time both

longas <i>the long</i>	naves, <i>ships (ships of war),</i>	quibus <i>in which</i>	Cæsar <i>Cæsar</i>
curavêrat <i>had taken-care</i>	exercitum <i>the army</i>	transportandum <i>to-be-carried-over</i>	que quas <i>and which</i>
subduxêrat <i>he had drawn-up</i>	in <i>on</i>	aridum; <i>dry (ground);</i>	et tempestas <i>and the tempest</i>
afflictabat <i>did dash</i>	onerarias, <i>the burden (ships),</i>	quæ <i>which</i>	deligatæ-erant <i>had been fastened</i>
ad <i>to</i>	anchoras : <i>anchors</i>	nêque <i>neither</i>	ulla facultas aut <i>any power either</i>
administrandi <i>of managing</i>	aut <i>or</i>	auxiliandi <i>of aiding</i>	dabatur nostris. <i>was given to our (men).</i>
Compluribus <i>Very-many</i>	navibus <i>ships</i>	fractis, <i>being broken (wrecked),</i>	quum <i>when</i>
reliquæ <i>the rest</i>	essent (imp. subj.) <i>were</i>	inutiles <i>useless</i>	ad-navigandum, <i>to sail,</i>
funibus, <i>ropes (cables),</i>	anchoris, <i>anchors,</i>	que <i>and</i>	reliquis <i>the rest (other)</i>
armamentis <i>riggings</i>	amissis, <i>being lost,</i>	magna <i>a great</i>	perturbatio totius <i>alarm of the whole</i>
exercitus <i>army</i>	facta-est, <i>was-made,</i>	id <i>that</i>	quod erat necesse <i>which was necessary</i>
(unavoidable)	accidêre. <i>to happen.</i>	Enim <i>For.</i>	nêque erant <i>neither were (there)</i>
aliæ <i>other</i>	naves, <i>ships,</i>	quibus <i>by which</i>	possent (imp. subj.) <i>they were-able</i>
reportari; <i>to be carried-back;</i>	et <i>and</i>	omnia <i>all (things)</i>	deêrant, <i>were-wanting</i>
quæ <i>which</i>	essent <i>might be</i>	usui <i>for use</i>	ad naves reficiendas; <i>to the ships to-be-repaired;</i>
et <i>and</i>	quòd <i>because it was-evident</i>	constabat <i>to all</i>	omnibus oportere <i>to behove (that they</i>
hiemare in Gallia, <i>ought) to winter in Gaul,</i>	frumentum <i>corn</i>	provisum-erat <i>had been provided</i>	
non in his locis in <i>not in these places unto (for)</i>	hiemem. <i>the winter.</i>		

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae,
Which things being known, the chiefs of Britain,
 qui post praelium convenērunt ad ea
who after the battle had assembled to those (things)
 facienda, quae Cæsar jussērat, collocuti
to-be-done, which Cæsar had commanded, having conferred
 inter se; quum intelligērent (imp. subj.)
between themselves; when they did understand
 equites, et naves et frumentum deesse
cavalry, and ships and corn to be-wanting
 Romanis, et cognoscērent (imp. subj.) paucitatem
to the Romans, and did know the fewness
 nostrorum militum ex exiguitate castrorum;
of our soldiers from the smallness of the camps;
 quæ etiā erant angustiora hōc,
which also were more-narrow from this (circumstance),
 quòd Cæsar transportavērat legiones sine
because Cæsar had brought-over the legions without
 impedimentis; duxerunt esse optimum factu,
baggages; they deemed (it) to be best to be done,
 rebellione factā, prohibere nostros frumento
a rebellion being made, to prevent our (men) from corn
 que commeatu, et producere rem in
and provision, and to prolong the thing unto
 hiemem; quòd his superatis, aut interclusis
winter; because these being overcome, or intercepted
 reditu, cōfidebant neminem postea
from a return, they did trust no-one afterwards
 transiturum in Britanniam caussā
about-to-cross-over into Britain by cause (for the sake)
 belli inferendi. Itaque, conjuratione
of war, to-be-brought-on. Therefore, a conspiracy
 factā rursus, cœperunt discedere paullatim
being made again, they began to depart by-degrees
 ex castris (pl.), ac deducere clam suos
from the camp, and to lead-down secretly their

ex agris.
(people) from the lands.

31. At Cæsar, etsi cognovĕrat consilia
But Cæsar, although he had known the plans
eorum nondum, tamen suspicabatur id
of them not-yet, however did suspect that

före, quod accidit, et ex eventu
to-be-about-to-be, which happened, both from the event

suarum navium; et ex ĕo,
(disaster) of his ships, and from that (circum-

quòd intermisĕrant dāre obsides.
stance), because they had omitted to give hostages.

Itaque comparabat subsidia ad omnes
Therefore he did prepare helps to (for) all

casus : nam conferebat et frumentum quotidie
chances : for he did bring both corn daily

ex agris in castra ; et utebatur
from the lands into the camps ; and did use

materia atque ære earum,
with the material (timber) and copper of those (ships),

quæ naves afflictæ-ĕrant gravissimè, ad
which ships had been shattered most-severely, to (for)

reliquas reficiendas ; et jubebat
the rest to-be-repaired ; and he did order (those things)

comportari ex continenti, quæ ĕrant usui
to be brought from the continent, which were for use

ad ĕas res. Itaque, quum id administraretur
to those things. Therefore, when that was managed.

(imp. subj.) summo studio à militibus,
with the highest zeal by the soldiers,

duodĕcim navibus amissis, effecit, ut
twelve ships being lost, he accomplished, that

posset navigari commòdè reliquis.
it might be-able to be sailed conveniently in the rest.

32. Dum ĕa geruntur, unâ legione,
Whilst those (things) are carried-on, one legion,

quæ appellabatur septīma, missâ frumen-
which was called the seventh, being sent to provide-

tatum ex consuetudinē, nēque ullâ suspicione
corn according-to custom, neither any suspicion

belli interpositâ ad id
of war being interposed (having intervened) to that

tempus, quum pars homīnum remaneret (imp.
time, when a part of the men did remain

subj.) in agris, pars etiā ventitaret (imp.
in the lands, part also did come-to-and-fro

subj.) in castra (pl.) ; ii, qui erant in statione
into the camp ; those, who were on guard

pro portis castrorum (pl.), renunciaverunt
before the gates of the camp, announced

Cæsari, majorem pulvĕrem, quā consuetudo
to Cæsar, a greater dust, than custom

ferret, videri in eā parte, in quam
might bear, to be seen in that part, into which

partem legio fecisset (pluperf. subj.) iter.
part the legion had made (their) march.

Cæsar suspicatus, id quod erat, aliquid
Cæsar having suspected, that which it was, some

nōvi onsilii initum à
(thing) of new plan having been entered-on by

barbāris, jussit cohortes, quæ erant in
the barbarians, ordered the cohorts, which were on

stationibus, proficisci secum in eā partem,
guards, to set-out with himself into that part,

dūas succedere in stationem, reliquas
two (cohorts) to succeed unto guard, the rest

armari, et subsequi se confestim.
to be armed, and to follow-closely himself immediately.

Quum processisset (pluperf. subj.) paullò longiùs
When he had advanced a little farther

à castris, animadvertit suos præmi
from the camps, he perceived his-own (men) to be pressed

ab hostibus, atque sustinere ægrè, et
 by the enemies, and to withstand hardly, and
 legione confertâ, tela conjici
 the legion being crowded-together, darts to be thrown
 ex omnibus partibus. Nam, quòd omni frumento
 from all parts. For, because all the corn
 demesso ex reliquis partibus,
 being cut-down from the rest (remaining) parts,
 una pars erat reliqua, hostes, suspicati
 one part was left, the enemies, having suspected
 nostros esse venturos huc, delituèrant noctu
 our (men) to be about-to-come hither, had lain-hid by night
 in silvis. Tum subitò adorti
 in the woods. Then suddenly having attacked (them)
 dispersos, occupatos in metendo, armis
 dispersed, engaged in reaping, (their) arms
 depositis, paucis interfectis, perturbavèrant
 being laid-aside, a few being slain, they had disordered
 reliquos incertis ordinibus ;
 the rest in uncertain (confused) ranks ; at-the-
 simul circumdedèrant equitatu atque
 same-time they had surrounded (them) with cavalry and
 essèdis.
 with chariots.

23. Hoc est gēnus pugnæ ex essèdis :
 This is the kind of battle from the chariots
 primò, perequitant per omnes partes, et
 firstly, they ride through all parts, and
 conjiciunt tela ; atque perturbant ordines
 hurl (their) weapons ; and they disorder the ranks.
 plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et
 generally by the terror itself of the horses, and
 strepītu rotarum : et quum insinuavère
 rattling of the wheels : and when they have introduced
 se inter turmas equitum, desiliunt
 themselves among the troops of the cavalry, they leap-down

ex essēdis et prœliantur pedibus. Intērim
from the chariots and fight on feet. Meantime

aurigæ excedunt paullum è prælio,
the charioteers retire a little from the battle,

atque collocant se ita, ut si illi
and place themselves so, that if they

premuntur à multitudine hostium, habēant
be pressed by the multitude of the enemies, they may have

expeditum receptum ad suos. Ita
a prepared (ready) retreat to their-own. Thus

præstant mobilitatem equitum,
they perform (exhibit) the changeableness (activity) of cavalry,

stabilitatem peditum in præliis; ac efficiunt
the firmness of infantry in battles; and they accomplish

tantum quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut
so-much by daily practice and exercise, that

consueverint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac
they have been accustomed in a sloping and

præcipiti loco, sustinere equos incitatos, et
steep place, to check (their) horses spurred-on, and

moderari ac flectere brevè, et
to govern and to turn (them) shortly (quickly), and

percurrere per temonem, et insistere in
to run-along through (on) the pole, and to stand on

jugo, et recipere se inde citissimè
the yoke, and to betake themselves thence most-quickly

in currus.
unto the chariots.

34. Quibus rebus, nostris perturbatis
To which things, our (men) being disordered

novitate pugnae, Cæsar tulit
from the unusualness of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilium opportunissimo tempore: namque hostes
aid in most-seasonable time: for the enemies

constiterunt adventu ejus, nostri receperunt
halted at the arrival of him. our (men) recovered

<i>se</i> <i>themselves</i>	<i>ex</i> <i>from</i>	<i>timore.</i> <i>fear.</i>	<i>Quo</i> <i>Which</i>	<i>facto,</i> <i>being done,</i>	
arbitratus <i>having thought</i>	tempus <i>the time</i>	esse <i>to be</i>	alienum <i>improper</i>	ad <i>to (for)</i>	hostem <i>the enemy</i>
laccessendum <i>to-be-provoked</i>	et <i>and</i>	proelium <i>battle</i>	committendum, <i>to-be-engaged,</i>	continuit <i>he kept</i>	
<i>se</i> <i>himself</i>	<i>suo</i> <i>in his-own</i>	<i>loco ;</i> <i>place ;</i>	<i>et</i> <i>and</i>	<i>breui</i> <i>a short</i>	<i>tempore</i> <i>time</i>
intermisso, <i>being intermitted,</i>	reduxit <i>he led-back</i>	legiones <i>the legions</i>	in <i>into</i>	castra. <i>the camps.</i>	
Dum <i>Whilst</i>	hæc <i>these (things)</i>	geruntur, <i>are carried-on,</i>	omnibus <i>all</i>	nostris <i>our (men)</i>	
occupatis, <i>being engaged,</i>	qui <i>who</i>	erant <i>were</i>	in <i>in</i>	agris, <i>the lands,</i>	reliqui <i>the rest</i>
discesserunt. <i>departed.</i>	Tempestates <i>Tempests</i>	secutæ-sunt <i>followed</i>	complures <i>many</i>		
continuos <i>successive</i>	dies, <i>days,</i>	quæ <i>which</i>	et <i>both</i>	continherent (imp. subj.) <i>did restrain</i>	
nostros <i>our (men)</i>	in castris (pl.), <i>in camp,</i>	et <i>and</i>	prohiberent (imp. subj.) <i>did hinder</i>		
hostem <i>the enemy</i>	à <i>from</i>	pugnâ. <i>battle.</i>	Intërim <i>Meantime</i>	barbâri <i>the barbarians</i>	
dimiserunt <i>dismissed</i>	nuncios <i>messengers</i>	in <i>into</i>	omnes <i>all</i>	partes, <i>parts,</i>	que <i>and</i>
prædicaverunt <i>declared</i>	suis <i>to their-own (people)</i>	paucitatem <i>the fewness</i>	nostrorum <i>of our</i>		
militum ; <i>soldiers ;</i>	et <i>and</i>	demonstraverunt <i>showed</i>	quanta <i>how-great</i>	facultas <i>a power (op-</i>	
portunity) <i>and</i>	daretur (imp. subj.) <i>was given</i>	prædæ <i>of plunder</i>	faciendæ, <i>to-be-made,</i>		
atque <i>and</i>	sui <i>of themselves</i>	liberandi <i>to-be-freed</i>	in-perpetuum, <i>for-ever,</i>	si <i>if</i>	
expulissent <i>they might have driven</i>	Romanos <i>the Romans</i>	castris (pl.). <i>from the camp.</i>			
Magnâ <i>A great</i>	multitudine <i>multitude</i>	peditatûs <i>of infantry</i>	que <i>and</i>	equitatûs <i>of cavalry</i>	

coactâ celeriter his rebus, venerunt ad
being gathered quickly by these things. they came to
 castra (pl.).
the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar videbat idem
Although Cæsar did see the same (thing)
 fore, quod accidêrat superioribus
to-be-about-to-be, which had happened in former

diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,
days; that, if the enemies might be routed,
 effugêrent pericûlum celeritate; tâmen
they would escape danger by speed; however

nactus circiter triginta equites, quos Comius
having got about thirty horsemen, whom Comius

Atrêbas, de quo dictum-est antè,
the Atrebatian, of whom it has been-said before,

transportavêrat secum, constituit legiones
had brought-over with himself, he arranged the legions

in acie pro castris (pl.). Prælio commisso,
in line before the camp. The battle being engaged,

hostes potuerunt non ferre impetum
the enemies were-able not to bear the charge

nostrorum militum diutius ac verterunt terga:
of our soldiers longer and turned (their) backs:

quos secuti tanto spatio, quantum
whom having followed in so-much distance, as-much-as

potuerunt efficere cursu et viribus,
they were-able to perform by running and by forces

occiderunt complures ex iis: deinde
(endurance), they killed many out-of them: then

omnibus ædificiis incensis longè que latè,
all the buildings being-burned far and widely,

receperunt se in castra (pl.).
they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem die legati missi ab hostibus
On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemies

veniunt ad Cæsarem de pace. Cæsar duplicavit
came to Cæsar about peace. Cæsar doubled
 his numerum obsidum, quem imperaverat
to these the number of hostages, which he had ordered
 antea; que jussit eos adduci in
before; and commanded them to be conducted unto
 continentem; quod, die æquinoctii
the continent; because, the day of the equinox
 propinquâ, existimabat navigationem non
(being) near, he did think the voyage not
 subjiendam hiemi infirmis navibus: ipse
to-be-exposed to winter with weak ships: himself
 nactus idoneam tempestatem solvit
having gained a proper season (weather) loosed
 naves paullo post mediam noctem;
the ships (set sail) a little after middle night;
 omnes quæ pervenerunt incolumes ad continentem.
all which arrived safe to the continent.
 Ex his, duæ onerariæ potuerunt
Out-of these, two burden (transport ships) were-able
 non capere eosdem portus, quos
not to take (reach) the same harbours, which
 reliquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paullo infra.
the rest (did); but were carried-down a little beneath
 (lower down).

37. Ex quibus navibus, quum circiter
Out-of which ships, when about
 trecenti milites expositi-essent (pluperf. subj.),
three-hundred soldiers had been landed,
 atque contendèrent (imp. subj.) in castra,
and did proceed unto the camps,
 Morini, quos Cæsar reliquerat pacatos
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued
 proficiscens in Britanniam, adducti spe prædæ,
setting-out into Britain, induced by hope of plunder,

primò circumsteterunt numēro suorum
first surrounded (them) with a number of their-own
 non ita magno, ac jusserunt ponere
(people) not so great, and ordered (them) to lay-down
 arma, si nolent sese
(their) arms, if they might be unwilling themselves
 interfici. Quum illi, orbe facto,
to be slain. When they, a circle being formed
 defendērent (imp. subj.) sese, circiter sex millia
did defend themselves, about six thousands
 celeriter convenerunt ad clamorem hominum. Quā
speedily assembled at the shout of the men. Which
 re nuntiata, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum
thing being announced, Cæsar sent all the cavalry
 ex suis castris auxilio suis. Intērim
out-of his camps for aid to his (men). Meantime
 nostri milites sustinuerunt impetum hostium,
our soldiers sustained the attack of the enemies,
 atque pugnauerunt fortissimè ampliùs quatuor
and fought most-bravely more (than) four
 horis; et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, occiderunt
hours; and, a few wounds being received, killed
 complures ex iis. Verò posteaquàm noster
many out-of them. But after-that our
 equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,
cavalry came into sight, the enemies, (their)
 armis abjectis, verterunt terga, que
arms being thrown-away, turned (their) backs, and
 magnus numērus eorum occisus-est.
a great number of them was killed.

38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum
Cæsar sent (his) lieutenant Titus Labienus
 postēro diē, cum iis egionibus, quas
in the following day, with those legions, which
 reduxerat ex Britannia, in Morinos, qui
he had led-back from Britain, unto the Morini, who

fecerant rebellionem Qui, quum haberent (imp.
had made a rebellion. Who, when they did have

subj.) non quò recipērent se
not whither they might betake themselves

propter siccitates paludum,
on-account-of the droughts (drying-up) of the marshes,

quo perfugio usi-fuerant superiore anno,
with which refuge they had used in the former year,

ferè omnes pervenerunt in potestatem Labieni.
nearly all came into the power of Labienus.

At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati,
But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants

qui duxerant legiones in fines Me-
who had led the legions into the territories of the

napiorum, omnibus agris eorum vastatis,
Menapii, all the lands of them being ravaged,

frumentis (plur.) succisis, que ædificiis
the corn being cut-down, and the buildings

incensis, quòd omnes Menapii abdidērunt
being set-on-fire, because all the Menapii had hid

se in densissimas silvas, receperunt se
themselves into the thickest woods, betook themselves

ad Cæsarem. Cæsar constituit hiberna
to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter-quarters

omnium legionum in Belgis. Eò dūæ
of all the legions among the Belyæ. Thither two

civitates omnino ex Britannîâ miserunt obsides :
states in-all out-of Britain sent hostages :

reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis,
the rest neglected (it) These things being carried-on,

supplicatio viginti dierum decreta-est à
a general thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed by

senatu, ex litēris (pl.) Cæsaris.
the senate, from the letter of Cæsar. (upon receipt of

Cæsar's dispatches).

QUINTUS LIBER.

FIFTH BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Hic liber continet aliquos motus Pirustarum
This book contains some disturbances of the Pirustæ
 coercitos à Cæsare: item dissidia Trevirorum
checked by Cæsar: also the quarrels of the Trevir
 contententium inter se de Principi
contending among themselves about the supreme
 patu: transitum in Britanniam: bellum
authority: the crossing-over into Britain: the war
 Ambiorigis: mortem Indutiomari.
of Ambiorix: the death of Indutiomarus.

1. LUCIO Domitio, Appio Claudio
Lucius Domitius. Appius Claudius (being)

Consulibus, Cæsar discedens ab hibernis
Consuls, Cæsar departing from winter-quarters

in Italiam, ut instituërat facere quotannis,
into Italy, as he had resolved to do yearly,

imperat legatis, quos præfecerat
orders to the lieutenants, whom he had set-over

legionibus, ut curarent quam-plurimas
to the legions, that they should take-care as-many-as

possent naves ædificandas hieme, que
they might be-able ships to-be-built in the winter, and

vetëres reficiendas. Demonstrat modum
the old (ships) to-be-repaired. He points-out the size

que formam earum; facit paullò humiliores
and form of them; he makes (them) a little lower

quàm quibus (abl.) consuevīmus uti
than (those) which we have been accustomed to use

in nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que
in our sea, to (for) quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id mägis èd,
of drawing-up (ashore); and that the more therefore

quòd cognovērat mīnūs magnos
(for this reason), because he had known less great

fluctus fieri ibi propter crebras
waves to be made there on-account-of the frequent

commutationes æstuum; paullò latiorēs
changes of the tides; (he makes them) a little wider

quàm quibus (abl.) utimur in reliquis
than (those) which we use in the rest (other)

maribus, ad onēra et ad multitudīnem
seas, to (for) burdens and to a multitude

jumentorum transportandam. Impērat omnes
of beasts-of-burden to-be-carried-over. He orders all

has fieri actuarias: ad quam rem
these to be made fit-to-be-rowed (light): to which thing

humilitas adjuvat multum. Jūbet ea,
lowness aids much. He orders those (things),

quæ sunt usui ad naves armandas, apportari
which are for use to ships to-be-rigged, to be brought

ex Hispaniā. Ipse, conventibus citerioris
out-of Spain. Himself, the assemblies of the nearer

Galliæ peractis, proficiscitur in Illyricum;
Gaul being finished, sets-out into Illyricum;

quòd audiebat finitimam partem Pro-
because he did hear the neighbouring part of the

vinciæ vastari incursionibus à Pirustis.
Province to be ravaged in incursions by the Pirustæ.

Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.) èd, impērat
When he had come thither. he orders

civitātibus milites : que jūbet
to the states (to furnish) soldiers : and commands (them)

convenire in certum locum. Quā re
to assemble into a certain place. Which thing

nuntiātā, Pirustæ mittunt legatos ad
being announced, the Pirustæ send ambassadors to

ĕum, qui docēant “nihil earum rerum
him, who may teach (him) “nothing of those things

factum (-esse) publico concilio :” que demonstrant
to have been done by public council :” and they show

“sese esse paratos satisfacere omnibus
“themselves to be prepared to satisfy by all

rationibus de injuriis.” Oratione eorum
means about the injuries.” The speech of them

acceptā, Cæsar impērat
being received (heard), Cæsar orders (them to furnish)

obsides, que jūbet ĕos adduci ad certam
hostages, and commands them to be brought to a certain

dīem : nīsi fecerant ita, demonstrat
day : unless they shall have done so, he shows

sese persecuturum civitatem bello. Iis
himself about-to-pursue the state by war. Those

adductis ad dīem, ut imperavērat, dat
being brought on-the day, as he had ordered, he gives

arbitros inter civitates, qui æstiment
(appoints) arbitrators among the states, who may value

litem que constituant pœnam.
the suit (damage) and may appoint the penalty.

2. His rebus confectis, que conventibus
These things being finished, and the assemblies

peractis, revertitur in citeriorem Galliam,
being concluded, he returns into hither Gaul.

atque inde proficiscitur ad exercitum. Quum
and thence sets-out to the army. When

venisset (plup. subj.) ĕò, omnibus hibernis
he had come thither, all the winter-quarters

circuitis, invenit circiter sexcentas navet
being gone-round, he found about six-hundred ships

ejus generis, cujus demonstravimus supra, et
of that kind, of which we have shown above, and

viginti octo longas constructas, singu-
twenty eight long (ships of war) built, by the

lari studio militum, in summâ inopiâ
singular zeal of the soldiers, in the highest want

omnium rerum, nêque multum abesse
of all things, nor much to be absent (to be

wanting) ab eo, quin possent
from that, but-that they might-be-able

deduci paucis diebus. Militibus
to be led-down (launched) in a few days. The soldiers

collaudatis, atque iis, qui prae fuerant
being praised, and those, who had presided

negotio, ostendit quid vellet fieri ;
to the business, he shows what he may will to be done ;

atque jubet omnes convenire ad portum Itium :
and orders all to assemble at port Itius

(Boulogne) : ex quo portu cognoverat
from which harbour he had known

trajectum in Britanniam esse commodissimum,
the passage into Britain to be most-convenient,

circiter triginta millium passuum à
about thirty of thousands of paces from

continenti. Relinquit quod visum-est esse satis
the continent. He leaves what seemed to be enough

militum huic rei : ipse proficiscitur cum
of soldiers for this thing : himself sets-out with

quatuor expeditis legionibus, et octingentis
four lightly-equipped legions, and eight-hundred

equitibus, in fines Trevirorum ; quod
cavalry, into the territories of the Treviri ; because

hi nêque veniebant ad concilia, nêque
these neither did come to the councils, nor

parebant imperio, que dicebantur sollicitari
did obey to (his) command, and were said to stir-up

Germanos transrhenanos.
the Germans beyond-the-Rhine.

3. Hæc civitas vālet longè plurimùm
This state prevails by far the most

totius Galliae equitatu, que habet magnas
of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copias peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut
forces of infantry; and touches-on the Rhine, as

demonstravimus suprā. In eā civitate duo,
we have shown above. In that state two (persons),

Indutiomārus et Cingetōrix, contendebant inter
Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, did contend among

se de principatu: alter ex
themselves about supreme-authority: the other (one) out-of

quibus, simul-atque cognitum-est de adventu
whom, as-soon-as it was known concerning the coming

Cæsāris que legionum, venit ad eum; confirmavit
of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he affirmed

se que omnes suos futuros in officio,
himself and all his (people) about-to-be in duty

(allegiance), nēque defecturos ab amicitia
nor about-to-revolt from the friendship

Rōmāni populi; que ostendit, quæ
of the Roman people; and he shows, what (things)

gererentur (imp. subj.) in Treviris. At
were carried-on in the Treviri. But

Indutiomārus instituit cogere equitatum que
Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and

peditatum; que iis, qui per ætatem potērant
infantry; and those, who through age were-able

non esse in armis, abditis in silvam
not to be in arms, being hid into the wood

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudine
Arduenna (Ardennes), (which with (of) great extent

pertinet à flumīne Rheno ad initium
reaches from the river Rhine to the beginning

Rhemorum per medios fines Trevirorum)
of the Rhemi through the middle territories of the Treviri

parare bellum. Sed posteaquā nonnulli principes
to prepare war. But after-that some chiefs

ex eā civitate, et adducti familiaritate
out-of that state, both induced by the acquaintance

Cingetorigis, et perterriti adventu nostri
of Cingetorigis, and affrighted by the coming of our

exercitūs, venerunt ad Cæsarem, et coeperunt petere
army, came to Cæsar, and began to seek

privatim ab de suis rebus, quoniam
privately from him about their-own affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulere civitati:
they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomārus veritus ne desereretur
Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnibus, mittit legatos ad Cæsarem;
by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar; (to say)

se discedere idcirco à suis,
himself to depart for-this-reason from his-own (people),

atque noluisse venire ad eum, quod
and to have been-unwilling to come to him, in order-that

contineret civitatem facilius in officio;
he might restrain the state more-easily in duty

ne discessu omnis nobilitatis;
(allegiance); lest by the departure of all the nobility;

plebs laberetur propter
the common-people might slip (revolt) through (their)

imprudentiā: itaque civitatem esse in sua
indiscretion: therefore the state to be in his

potestate; que se venturum ad eum
power; and himself (to be) about-to-come to him

in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permitteret; et
into the camp, if Cæsar would permit (him); and

permissurum suas fortunas que
 (to be) about-to-*yield-up* his-own fortunes and (those)
 civitatis fidē ejus.
of the state to the faith of him.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quâ causâ
Although Cæsar did understand from what cause
 ěa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res
those (words) were said, and what thing
 deterferet (imp. subj.) ěum ab instituto
did deter him from (his) purposed
 consilio; tamen, ne cogeretur consumere
design; however, lest he might be compelled to waste
 æstatem in Treviris, omnibus rebus comparatis
the summer in the Treviri, all things being prepared
 ad Britannicum bellum, jussit Indutiomærum
to (for) the Britannie war, he ordered Indutiomarus
 venire ad se cum ducentis obsidibus. His
to come to himself with two-hundred hostages. These
 adductis, et filio in iis, que
being brought, and (his) son in (among) them, and
 omnibus propinquis ejus, quos evocaverat
all the relations of him, whom he had called-out
 nominatim, consolatus-est que hortatus (-est)
by-name, he consoled and encouraged
 Indutiomærum, uti permaneret in officio.
Indutiomarus, that he might continue in duty (alle-
giance). However, nevertheless the chiefs of the Treviri
 convocatis ad se, conciliavit ěos
being called-together to himself, he reconciled them
 sigillatim Cingetorigi: quod intelligebat
individually to Cingetorig: which (thing) he did understand
 cum fieri à se merito
when (as well) to be done by himself by the desert
 ejus, tum arbitrabatur interesse
of him, then (as) he did think (it) to concern (him)

magni, auctoritatem ejus valere
of great (greatly), the authority of him to prevail.

quam-plurimùm inter sũos, cujus
as-much-as-possible among his-own (people), whose

voluntatem perspexisset (pluperf. subj.) tam egregiam
(good)-will he had perceived so excellent

in se. Indutiomãris tulit id factum
unto himself. Indutiomarus bore that being done (this act)

graviter, suam gratiam minui inter
heavily (bitterly), his-own favour to be diminished among

sũos : et qui fuisset (pluperf. subj.)
his-own (people) : and (he) who had been

inimico animo antè in nos exarsit
with (of) unfriendly mind before unto us burnt-forth

multò gravius hoc dolore.
by-much more-severely by this grief.

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit ad
Those things being settled, Cæsar arrived at

portum Itium cum legionibus. Cognoscit
the harbour Itius with the legions. He knows (learns)

ibi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ-erant in
there, forty ships, which had been made among

Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non potuisse
the Meldi, thrown-back by a tempest, not to have been-able

tenere cursum, atque relatas eodem,
to hold (their) course, and being carried-back to the same

(place), unde profectæ-erant : invenit reliquas
whence they had set-out : he finds the rest

paratas ad-navigandum, atque instructas omnibus
prepared to-sail, and furnished with all

rebus. Equitatus totius Galliæ convenit
things. The cavalry of the whole of Gaul assembled

eodem, numero quatuor millium, que
in the same (place), in number of four thousands, and

principes ex omnibus civitatibus ; perpaucos ex,
the chiefs out-of all the states ; a very-few out-of

quibus, quorum fidem in se perspexerat,
whom, whose fidelity unto himself he had clearly-seen,

decreverat relinquere in Galliâ; ducere
he had resolved to leave in Gaul; (and) to conduct

reliquos secum loco obsidum; quod
the rest with him in the place of hostages; because

verebatur motum Galliæ, quum ipse
he did fear a disturbance of Gaul when himself

abesset.

might be absent.

6. Dumnorix Ædūus erat una cum
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with

cætēris de quo dictum-est à nobis antea.
the rest of whom it has been spoken by us before.

Constituērat ducere hunc secum inprimis,
He had resolved to conduct him with him in-particular,

quod -cognoverat eum cupidum novarum rerum,
because he had known him desirous of new things

cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnæ
(revolution), desirous of power, of great spirit, of great

auctoritatis inter Gallos. Accedebat huc,
authority among the Gauls. It did approach hither

quod Dumnorix dixerat jam in
(added to this), that Dumnorix had said already in

concilio Æduorum, "regnum civitatis
a council of the Ædui, "the government of the state

deferri sibi à Cæsare." Quod
to be conferred to (on) himself by Cæsar." Which

dictum Ædūi ferebant graviter, neque
saying the Ædui did bear heavily (ill), nor

audebant mittere legatos ad Cæsarem
did they dare to send ambassadors to Cæsar

caussâ recusandi neque deprecandi.
by cause (for the purpose) of refusing nor of deprecating

Cæsar cognoverat id factum (-esse)
(the thing). Cæsar had known that to have been done

ex suis hospitibus. Ille primò contendit petere
from his guests. He at-first strove to solicit

omnibus precibus, ut relinqueretur in Galliâ;
by all entreaties, that he might be left in Gaul;

partim quòd insuetus navigandi timeret (imp.
partly because unused of voyaging he did fear

subj.) mare; partim quòd diceret (imp. subj.)
the sea; partly because he did say

sese impediri religionibus. Posteaquam
himself to be hindered by religious-scruples. After-that

vidit id negari obstinatè sibi, omni
he saw that to be denied obstinately to himself, all

spe impetrandi ademptâ, coepit sollicitare
hope of obtaining (it) being taken-away, he began to stir-up

principes Galliæ, sevocare singulos que
the chiefs of Gaul, to call-apart each (of them) and

hortari, ut remanerent in continenti;
to exhort, that they should remain on the continent;

terrere metu, " fieri non sine
to affright (them) with fear, " to be done not without

caussâ, ut Galliâ spoliaretur omni
reason, that Gaul might be stripped from (of) all

nobilitate. Id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut
the nobility. That to be the plan of Cæsar, that

necaret omnes hos transductos in
he might destroy all these conveyed-over into

Britanniâ, quos vereretur (imp. subj.) interficere
Britain, whom he did fear to slay

in conspectu Galliæ." Interponere
in sight of Gaul." (He began) to interpose (engage)

fidem reliquis; poscere jusjurandum, ut
faith to the rest; to require an oath, that

administrarent communi consilio, quod intel-
they should manage by common counsel, what they might

lexissent esse ex usu Galliæ.
have understood to be from (for) the use (advantage) of Gaul

7. Hæc deferebantur ad Cæsārem à
These (matters) were reported to Cæsar by
 compluribus. Quâ re cognitâ, Cæsar, quòd
very-mang. Which thing being known, Cæsar, because
 tribuebat tantum dignitatis Ædûæ civitati,
he did grant so-much of honour to the Æduan state,
 statuebat Dumnorîgem coërcendum atque
did determine Dumnorix to-be-restrained and
 deterrendum quibuscunque rebus posset;
to-be-deterred by whatever things he might be-able;
 quòd videbat amentiam ejus progrēdi
because he did see the insanity of him to proceed
 longiùs, prospiciendum, ne posset
further, (it was) to-be-provided, lest he might be-able
 nocere sibi ac Reipublicæ. Itaque
to injure to himself and to the state. Therefore
 commoratus in eo loco circiter viginti quinque
having delayed in that place about twenty five
 dies, quòd ventus Corus impediēbat
days, because the wind Corus (North-west) did hinder
 navigationem, qui consuevit flare in
the voyage, which (wind) has been-used to blow in
 his locis magnam partem omnis temporis,
these places (during) a great part of every season,
 dabat opēram, ut contineret
he did give (use) endeavour, that he might restrain
 Dumnorîgem in officio; tamen cognoscēret
Dumnorix in duty; however he should know
 nihilò-secius omnia consilia ejus. Tandem
nevertheless all the designs of him. At-length
 nactus idoneam tempestatem, jubet milites
having got suitable weather, he orders the soldiers
 que equites conscendere in naves. At animis
and cavalry to embark into the ships. But the minds
 omnium impeditis, Dumnorix cum equitibus
of all being engaged. Dumnorix with the cavalry

Æduorum, Cæsäre insciente, cœpit
of the Ædúi. Cæsar (being) ignorant (of it) began
 discedere dñm à castris. Quâ re
to depart home from the camps. Which thing
 nuntiâtâ, Cæsar, profectione intermissâ
being announced, Cæsar, the departure being interrupted
 atque omnibus rebus postpositis, mittit magnam
and all thing being postponed, sends a great
 partem equitatûs ad-insequendum eum, quæ
part of the cavalry to-pursue him, and
 imperat retrahi : si faciat
orders (him) to be dragged-back : if he may make
 vim, nèque parëat, jubet interfici :
violence, nor may obey, no commands (him) to be killed :
 arbitratus hunc facturum nihil pro
having considered him about-to-do nothing for (as)
 sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)
a sound (man), who had contemned
 imperium præsentis. Enim ille revocatus
the command of (him) present. For he being recalled
 cœpit resistere, ac defendere se manu,
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand (force),
 que implorare fidem suorum ;
and to entreat the faith (protection) of his-own (people) ;
 clamitans sæpè, " se esse liberum, que
crying-out often, " himself to be a free (-man), and
 liberæ civitatis." Isti circumsistunt que interficiunt
of a free state." They surround and slay
 hominem, ut imperatum-erat : at omnes Ædúi
the man, as it had been ordered : but all the Æduan
 equites revertuntur ad Cæsarem.
horsemen return to Cæsar

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno relicto,
These things being carried-on, Labienus being left
 in continente cum tribus legionibus et duobus
on the continent with three legions and two

millibus equitum, ut tueretur portus,
thousands of cavalry, that he might defend the harbours,

et provideret frumentariæ rei, que cognosceret
and might provide for the corn affair, and might know

quæ gererentur in Galliâ, et caperet
what (things) might be carried-on in Gaul, and might take

consilium pro tempore et pro
counsel for (according to) time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionibus et
the affair: himself with five legions and

pâri numero equitum, quem reliquerat in
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum
the continent, loosed the ships (set sail) to (at) the setting

solis; et provectus leni
of the sun; and being carried-forward by a gentle

Afrîco, vento intermisso
South-west-wind, the wind being intermitted (having ceased)

circiter mediâ nocte, tenuit non cursum:
about in middle night, he kept not the course:

et delatus longius æstu, luce
and being carried-away farther by the tide, the light (day)

ortâ, conspexit Britanniam relictam sub
having risen, he beheld Britain left under (on)

sinistrâ. Tum rursus secutus commutationem
the left. Then again having followed the change

æstûs, contendit remis, ut caperet
of the tide, he strove with oars, that he might take (reach)

eam partem insulæ, quâ cognoverat
that part of the island, in which he had known

superiore æstate optimum egressum esse. In
in the former summer the best landing to be. In

quâ re virtus militum fuit admôdum
which thing the excellence of the soldiers was very-much

laudanda, qui, labore remigandi non
to-be-praised, who, the labour of rowing not

intermisso, adæquaverunt cursum longarum
being interrupted, equalled the course of the long

navium, vectoriis que gravibus navigiis.
ships (ships of war), with transport and heavy vessels.

Accessum-est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus
It was approached to Britain by all the ships

fère meridiano tempore. Neque hostis visus-est
nearly in the noon time. Neither an enemy was seen

in eo loco. Sed, ut Cæsar postea compërit
in that place. But, as Cæsar afterwards discovered

ex captivis, quum magnæ manus convenissent
from the prisoners, when great bands had assembled

(pluperf. subj.) èd, perterritæ multitudine
there, being affrighted by the multitude

navium, quæ amplius octingentæ
of the ships, which more (than) eight-hundred

visæ-erant unà cum annotinis que
had been seen together with last-year's (ships) and

privatis, quas quisque fecerat caussâ
private (ones), which each had made by cause (for the

sui commodi, discesserant timore
sake) of his-own convenience, they had departed by fear

à littore, ac abdidérant se in
from the shore, and had concealed themselves into

superiora loca.
the higher places.

9. Cæsar, exercitu exposito, ac
Cæsar, the army being put-out (landed), and

loco idoneo castris (pl.) capto, ubi
a place fit for a camp being taken, when

cognovit ex captivis, in quo loco copiæ
he learned from the prisoners, in what place the forces

hostium consedisent (pluperf. subj.), decem
of the enemies had encamped, ten

cohortibus relictis ad mare, et trecentis
cohorts being left at the sea, and three-hundred

equitibus, qui essent præsidio navibus,
horsemen, who might be for a guard to the ships,
 contendit ad hostes de tertiâ vigiliâ;
hastened to the enemies from (at) the third watch;
 veritus èd minus navibus, quòd
having feared therefore the less for the ships, because
 relinquebat deligatas ad anchōras in molli
he did leave (them) fastened at anchors on a soft
 atque aperto littōre: et præfecit Quintum Atrium
and open shore: and he set-over Quintus Atrium
 præsidio navibus. Ipse progressus
for protection to the ships. Himself having advanced
 noctu circiter duodēcim millia passuum
by night about twelve thousands of paces
 conspicatus-est copias hostium. Illi
espied the forces of the enemies. They
 progressi ad flumen equitatu atque
having advanced to the river with the cavalry and
 essēdis, cœperunt prohibere nostros ex
chariots, began to prevent our (men) from
 superiore lōco et committēre prœlium. Repulsi
the higher place and to engage battle. Being repulsed
 ab equitatu, nacti lōcum egregiē munitum
by the cavalry, having got a place excellently fortified
 et naturâ et opère, quem, ut
both by nature and by work (art), which (place), as
 videbatur, præparaverant jam antè, caussâ
it did seem, they had prepared already before, by cause
 domestici belli, abdiderunt se
(for the sake) of domestic war, they hid themselves
 in silvas: nam crebris arboribus
into the woods: for frequent (many) trees
 succisis, omnes introitus præclusi-erant.
being cut-down, all the entrances had been shut-out.
 Ipsi rari propugnabant ex
Themselves few (in parties) did fight out-of

silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingredi intra
the woods, and did hinder our (men) to enter within
 munitiones. At milites septimæ legionis,
the fortifications. But the soldiers of the seventh legion,
 testudinē factā, et aggere
a covering (with their shields) being made, and a mound
 adjecto ad munitiones, ceperunt locum,
being added to the fortifications, took the place,
 que expulerunt eos ex silvis, paucis vulneribus
and drove-out them from the woods, few wounds
 acceptis. Sed Cæsar vetuit persëqui eos
being received. But Cæsar forbade to pursue them
 fugientes longius, et quod ignorabat naturam
fleeing farther, both because he did not know the nature
 loci, et quod magnā parte diei
of the place, and because a great part of the day
 consumptā, volebat tempus relinquere munitioni
being spent, he did will time to be left for the fortification
 castrorum (pl.).
of the camp.

10. Postridie ejus diei, misit manē
The day-after of that day, he sent in-the-morning
 milites que equites tripartitō in
the soldiers and cavalry in three-divisions unto
 expeditionem, ut persequerentur eos, qui
the expedition, that they might pursue those, who
 fugerant. Iis progressis aliquantum itineris,
had fled. Those having advanced some-little of the march,
 quum jam extremi essent (imp. subj.) in conspectu,
when already the last were in sight,
 equites venerunt à Quinto Atrio ad Cæsarem,
horsemen came from Quintus Atrius to Cæsar,
 qui nuntiarent “maximā tempestate coortā
who might announce “a very-great tempest having arisen
 superiori nocte, omnes naves propè
on the former night, all the ships nearly

afflictas-esse atque ejectas in li. ðore; quòd
to have been dashed and cast-out on the shore; because
 nèque anchöræ que funes subsistērent (imp. subj.),
neither the anchors and ropes did withstand
 nèque nautæ que gubernatores possent (imp.
neither the sailors and pilots were-able
 subj.) pāti vim tempestatis. Itaque
to endure the violence of the tempest. Therefore
 magnum incommòdum acceptum-esse ex òo
great inconvenience to have been received from that
 concursu navium.”
collision of the ships.”

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar jūbet
These things being known, Cæsar orders
 legiones que equitatum revocari, atque
the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and
 desistēre itinēre. Ipse revertitur ad
to halt from the march. Himself returns to
 naves: perspicit coràm fēre eādem,
the ships: he observes in-presence nearly the same (things),
 quæ cognovērat ex nuntiis que
which he had known from the messengers and
 litēris (pl.); sic ut, circiter quadraginta navibus
the letter; so that, about forty ships
 amissis, tāmēn reliquæ viderentur (imp. subj.)
being lost, however the rest did seem
 posse refici magno negotio. Itaque
to be-able to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore
 deligit fabros ex legionibus, et jūbet alios
he selects workmen out-of the legions, and orders others
 accersiri ex continenti: scribit Labieno,
to be sent-for from the continent: he writes to Labienus,
 ut instituat quàm-plurimas naves
that he may construct the greatest-number ships
 posset iis legionibus, quæ sunt apud
he might be-able with those legions, which are with

eum. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae
him. Himself, although the thing was of much trouble

ac laboris, tamen statuit esse com-
and labour, however determined (it) to be most-

modissimum, omnes naves subduci, et
convenient, all the ships to be drawn-up, and

conjungi unâ munitione cum castris (pl.).
to be united in one fortification with the camp.

Consumit circiter decem dies in his rebus, ne
He spends about ten days in these things, not

quidem nocturnis temporibus intermissis
indeed (even) the night times being intermitted

ad laborem militum. Navibus subductis
to the labour of the soldiers. The ships being drawn-up

que castris (pl.) egregiè munitis, relinquit easdem
and the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same

copias quas antè, praesidio navibus:
forces which (he left) before, for a guard to the ships:

ipse proficiscitur eodem, unde
himself sets-out to the same (place), whence

rediërat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) èd,
he had returned. When he had come thither,

maiores copiae Britannorum jam conveniant
greater forces of the Britons now had assembled

undique in eum locum. Summa
from every-side into that place. The supreme-authority

imperii que belli gerendi permissa-est,
of command and of the war to-be-carried-on was entrusted,

communi consilio, Cassivellauno, fines
by common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories

cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamësis,
of whom a river, which is called Tamesis (Thames),

dividit à maritimis civitatibus, circiter octoginta
divides from the maritime states, about eighty

millia passuum à mari. Continentia bella
thousands of paces from the sea. Incessant war

intercesserant huic cum reliquis civitatibus,
had intervened to him with the rest-of the states,

superiori tempore; sed Britanni, permoti
in the former time; but the Britons, alarmed

nostro adventu, præfecerant hunc toti bello
by our arrival, had appointed him to the whole war

que imperio.
and command.

12. Interior pars Britannæ incolitur ab
The interior part of Britain is inhabited by
 iis, quos dicunt proditum memoriâ
those, whom they say (it to have been) delivered by memory

natos in insulâ ipsâ: maritima pars
having been born in the island itself: the maritime part

ab iis, qui transierant ex
(is inhabited) by those, who had crossed-over out-of

Belgis causâ prædæ ac belli
the Belgæ by cause (for the sake) of plunder and of war

inferendi; qui omnes fere appellantur
to-be-brought-on; who all nearly are called

iis nominibus civitatum, ex quibus civitatibus
by those names of states, out-of which states

orti pervenerunt eð, et bello
having sprung they arrived there, and war

illato remanserunt ibi, atque cœperunt
being brought-on remained there, and began

colere agros. Multitudo hominum est
to till the lands. The multitude of men (inhabitants) is

infinita, que ædificia creberrima fere
immense, and the buildings most-numerous nearly

consimilia Gallicis: numerus pecoris
similar to the Gallic: the number of the cattle

magnus. Utuntur aut ære (abl.), aut ferrèis
is) great. They use either brass, or iron

annulis examinatis ad certum pondus, pro nummo.
rings regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascitur ibi in mediterraneis
White lead (tin) is produced there in the midland

regionibus; ferrum in maritimis; sed
countries; iron in the maritime (parts); but

copia ejus est exigua: utuntur importato
the quantity of it is small: they use imported

aere. Est materia cujusque generis, ut in
brass. (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Galliâ, præter fagum atque abietem. Putant
Gaul, except the beech and the fir-tree. They think (it)

non fas gustare leporem et gallinam et
not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tamen alunt hæc caussâ
the goose: however they nourish these by cause (for the

animi que voluptatis. Loca
sake) of mind (diversion) and of pleasure. The places

sunt temperatiora quam in Galliâ, frigoribus
are more-temperate than in Gaul, the colds

remissioribus.
(being) more-mild.

13. Insula naturâ triquetra, unum latus
The island (is) by nature triangular, one side

cujus est contra Galliam. Alter angulus
of which is opposite Gaul. The other (one) angle

hujus lateris, qui est ad Cantium,
of this side, which is at (towards) Cantium (Kent),

quod naves ex Galliâ ferè appellantur,
whither ships from Gaul generally are brought-to-land,

ad orientem solem; inferior spectat
at the rising sun (the East); the lower (angle) looks

ad meridiem. Hoc latus tenet
(is directed) to the south. This side holds (extends)

circiter quingenta millia passuum. Alterum
about five-hundred thousands of paces. The other (side)

vergit ad Hispaniam, atque occidentem solem;
inclines to Spain, and the setting sun:

ex quâ parte est Hibernia, minor dimidiò
from (on) which side is Hibernia, less by half

quàm Britannia, ut existimatur; sed transmissus
than Britain, as it is thought; but the passage-across

est pãri spatio atque ex Galliã in
is with equal distance and (as) from, Gaul into

Britanniã. In mediò hoc cursu est insula,
Britain. In the middle-of this course is an island.

quæ appellatur Mõna. Complures minores
which is called Mona (Man). Several less

insulæ præterea existimantur objectæ, de
islands besides are thought (to be) interposed, of

quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem esse
which islands some have written, the night to be

triginta continuos dies sub brumâ.
thirty successive days under the winter (in the winter

season). Nos reperiebamus nihil de eo
We did find nothing concerning the

percuntationibus, nisi videbamus certis mensuris
by inquiries, unless we did see by certain measures

ex aquâ, noctes esse breviores. quàm in
of water, the nights to be shorter than on

continente. Longitudo hujus latëris est septin-
he continent. The length of this side is of seven-

gentorum millium passuum, ut opinio
hundred of thousands of paces, as the opinion

illorum fert. Tertium est contra
of them reports. The third (side) is opposite

Septentrionem; cui parti nulla terra est
the North; to which part no land is

objecta, sed angulus ejus latëris spectat
opposed, but the angle of that side looks (is directed)

maximè ad Germaniã Existimatur octingenta
chiefly to Germany. It is thought eight-hundred

millia passuum in longitudinem esse huic.
thousands of paces into length to be to this (side)

Ita omnis insula est vicies centena
 Thus all the island is twenty-times a hundred
 millia passuum in circuitu.
 thousands of paces in compass.

14. Ex omnibus his, qui incolunt
 Out-of all these, (those) who inhabit
 Cantium, sunt longè humanissimi; omnis
 Cantium (Kent), are by-far most-civilized; all
 quæ regio est maritima, nèque differunt multum
 which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much
 à Gallicâ consuetudine Plerique interiores
 from the Gallic custom. Most-of the interior
 sèrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt
 (inhabitants) sow not corn, but live
 lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellibus.
 with (on) milk and flesh, and are clad with skins.
 Verò omnes Britanni inficiunt se vitro,
 But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,
 quod efficit cærulæum colorem, atque hòc
 which forms a bluish colour, and from this
 sunt horribiliore adspectu in pugna:
 they are with (of) more-frightful look in battle:
 que sunt promisso capillo, atque omni parte
 and they are with long hair, and every part
 corporis rasâ, præter cæput et superius
 of the body shaved, except the head and upper
 labrum. Deni que duodeni habent uxores
 lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives
 communes inter se, et maxime fratres
 common among themselves, and chiefly brothers
 cum fratribus, et parentes cum liberis. Sed si
 with brothers, and parents with children. But if
 qui sunt nati ex his, habentur
 and are born out-of these, they are accounted
 liberi eorum, à quibus quæque virgines
 the children of those, by whom each (when) virgins

ductæ-sunt primùm.
were led (married) first.

15. Equites que essedarīi hostium
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemies

confluxerunt acriter prælio cum nostro equitatu
engaged vigorously in battle with our cavalry

in itinēre ; tamen, ut nostri fuērint
on the march ; however, so-that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnibus partibus, atque
superior in all parts, and

compulērunt (perf. subj.) eos in silvas que
drove them into the woods and

colles ; sed, compluribus interfectis, insecuti
hills ; but, many being killed, having pursued

 cupidius, amiserunt nonnullos
(them) more eagerly (too eagerly), they lost some

ex suis. At illi, spatio intermisso,
out-of their-own. But they, an interval being intermitted

 subito ejecerunt se ex
(having elapsed), suddenly threw-out themselves out-of

 silvis, nostris imprudentibus atque
the woods, our (men) (being) unaware and

occupatis in munitione castrorum (pl.) ; que
engaged in the fortification of the camp ; and

impetu facto in eos, qui collocati-erant
an attack being made upon those, who had been placed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnauerunt acriter :
on station before the camp, they fought vigorously :

que duabus cohortibus missis subsidio à Cæsare,
and two cohorts being sent for aid by Cæsar,

atque his primis duarum legionum, quum hæ
and these the first of two legions, when these

 constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo spatio
had stood-together, a very-small space

 intermisso inter se, nostris
of ground being interposed between themselves, our (men)

perterritis novo genere pugnæ, proruperunt
being alarmed by the new kind of battle, they burst

audacissimè per medios que receperunt
most-daringly through the midst (of our men) and betook

se inde incolūmes. Eo die Quintus
themselves thence safe. In that day Quintus

Laberius Durus, tribunus militum interficitur: illi
Laberius Durus, a tribune of soldiers is slain: they

repelluntur, pluribus cohortibus submissis.
are repulsed, more cohorts being sent-up.

16. In hoc toto genere pugnæ, quum
In this whole kind of outtle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub oculis omnium ac
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum-est, nostros
before the camp, it was understood, our (men)

esse minùs aptos ad hostem hujus generis,
to be less fit (adapted) to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent
on-account-of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) nèque insèqui cedentes, nèque
neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedere ab signis;
did they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equites dinicare cum magno pericūlo,
but the cavalry to contend with grent danger,

propterèa quòd illi etiam cedèrent (imp. subj.)
because that they also did yield (retreat)

plerumque consultò; et quum removissent (plu-
generally by-design; and when they had removed

perf. subj.) nostros paullūlūm ab legionibus,
our (men) a very-little from the legions,

desilirent ex essēdis et contendērent
they would leap-down from the chariots and would contend

pedibus dispāri prælio. Autem ratio
with feet (on foot) in unequal fight. But the method

equestris of the cavalry
 proclii, fight, (they) both
 et cedentibus et yielding and
 insequentibus, pursuing, inferebat did bring par equal atque and idem the same
 periculum. danger. Accedebat It did approach huc, hither (added to this), ut that
 proeliarentur (imp. subj.) they did fight nunquam never conferti, close-together, sed but
 rari que magnis intervallis, que haberent
 few and with (at) great distances, and did have
 (imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alii
 posts arranged; and others (some)
 exciperent (imp. subj.) did relieve alios others deinceps, afterwards, que intègri and whole
 et recentes succederent (imp. subj.) defatigatis.
 and fresh (men) did succeed to the exhausted.

17. Postëro die hostes constiterunt
 In the following day the enemies stood

procul à castris (pl.) in collibus; que rari
 far-off from the camp on the hills; and a few

cœperunt ostendere se, et lacerare nostros
 began to show themselves, and to provoke our

equites proelio lentius, quam pridie.
 cavalry to battle more-slowly, than the day-before.

Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)
 But in (at) noon, when Cæsar had sent

tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio
 three legions and all the cavalry with Caius

Trebonio legato caussâ
 Trebonius the lieutenant by cause (for the purpose)

pabulandi, advolaverunt repente ad pabulatores
 of foraging, they flew suddenly to the foragers

ex omnibus partibus, sic uti absisterent (imp.
 from all parts, so that they did refrain

subj.) non ab signis que legionibus.
 (keep off) not from the standards and the legions.

Nostri, impĕtu facto acriter in ěos,
Our (men), an attack being made vigorously upon them,
 repulerunt, nĕque fecerunt finem insequendi,
repulsed (them), nor made they an end of pursuing,
 quoad equites, confisi subsidĭo, quum viderent
whilst the cavalry, relying to (on) aid, since they did see
 (imp. subj.) legiones post se, egerunt
the legions behind themselves, drove
 hostes præcipites: que magno numĕro eorum
the enemies headlong: and a great number of them
 interfecto, nĕque dederunt facultatem sũi
being killed, neither they gave the power of themselves
 colligendi nĕque consistendi, aut desiliendi
to-be-collected, neither of halting, or of leaping-down
 ex essĕdis. Auxilia, quæ convenĕrant
from the chariots. The auxiliaries, which had assembled
 undique, discesserunt protinus ex
from-every-side, departed immediately from (after)
 hâc fũgâ; nĕque post id tempus hostes
this flight; neither after that time the enemies
 unquam contenderunt nobiscum summis
ever contended with us with (their) highest
 copiis
 (whole) forces.

18. Cæsar, consilio eorum cognito, duxit
Cæsar, the design of them being known, led
 exercĭtum ad flumen Tamĕsin in
the army to the river Tamesis (Thames) into
 fines Cassivellauni: quod flumen pōtest
the territories of Cassivellaunus: which river is able
 transiri pedibus omnino uno lōco,
to be crossed on feet (by fording) altogether (only) in one place,
 atque hoc ægrĕ. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)
and in this hardly. When he had come
 ěò, animadvertit magnas copias hostĭum esse
there, he perceived great forces of the enemies to be.

instructas ad altēram ripam fluminis. Autem
arrayed at the other bank of the river. But

ripa erat munita acutis sudibus præfixis,
the bank was fortified with sharp stakes affixed,

que sudes ejusdem generis defixæ sub
and stakes of the same kind fixed-down under

âquâ tegebantur flumine. Iis rebus
the water were covered by the river. Those things

cognitis à captivis que perfūgis, Cæsar,
being known from the prisoners and deserters, Cæsar,

equitatu præmisso, jussit legiones subsēqui
the cavalry being sent-before, ordered the legions to follow

confestim. Sed milites iērunt eâ celeritate
immediately. But the soldiers went with that speed

atque impētū, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex
and force, when they did stand-out from

âquâ capite solo, ut hostes possent
the water by the head alone, that the enemies were able

(imp. subj.) non sustinere impetum legionum
not to withstand the attack of the legions

que equitum, que dimittērent (imp. subj.)
and of the cavalry, and did quit

ripas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se fugæ.
the banks and did commit themselves to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-
Cassivellaunus, all hope of a contest being

positâ, ut demonstravimus suprâ, amplioribus
laid-aside, as we have shown above, (his) larger

copiis dimissis, circiter quatuor millibus
forces being dismissed, about four thousands

essedariorum relictis, servabat nostra itinera, que
of charioteers being left, did watch our marches, and

excedebat paullulum ex viâ, que occultabat
did depart a little out-of the way, and did conceal

sese impeditis atque silvestribus locis, atque
himself in entangled and woody places, and

compellebat pecōra (pl.) atque homīnes ex agris
did drive the cattle and men from the lands

in silvas iis regionibus, quibus
into the woods from those regions, in which

cognovērat nos facturos iter : et quum
he had known us about-to-make the march : and when

noster equitatus effundēret se liberius in
our cavalry did scutter itself more-freely into

agros caussā vastandi quē
the lands by cause (for the purpose) of ravaging and

prædandi, mittebat essedarios ex
of plundering, he did send-out the charioteers from

silvis omnibus notis viis que semitis ; et
the woods by all the known ways and paths ; and

confligebat cum iis cum magno periculo nostrorum
did engage with them with great danger of our

equitum ; atque hoc metu prohibebat
cavalry ; and by this fear did hinder (them)

vagari latius. Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar
to stray more-widely. It was left, that Cæsar

nēque pateretur discedi longius ab
neither would allow (it) to be departed farther from

agmine legionum ; et noceretur
the troop (main body) of the legions ; and it might be injured

hostibus in agris vastandis, que
to the enemies in the lands to-be-ravaged, and

incendiis faciendis, tantum quantum legionarii
burnings to-be-made, so-much as the legionary

milites poterant efficere labore atque itinere.
soldiers were-able to effect by labour and on the march.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propè firmissima
Meantime the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest

civitas earum regionum, ex quā Mandubratius
state of these countries, from which Mandubratius

adolescens, secutus fidem
a young man having followed (embraced) the faith (protection)

Cæsāris, venērat ad ěum in continentem
of Cæsar, had come to him into the continent

Galliā, (cujus pater Imanuentĭus obtinuērat
Gaul, (whose father Imanuentius had obtained

regnum in ěā civitate, que
kingdom (royal power) in that state, and

interfectus-ērat à Cassivellauno; ipse vitavērat
had been slain by Cassivellaunus; himself had avoided

mortem fūgā,) mittunt legatos ad Cæsārem,
death by flight,) send ambassadors to Cæsar,

que pollicentur dedituros sese
and promise (to be) about-to-surrender themselves

ěi et facturos imperata.
to him and about-to-do (the things) commanded.

Pētunt ut defendat Mandubratĭum ab
They request that he may defend Mandubratius from

injuriā Cassivellauni, atque mittat in
the injury of Cassivellaunus, and may send (him) into

civitatem, qui præsit que obtinēat
(their) state, who may preside and may obtain

imperĭum. Cæsar impērat his
the authority. Cæsar orders to these (to furnish)

quadraginta obsides que frumentum exercitūi;
forty hostages and corn to the army;

que mittit Mandubratĭum ad ěos. Illi fecerunt
and sends Mandubratius to them. They did (the

imperata celerĭter; miserunt obsides ad
things) commanded quickly; they sent hostages to

numĕrum, que frumentum.
the number (required), and corn.

21. Trinobantĭbus defensĭs, atque prohibĭtis
The Trinobantes being defended, and being protected

ab omni injuriā militum, Cenimagni,
from all injury of the soldiers, the Cenimagi,

Segontiāci, Ancalites, Bibrōci, Cassi, legationĭbus
Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi. embassies

missis, dediderunt sese Cæsari. Cognoscit
being sent, surrendered themselves to Cæsar. He understands
 ab his, oppidum Cassivellauni abesse
from these, the town of Cassivellaunus to-be-distant
 non longè ex eo loco, munitum silvis que
not far from that place, fortified by woods and
 paludibus, quòd numerus satis magnus
by marshes, whither a number sufficiently great
 hominum que pecoris convenërit (perf. subj.).
of men and of cattle has assembled.
 Autem Britanni vocant oppidum, quòd
But the Britons call (that) a town, where
 consueverunt convenire, caussâ
they have been accustomed to assemble, by cause (for the sake)
 incursionis hostium vitandæ, quum
of an inroad of the enemies to be avoided, when
 munierunt impeditas silvas vallo
they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart
 atque fossâ. Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus :
and a trench. Thither he sets-out with the legions :
 reperit locum egregiè munitum naturâ atque
he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and
 opère ; tamen contendit oppugnare hunc
by work (art) ; however he endeavours to storm this
 ex duabus partibus. Hostes morati
from two parts. The enemies having delayed
 paullisper, tulerunt non impetum nostrorum
a little-while, bore not the attack of our
 militum, que ejecerunt sese ex aliâ parte
soldiers, and threw-out themselves from another part
 oppidi. Magnus numerus pecoris repertus (-est)
of the town. A great number of cattle was found
 ibi ; que multi comprehensi-sunt atque interfecti
there ; and many were seized and killed
 in fugâ.
in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his
Whilst these (things) are carried-on in these
 locis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntios ad Cantium,
places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium
 quod demonstravimus suprà esse ad mare,
 (Kent), *which we have shown above to be at the sea,*
 quibus regionibus quatuor reges præerant,
to which countries four kings were-over (presided),
 Cingetorix, Carnilius, Taximagulus, Segonax ; atque
Cingetorix, Carnilius, Taximagulus, Segonax ; and
 imperat his, ut omnibus copiis
he orders to these, that all (their) forces
 coactis, adorianantur navalia castra (pl.)
being collected, they may attack the naval camp
 de-improviso, atque oppugnent. Quum hi
unexpectedly, and may storm (it). When these
 venissent (pluperf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,
had come to the camp, our (men),
 eruptione factâ, multis eorum interfectis, etiam
a sally being made, many of them being killed, also
 nobili dūce Cingetorige capto, reduxerunt
 (their) noble leader Cingetorige being taken, led-back
 suos incolūmes. Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio
 their (men) safe. Cassivellaunus, this battle
 nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis,
being announced, so-many losses being received,
 finibus vastatis, etiam maxime permotus
 (his) territories being ravaged, also chiefly alarmed
 defectione civitatum, mittit legatos ad
by the revolt of the states, sends ambassadors to
 Cæsarem per Comium Atrebatem de
 Cæsar by (through) Comius the Atrebatian about
 deditione. Quum Cæsar statuisset (pluperf. subj.)
 a surrender. Since Cæsar had resolved
 agere hiemem in continente propter
 to act (spend) the winter on the continent on-account-of

repentinos motus Gallïæ ; nēque multum
the sudden commotions of Gaul ; neither much

æstatis superesset (imp. subj.) ; atque intel-
of the summer did remain ; and he did

ligēret (imp. subj.), id posse extrāhi facilē,
understand that to be-able to be protracted easily,

impērat obsides ; et constituit
he commands (him to furnish) hostages ; and appointed

quid vectigalis Britannia pendēret
what (portion) of tribute Britain should pay

Romano populo in singulos annos.
to the Roman people on each years (every year).

Interdicit atque impērat Cassivellauno,
He prohibits and commands to Cassivellaunus, (that)

ne-nocēat Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus.
he may not-injure to Mandubratius, nor to the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidibus acceptis, reducit exercitum
The hostages being received, he leads-back the army

ad mare : invenit naves refectas. His
to the sea : he finds the ships repaired. These

deductis, constituit reportare
being led-down (launched), he resolved to carry-back

exercitum duobus com meatibus, et quod
the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numerum captivorum, et
he did have a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperiērant tempestate. Ac
some ships had perished by a tempest. And

accidit sic, ut ex tanto numero navium
it happened so, that out-of so-great a number of ships

tot navigationibus, nēque ulla navis omnino,
in so-many voyages, neither any ship at-all,

quæ portaret (imp. subj.) milites, desideraretur
which did carry the soldiers, was wanting

(imp. subj.) hoc nēque superiore anno :
(was lost) in this nor in the foregoing year :

at ex ns, quæ remitterentur (imp. subj.)
but out-of those, which were sent-back

inanes ad ĕum ex continente, et militibus
empty to him from the continent, and the soldiers

prioris commeatûs expositis, et quas
of the former passage being landed, and which

Labienuſ postĕa curaverat faciendas, numĕro
Labienuſ afterwards had taken-care to-be-made, in number

sexaginta, perpaucæ capĕrent (imp. subj.) lĕcum,
sixty, very-few did take (reached) the place,

fĕrĕ omnes reliquæ rejicerentur (imp. subj.).
nearly all the rest were thrown-back.

Quas quum Cæſar exspectâſſet (pluperf. subj.)
Which when Cæſar had awaited

aliquandiu fruſtrâ, ne excluderetur
some-time in-vain, lest he might be shut-out

navigacione tempĕre anni, quodâ
from the voyage by the time of the year, because

æquinocĕium subĕrat, necessariò collocavit
the equinox was near, (he) necessarily placed

militĕs anguſtiùs. Ac conſecutus
the soldiers more-closely. And having attained (obtained)

ſummam tranquillitatem quum ſolviſſet
the utmost calmness (of weather) when he had loosed

(pluperf. subj.), ſecundâ vigiliâ inĕtâ,
(had set sail), the second watch being entered,

attigit terram primâ luce, que
he touched (reached) land in the first light, and

perduxit omnes naves incolūmes.
conducted all the ships safe.

24. Navibus ſubductis, que concilio
The ships being drawn-up, and the council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractò,
of the Gauls of (at) Samarobriva being completed,

coactus-eſt collocare exercĕtum in hibernis
he was compelled to place the army in winter-quarters

aliter ac superioribus annis, que distribuere
otherwise and (than) in former years, and to distribute
 legiones in plures civitates, quod eo anno
the legions into more states, because in that year
 frumentum provenerat angustius
the corn had come-forth (grown) more narrowly (less
 abundantly) in Galliâ, propter siccitates :
in Gaul, on-account-of the droughts :
 ex quibus dedit unam Caius Fabius
out-of which he gave one (legion) to Caius Fabius
 legato ducendam in Morinos, alteram
the lieutenant to-be-led unto the Morini, another
 Quinto Ciceroni in Nervios, tertiam
to Quintus Cicero unto the Nervii, the third
 Lucio Roscio in Essuos : jussit quartam
to Lucius Roscius unto the Essui: he ordered the fourth
 hiemare in confinio Trevirorum, in Rhemis
to winter on the border of the Treviri, among the Rhemi
 cum Tito Labieno : collocavit tres in Belgio :
with Titus Labienus : he placed three in Belgium :
 præfecit his Marcum Crassum quæstorem,
he set-over to these Marcus Crassus (as) quæstor,
 et Lucium Munatium Plancum, et Caium
and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and Caius
 Trebonium legatos. Misit unam legionem,
Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one legion,
 quam conscripserat proximè trans Padum, et
which he had levied very-lately across the Po, and
 quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxima pars
five cohorts, unto the Eburones, the greatest part
 quorum est inter Mosam et Rhenum, qui
of whom is between the Meuse and the Rhine, who
 erant sub imperio Ambiorigis et Cativulci.
were under the authority of Ambiorix and of Cativulcus.
 Jussit legatos Quintum Titurium Sabinum
He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius Sabinus

et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam præesse nis
and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta to preside to these
 militibus. Legionibus distributis ad hunc
soldiers. The legions being distributed to (in) this
 modum, existimavit sese posse mederi
manner, he thought himself to be-able to remedy
 facillimè frumentariæ inopiæ : atque tamen
most-easily to the corn scarcity : and however
 hiberna omnium harum legionum con-
the winter-quarters of all of these legions were
 tinebantur centum millibus passuum (præter
contained in a hundred thousands of paces (except
 eam, quam dedērat Lucio Roscio
that (legion), which he had given to Lucius Roscius
 ducendam in pacatissimam et quietissimam
to-be-led into the most-appeased and most-tranquil
 partem). Interēa ipse constituit morari in
part). Meanwhile himself resolved to tarry in
 Galliā, quoad cognovisset (pluperf. subj.) legiones
Gaul, until he had known the legions
 collocatas, que hiberna munita.
being settled, and the winter-quarters fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutibus Tasgetius
There was in (among) the Carnutes Tasgetius
 natus summo loco ; cujus majores
born in the highest place (rank) ; whose ancestors
 obtinuērant regnum in suā civitate.
had obtained kingdom (royal power) in their-own state.
 Cæsar restituērat locum majorum huic
Cæsar had restored the situation of (his) ancestors to him
 pro virtute ejus atque benevolentiā in
for the valour of him and (his) good-will unto
 se, quod usus-fuērat singulari (abl.) opērâ
himself, because he had used remarkable assistance
 ejus in omnibus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt
of him in all the wars. (His) enemies slew

hunc pālām, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis
him openly, reigning now the third year, many
 etiā ex civitate auctoribus. Ea
also out-of the state (being) authors (of the deed). That
 res defertur ad Cæsārem. Ille veritus,
matter is reported to Caesar. He having feared,
 ne civitas deficēret impulsu eorum,
lest the state might revolt by the instigation of them,
 quōd res pertinebat ad plures, celeriter
because the affair did relate to more (many), quickly
 jūbet Lucium Plancum proficisci in Carnutes
orders Lucius Plancus to set-out unto the Carnutes
 cum legione ex Belgio, que hiemare ibi;
with a legion out-of Belgium, and to winter there;
 que mittere hos comprehensos ad se,
and to send these seized to himself,
 opērā quorum cognovērit Tasgetium
by the endeavour of whom he may have known Tasgetius
 interfectum. Intērim factus-est certior
(to have been) killed. Meantime he was made more-sure
 ab omnibus legatis quē
(was informed) by all the lieutenants and
 quæstoribus, quibus tradidērat legiones,
quæstors, to-whom he had delivered the legions,
 perventum-esse in hiberna, que
to have been arrived (by them) into winter-quarters, and
 lōcum munitum hibernis.
the place (to have been) fortified for winter-quarters.

26. Quindēcim diebus circiter quibus
In fifteen days about in (since) which
 ventum-est in hiberna, initium repentini
it was come into winter-quarters, the beginning of a sudden
 tumultūs ac defecticnis ortum-est ab Ambiorige
tumult and revolt arose from Ambiorix
 et Cativulco: qui quum fuissent (pluperf. subj.)
and Cativulcus: who when they had been

præstò Sabino que Cottæ ad fines sũr
near to Sabinus and to Cotta at the borders of their
 regni, que comportavissent (plup. subj.) frumentum
kingdom, and had carried corn
 in hiberna, impulsì nuntĩis
into winter-quarters, being instigated by the messengers
 Indutiomãri Treviri, concitaverunt sũos
of Indutiomarus the Treviran, roused-up their-own
 (people); que lignatorĩbus oppressis
and the wood-cutters being overwhelmed
 subitò, venerunt magnâ mãnu oppugnatum
suddenly, they came with a great band to assault
 castra (pl.). Quum nostri cepissent (pluperf.
the camp. When our (men) had taken
 subj.) arma celerĩter, que adscendissent (pluperf.
arms quickly, and had ascended
 subj.) vallum, atque Hispanis equitĩbus
the rampart, and the Spanish cavalry
 emissis ex unâ parte, fuissent (pluperf.
being sent-out from one part (side), had been
 subj.) superiores equestri prælio, re
superior in the cavalry fight, the thing
 desperatâ, hostes reduxerunt sũos
being despaired-of, the enemies led-back their (men)
 ab oppugnatione Tum conclamaverunt sũo
from the assault. Then they cried-out in their
 more, ut̃ aliqui ex nostris prodirent
manner, that some out-of our (people) might come-forth
 ad colloquĩum; " sese habere, quæ
to a conference; " themselves to have (things), which
 vellent (imp. subj.) dicere de communi re,
they did will to say about the common matter,
 quĩbus sperarent (imp. subj.) controversias posse
by which they did hope the disputes to be-able
 minui."
to be diminished."

27. Caius Arpinius, Romanus ěques, familiaris
Caius Arpinius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance
 Quinti Titurii mittitur ad ěos caussā
of Quintus Titurius is sent to them by cause (for
 colloquendi; que Quintus Junius,
the purpose) of conferring; and Quintus Junius,
 quidam ex Hispaniā, qui jam antē
a certain (person) from Spain, who already before
 consuevĕrat ventitare ad Ambiorĕgem,
(this) had been accustomed to come-often to Ambiorix,
 missu Cæsāris. Apud quos Ambiorix
by the mission of Cæsar. At (before) whom Ambiorix
 locutus-est in hunc mōdum: "Sese confiteri
spoke unto this (in) manner: "Himself to confess
 debere plurimum ěi, pro beneficiis Cæsāris
to owe very-much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar
 in se, quōd opĕrā ejus
unto himself, because by the assistance of him
 liberatus-esset (pluperf. subj.) stipendiō, quod
he had been freed from the tribute, which
 consuĕsset (pluperf. subj.) pendĕre suis finitimis
he had been accustomed to pay to his neighbours
 Atuaticis; que quōd et filius et filius
the Atuatici; and because both (his) son and the son
 fratris, quos Atuatici tenuissent (pluperf.
of (his) brother, whom the Atuatici had held
 subj.) in servitute et catenis āpud se,
in slavery and chains at (with) themselves,
 missos numĕro obsidum, remissi-essent
being sent in the number of the hostages, had been sent-back
 (pluperf. subj.) ab Cæsāre: nĕque fecisse id,
by Cæsar: nor to have done that,
 quod fecĕrit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione
which he has done about the storming
 castrorum (pl.), aut iudiciō aut
of the camp, either from (his-own) judgment or

sua voluntate, sed coactu civitatis : que
his-own will, but by compulsion of the state . and

sua imperia esse ejusmodi, ut
his-own authorities (power) to be of this-sort, that

multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non minus
the multitude did have not less

juris in se, quam ipse in
of jurisdiction towards himself, than himself towards

multitudinem. Porro hanc fuisse causam
the multitude. Moreover this to have been the cause

belli civitati : quod potuerit (perf. subj.)
of war to the state : because he was able

non resistere repentinæ conjuratione Gallorum ;
not to withstand to the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls ;

se posse probare id facile ex sua
himself to be-able to prove that easily from his-own

humilitate ; quod sit non adde
humbleness (weakness) ; because he may be not so

imperitus rerum, ut confidat se
unacquainted of (with) things, that he may trust himself

posse superare Romanum populum suis
to be-able to overcome the Roman people with his

copiis ; sed esse commune consilium
forces ; but (the thing) to be the common design

Galliæ. Hunc esse dictum diem omnibus
of Gaul. This to be the said (appointed) day for all

hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis, ne qua
the winter-quarters of Cæsar to-be-assaulted, lest any

legio posset venire subsidio alteri legioni :
legion might be-able to come to aid to another legion :

Gallos non facile potuisse negare
Gauls not easily to have been-able to deny (their help)

Gallis ; præsertim quum consilium videretur (imp.
to Gauls ; especially when a design did seem

subj.) initum de communi libertate
entered-into about (their) common liberty

recuperandâ. Quibus quoniam satisfacērit (perf.
to-be-recovered. To whom, since he has satisfied

subj.) pro pietate, se habere
for (as regarded) duty (to country), himself to have

nunc rationem officiī; monere Cæsārem pro
now a regard of moral-duty; to advise Cæsar for

beneficiis, orare Titurium pro hospitio,
(his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for (his) hospitality,

ut consulat suæ saluti ac
that he may consult for his-own safety and (that)

militum: magnam manum Germanorum conductam
of the soldiers: a great band of Germans being hired

transisse Rhenum; hanc affore
to have crossed the Rhine; this to-be-about-to-be-at-hand

biduo: esse consilium ipsorum,
in two-days: to be the counsel of themselves (that it was for

velint-ne deducere
Sabinus and Cotta to consider), whether they will to conduct

milites eductos ex hibernis aut ad
the soldiers led-out from winter-quarters either to

Ciceronem aut ad Labienum, prius-quàm
Cicero or to Labienus, before-that (their)

finitimi sentiant; alter quorum
neighbours may perceive (it); the other (one) of whom

absit (pres. subj.) circiter quinquaginta millia
is distant about fifty thousands

passum, alter paullo amplius: se polliceri
of paces, the other a little more: himself to promise

illud et confirmare jurejurando, se daturum
that and to affirm by oath, himself about-to-give

tutum iter per suos fines: quod quum
a safe journey through his territories: which when

faciat, et sese consulere civitati, quod
he may do, both himself to consult for the state, because

levetur hibernis, et referre
it may be relieved from the winter-quarters. and to return

gratiam Cæsari pro meritis ejus." Hæc oratione
favour to Cæsar for the merits of him." This speech

habita, Ambiorix discedit.
being held (made), Ambiorix departs.

28. Caius Arpinus et Junius defecerunt ad
Caius Arpinus and Junius report to
legatos quæ audierant. Illi
the lieutenants what (things) they had heard. They

perturbati repentinâ re, etsi ea
much-disturbed by the sudden affair, although those (things)
dicebantur ab hoste, tamen existimabant
were said by an enemy, however did think (them)

non negligenda: quæ maxime permovebantur
not to-be-neglected: and especially were much alarmed

hæc re, quod erat vix credendum
by this affair, because it was hardly to-be-believed

ignobilem atque humilem civitatem Eburonum
the mean and humble state of the Eburones

ausam (-esse) facere bellum sua sponte
to have dared to make war by its-own accord

Romano populo. Itaque defecerunt rem
to (ou) the Roman people. Therefore they report the matter

ad concilium, quæ magna controversia existit
to a council, and a great controversy arises

inter eos. Lucius Aurunculeus quæ complures
between them. Lucius Aurunculeus and very-many

tribuni militum et centuriones primorum ordinum
tribunes of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks

existimabant "nihil agendum temere, neque
did think "nothing to-be-acted rashly, nor

discedendum ex hibernis injussu
to-be-departed from winter-quarters without-command

Cæsaris." Docebant "quantasvis magnas
of Cæsar." They did teach (show) "nowsoever great

copias etiam Germanorum posse sustineri.
forces even of Germans to-be-able to be withstood,

hibernis munitis." "Rem
the winter-quarters being fortified." "The thing (expe-

 esse testimonio, quod sustinuērunt
rience) to be for a testimony, that they have withstood

(perf. subj.) fortissimè primum impetum hostium,
 most-bravely the first attack of the enemies,

multis vulneribus illatis ultrò
many wounds being brought-on (inflicted) spontaneously.

Non premi frumentariâ re.
Not to be pressed by corn affair (by want of corn).

Intercæ subsidia conventura et ex
Meantime aids (to be) about-to-assemble both from

proximis hibernis et à Cæsare."
the nearest winter-quarters and from Cæsar."

Postremò, quid esse levius aut
Lastly, what to be (what could be) lighter or

turpius, quàm capere consilium de summis
more-base, than to take counsel about the most-important

rebus, hoste auctore?"
things, an enemy (being) the adviser?"

29. Contra eâ Titurius clamitabat,
Against those (reasonings) Titurius did often cry-out,

"facturos serò, quum
"about-to-do (that they would do it) too-late, when

maiores manus hostium, Germanis adjunctis,
greater bands of the enemies, the Germans being united,

 convenissent; aut quum aliquid
should have assembled; or when some (thing)

calamitatis acceptum-esset in proximis
of calamity might have been received in the nearest

 hibernis. Occasionem consulendi esse
winter-quarters. The opportunity of consulting to be

brævem. Arbitrari Cæsarem
short. To suppose (that he supposed) Cæsar

profectum (-esse) in Italiâ: nèque Carnutes
to have set-out into Italy: neither the Carnutes

aliter <i>otherwise</i>	fuisse <i>to have been</i>	capturos <i>about-to-take</i>	consilium <i>the counsel</i>	Tasgeti <i>of Tasgetius</i>		
interficiendi; <i>to-be-killed;</i>	nēque <i>neither</i>	Eburones <i>the Eburones</i>	esse <i>to be</i>	venturos <i>about-to-come</i>		
ad <i>to</i>	castra (pl.) <i>the camp</i>	cum <i>with</i>	tantā <i>so great</i>	contemptione <i>contempt</i>	nostrī, <i>of us,</i>	
si <i>if</i>	ille <i>he</i>	adesset (imp. subj.). <i>were-near.</i>	Non <i>Not</i>	spectare <i>to regard</i>	hostem <i>the enemy</i>	
auctorem <i>(as) an adviser</i>	sed <i>but</i>	rem. <i>the thing (circumstance).</i>	Rhenum <i>The Rhine</i>			
subesse: <i>to be-near:</i>	mortem <i>the death</i>	Ariovisti <i>of Ariovistus</i>	et <i>and</i>	nostras <i>our</i>		
superiores <i>former</i>	victorias, <i>victories,</i>	esse <i>to be</i>	magno <i>for great</i>	dolori <i>grief</i>		
Germanis: <i>to the Germans:</i>	Galliam <i>Gaul</i>	ardere <i>to burn (with rage)</i>	tot <i>so-many</i>			
contumeliis <i>insults</i>	acceptis, <i>being received,</i>	redactam <i>(being) reduced</i>	sub <i>under</i>			
imperium <i>the authority</i>	Romani <i>of the Roman</i>	populi, <i>people,</i>	superiore <i>the former</i>	gloriā <i>glory</i>		
militaris <i>of (its) military</i>	rēi <i>affair</i>	extinctā." <i>being extinguished."</i>	Postremò, <i>Lastly,</i>			
"quis <i>"who</i>	persuaderet <i>should persuade</i>	hoc <i>this</i>	sibi, <i>to himself,</i>	Ambiorigem <i>Ambiorix</i>		
descendisse <i>to have descended</i>	ad <i>to</i>	consilium <i>advice</i>	ejusmodi <i>of this-kind</i>	sine <i>without</i>		
certā <i>a sure</i>	re? <i>thing (purpose)?</i>	Suam <i>His</i>	sententiā <i>opinion</i>	esse <i>to be</i>	tutam <i>safe</i>	
in <i>unto</i>	utramque <i>either</i>	partem: <i>part (case):</i>	si <i>if</i>	sit <i>there-be</i>	nil <i>nothing</i>	
durius, <i>harder (worse),</i>	perventuros (-esse) <i>to be about-to-arrive</i>	ad <i>to</i>	proximam <i>the nearest</i>			
legionem <i>legion</i>	cum <i>with</i>	nullo <i>no</i>	pericūlo; <i>danger:</i>	si <i>if</i>	omnis <i>all</i>	Gallia <i>Gaul</i>
consentiat <i>may agree (should combine)</i>	cum <i>with</i>		Germanis, <i>the Germans,</i>	unam <i>the one</i>		

salutem esse positam in celeritate. Quïdem
 (only) safety to be placed in speed. Indeed
 quem exitum consilium Cottæ atque eorum,
 what issue the advice of Cotta and of those,
 qui dissentirent, haberet? In quo
 who might dissent (from him), might have? In which
 si non præsens pericûlum, at certè
 if (there be) not present danger, but surely
 fâmes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."
 famine would be to-be-dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habitâ in utramque
 This dispute being held unto either
 partem, quum resisteretur (imp. subj.) acriter
 part (side), when it was opposed sharply
 à Cottâ que primis ordinibus; Sabinus inquit,
 by Cotta and the first ranks; Sabinus says,
 "Vincite, si vultis ita," et id clariore
 "Prevail, if ye will (it) so." and that with a louder
 voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret:
 voice, that a great part of the soldiers might hear (him):
 "nèque sum is, inquit, ex vobis, qui
 "neither I am that (man), says he, out-of you, who
 terrëar gravissimè pericûlo mortis.
 may be affrighted most-severely by the danger of death.

Hi sapient; et, si quid
 These (men) will be-wise (by experience); and, if any
 gravius acciderit, reposcent
 (thing) more-severe shall have happened, they will demand
 rationem abs te: qui, si licëat
 an account from thee: who, if it be-lawful (be permitted)
 per te, conjuncti cum proximis hibernis
 by thee, being united with the nearest winter-quarters
 diè perendino, sustinëant communem
 on the day after-to-morrow, may support a common
 casum cum reliquis; nec rejecti et relegati
 chance with the rest; nor thrown-back and banished

longè ab cætëris, intereant aut ferro
far from the rest, may perish either by iron (the

aut fãme." Consurgitur ex
or by famine." It is risen (they rise) from

concilio: comprehendunt utrumque et orant;
the council: they lay-hold-of each and beseech;

"ne-deducant rem in summum
they may not-bring the thing into the highest

periculũ suã dissensione et pertinaciã: rem
danger by their dissension and obstinacy: the thing

esse facilem, seu manëant seu proficiscantur,
to be easy, whether they may remain or may set-out,

si mōdò omnes sentiãt ac prōbent unum.
if only all may think and may approve one

Contrã, se perspicere nullam
(thing). On-the-other-hand, themselves to perceive nc

salutem in dissensione." Res perducitur
safety in dissension." The thing is protracted

disputatione ad mediã noctem.
by dispute to middle night.

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat mñus:
At-length Cotta being moved gives hands (yields):

sententiã Sabini supërat. Pronuntiatur
the opinion of Sabinus prevails. It is declared (them

ituros primã luce. Reliqua
about-to-go in the first light (day-break). The rest (remaining)

pars noctis consumitur vigiliis: quum quisque
part of the night is spent in watchings; when each

miles circumspicëret (imp. subj.) suã,
soldier did look-around-for his own (things),

quid posset portare cum se, quid
what he might be-able to carry with himself, what

cogeretur relinquere ex instrumento
he might be compelled to leave out-of the furniture

hibernorum. Omnia excogitantur,
of the winter-quarters. All (things) are devised,

primos adscensu, atque committere praelium
the first from the ascent, and to engage battle

lōco iniquissīmo nostris.
in a place most-unfavourable to our (men)

33. Tum demum Titurius trepidare,
Then at-last Titurius (began) to tremble,

concursare que disponere cohortes, uti qui
to hurry and to arrange the cohorts, as (a man) who

providisset (pluperf. subj.) nihil antè : tamen,
had foreseen nothing before : however,

hæc ipsa timide, atque ut
(he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and as (-if)

omnia viderentur (imp. subj.) deficere. At
all (things) did seem to fail (him). But

Cotta, qui cogitasset (pluperf. subj.) hæc
Cotta, who had thought these (things)

posse accidere in itinere, atque ob
to be-able to happen on the march, and on-account-of

eam causam fuisset (pluperf. subj.) non auctor
that reason had been not the adviser

profectionis, deerat communi salutis in
of the departure, was wanting to the common safety in

nulla re ; et praeſtabat officia imperatoris
no thing ; and did perform the duties of a general

in militibus appellandis que cohortandis ;
in the soldiers to-be-addressed and to-be-encouraged ;

et militis in pugna. Que quum propter
and of a soldier in the battle. And when on-account-of

longitudinem agminis, possent (imp. subj.) minus
the length of the troop, they were able less

facile obire omnia per
easily to go-through (discharge) all (things) by

se, et providere, quid esset faciendum
themselves, and to provide, what might be to-be-done

quoque loco ; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut
in every place ; they ordered (it) to be announced, that

relinquērent impedimenta atque consistērent
they should leave the baggages and should stand-together

in orbem. Quod consilium, etsi est non
into a circle. Which plan, although it is not

reprehendendum in casu ejusmodi, tamen
to-be-blamed in a case of this-kind, however

accidit incommōdè: nam minuit spem nostris
happened untowardly: for it diminished hope to our

militibus, et effecit hostes alacriores
soldiers, and rendered the enemies more-alert

ad-pugnandum; quod id videbatur factum (-esse)
to-fighting; because that did seem to have been done

non sine summo timore et desperatione.
not without the highest fear and desperation.

Præterea accidit, quod erat necesse fieri,
Besides it happened, what was necessary to be done,

ut milites discederent (imp. subj.) vulgò
that the soldiers did depart in-common

ab signis; que quisque eorum properaret
from the standards; and every-one of them did hasten

(imp. subj.) petere atque arripere ab impedimentis,
to seek and to seize from the baggages,

quæ haberet carissima; et omnia
what (things) he might hold most-dear; and all (places)

complerentur (imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.
were filled with noise and with weeping.

34. At consilium defuit non barbaris.
But counsel was-wanting not to the barbarians.

Nam duces eorum jusserunt pronuntiari
For the leaders of them commanded (it) to be announced

totâ acie, "ne quis discederet
in the whole line, "that-not any (one) should depart

ab loco: quæcunque Romani
from (his) place: whatsoever (things) the Romans

reliquissent, esse prædam illorum, atque
might have left, to be the plunder of them, and

reservari illis : proinde existimarent
to be reserved for them : wherefore they should think
 omnia posita in victoriâ." Nostri erant
all (things) placed in victory." Our (men) were
 pãres pugnando et virtute et numëro :
equal in fighting both in valour and in number :
 tametsi deserebantur à dũce et
although they were deserted by (their) general and by
 fortunâ, tãmen ponebant omnem spem salutis
fortune, however they did place all hope of safety
 in virtute ; et quoties quæque cõhors
in valour ; and as-often-as every cohort
 procurreret (imp. subj.), magnus numërus
did-run-forward (did charge), a great number
 hostium cadebat ab eâ parte. Quâ
of the enemies did fall from (on) that part. Which
 re animadversâ, Ambiõrix jussit pronuntiarî,
thing being observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced,
 ut conjiciant tela præcul neu
that they may cast (their) darts from-a-distance, nor
 accedant propius ; et in quam partem
may-approach nearer ; and into what (-ever) part
 Romani fecerint impetum, cedant ;
the Romans shall have made an attack, they may give-way ;
 nihil posse noceri iis levitate
nothing to be-able to be injured to them by the lightness
 armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione :
of (their) arms and by daily exercise :
 insequantur recipientes se rursus ad
they may pursue (them) betaking themselves again to
 signa.
the standards.

35. Quo præcepto observato diligentissimè
Which precept being observed most-carefully
 ab iis, quum quæpiam cõhors excesserat ex
by them, when any cohort had gone-out out-of.

orbe, atque fecerat impetum, hostes
the circle, and had made an attack, the enemies
 refugiebant velocissimè; interim erat necesse
did flee-back most-swiftly; meantime it was necessary
 nudari eâ parte, et tela recipi
to be exposed in that part, and darts to be received
 ab aperto latere. Rursus, quum cœperant
from the open flank. Again, when they had begun
 reverti in eum locum, unde egressi-erant,
to return into that place, whence they had gone-out,
 circumveniebantur et ab iis, qui cesserant
they were surrounded both by those, who had given-way
 et ab iis, qui steterant proximi; autem sin
and by those, who had stood nearest; but if
 vellent (imp. subj.) tenere locum, nèque
they did will to hold (their) place, neither
 locus relinquebatur virtuti, nèque
a place (opportunity) was left for valour, neither
 conferti poterant vitare tela conjecta à
crowded were they able to avoid the darts hurled by
 tantâ multitudine. Tâmen conflictati
so-great a multitude. However having struggled
 tam-multis incommôdis, multis vulneribus
with so-many disadvantages, many wounds
 acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ parte
being received, they did withstand; and a great part
 diei consumptâ, committebant nihil, quod
of the day being spent, they did commit nothing, which
 esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum
might be unworthy themselves, when (although)
 pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce ad octavam
it was fought from the first light to the eighth
 horam. Tum utrumque femur transjicitur
hour (two o'clock). Then each thigh is pierced
 tragulâ Tito Balventio, forti viro, et
with a dart to Titus Balventius. a brave man, and

magnæ auctoritatis, qui duxerat primum pilum
of great authority, who had led the first javelin

superiore anno. Quintus
(had been first centurion) in the former year. Quintus

Lucanius ejusdem ordinis pugnans fortissimè
Lucanius of the same rank fighting most-bravely

interficitur, dum subvenit filio circumvento.
is slain, whilst he aids to (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucius Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes
Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordines, vulneratur fundâ in
the cohorts and ranks, is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.
the opposite face.

36. Quintus Titurius permotus his rebus,
Quintus Titurius much-alarmed by these things,

quum conspexisset (pluperf. subj.) Ambiorigem
when he had beheld Ambiorix

pröcul cohortantem suos, mittit sūm
at-a-distance exhorting his (men), sends his

interpretē, Cnæium Pompeium ad eum, rogatum,
interpreter, Cnæius Pompey to him, to beseech,

“ut parcat sibi que militibus.
“that he may spare to himself and to the soldiers.

Ille appellatus respondit, “licere
He being called answered, “to be-lawful (that he

collöqui secum, si vëlit:
permitted) to confer with-himself, if he may-will:

sperare posse impetrari à multitudine,
to hope to be-able to be obtained from the multitude,

quod pertinëat ad salutem militum: verò
what may relate to the safety of the soldiers: but

nihil nocitum-iri ipsi: que se
nothing to be about-to-be-hurt to himself: and himself

interponëre sūam fidem in eam rem.”
to interpose (to pledge) his faith unto that thing.”

Ille communicat cum saucio Cottâ; "si
 He communicates (this) with the wounded Cotta; "if
 videatur, ut excedant pugnâ,
 it may seem (fit), that they may retire from the battle,
 et colloquantur unâ cum Ambiorige; se
 and may confer together with Ambiorix; himself
 sperare posse impetrari ab eo de
 to hope to be-able to be-obtained from him about
 suâ salute ac militum." Cotta negat
 his-own safety and (that) of the soldiers." Cotta denies
 se iturum ad armatum hostem atque
 himself about-to-go to an armed enemy and
 perseverat in eo. (37.) Sabinus jubet tribuno
 perseveres in that. Sabinus orders the tribunes
 militum, quos habebat circum se in-præsentîâ,
 of soldiers, whom he did have about himself at-present,
 et centuriones primorum ordinum, sequi
 and the centurions of the first ranks, to follow
 se; et quum accessisset (pluperf. subj.)
 himself; and when he had approached
 propius Ambiorigem, jussus abicere
 nearer Ambiorix, being ordered to throw-away
 arma, facit imperatum, que imperat
 (his) arms, he does (the thing) commanded, and commands
 suis, ut faciant idem. Intërim,
 to his (men), that they may do the same. Mean-time,
 dum agunt inter se de
 whilst they act (treat) between themselves about
 conditionibus, que longior sermo instituitur
 conditions, and a longer speech is framed
 consultò ab Ambiorige, circumventus paullatim
 designedly by Ambiorix, being surrounded gradually
 interficitur. Tum verò conclamant victoriâ atque
 he is killed. Then truly they shout victory and
 tollunt ululatum suo more que impetu
 raise a howl in their manner, and an attack

facto in nostros, perturbant ordines.
being made upon our (men), they disorder the ranks.

Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur, cum
There Lucius Cotta fighting is killed, with

maximâ parte militum : reliqui recipiunt
the greatest part of the soldiers : the rest betake

se in castra (pl.), unde egressi-erant.
themselves into the camp, whence they had gone-out.

Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer
Out-of whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle-bearer

projecit aquilam intra vallum, cum
(ensign) cast the eagle within the rampart, when

premeretur (imp. subj.) magnâ multitudine
he was pressed by a great multitude

hostium ; ipse pugnans fortissimè pro
of the enemies ; himself fighting most-bravely. before

castris (pl.) occiditur. Alii ægrè sustinent
the camp is slain. The others hardly support

oppugnationem ad noctem ; ipsi omnes
the assault to (until) night ; themselves all

ad unum, salute desperatâ, interficiunt
to one (to a man), safety being despaired-of, kill

se noctu. Pauci elapsi ex præliæ
themselves by night. A few having escaped from the battle

perveniunt incertis itineribus per silvas
arrive by uncertain routes through the woods

ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna ;
to Titus Labienus the lieutenant into winter-quarters ;

atque faciunt eum certiorem de
and make him more-sure (inform him) of

rebus gestis.
the things carried-on.

38. Ambiorix sublatu hâc victoriâ, statim
Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately

proficiscitur cum equitatu in Atuaticos,
sets-out with (his) cavalry unto the Atuatici,

qui ěrant finitimi regno ejus ; něque
 who were bordering to the kingdom of him ; neither

intermittit diem něque noctem ; que jĭbet
 does he intermit day nor night ; and he orders

peditatum subsĕqui se. Re demonstratĕ,
 the infantry to follow himself. The affair being shown,

que Atuaticis concitatis, pervĕnit postĕro
 and the Atuatici being roused-up, he arrives in the following

die in Nervios, que hortatur
 day unto the Nervii, and exhorts (them)

“ne-dimittant occasionem sĕi
 “they may not-let-slip the opportunity of themselves

liberandi in-perpetĕum, atque ulciscendi Romanos
 to-be-freed for-ever, and of avenging the Romans

pro iis injuriis, quas accepĕrint (perf. subj.) :”
 for those injuries, which they have received :”

demonstrat “duos legatos interfectos-esse, que
 he shows “two lieutenants to have been killed, and

magnam partem exercitĕs interisse : nihil
 a great part of the army to have perished : nothing

negotii esse, legionem subitĕ
 of business (trouble) to be, the legion suddenly

oppressam, quę hiĕmet (pres. subj.) cum
 being overwhelmed, which winter with

Cicerone, interfici :” profitetur “se adjutorem
 Cicero, to be slain :” he declares “himself a helper

ad ěam rem.”
 to that thing.”

39. Persuadet Nervii facile hęc oratione.
 He persuades to the Nervii easily by this speech.

Itaque nunciis dimissis confestim ad
 Therefore messengers being dismissed immediately to

Centrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumosios, Gordunos,
 the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumosii, Gorduni,

qui omnes sunt sub imperio eorum,
 who all are under the authority of them,

cogunt mānus quān maxīmas possunt; et
they collect bands as greatest they can; and

advōlant de-improviso ad hiberna Ciceronis,
fly unexpectedly to the winter-quarters of Cicero,

famā de morte Titurīi nondum
the report about the death of Titurius not-yet

perlatā ad eū. Accidit quōque huic,
being brought to him. It happened also to him,

quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui
which was necessary, that some soldiers, who

discessissent (pluperf. subj.) in silvas caussā
had departed into the woods by cause (for

the purpose) lignationis que munitionis
of wood-cutting and of fortification

interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu
were cut-off by the sudden arrival

equitū. His circumventis, Eburones,
of (their) cavalry. These being surrounded, the Eburones,

Atuatīci, Nervīi, atque socii et clientes
Atuatīci, Nervīi, and the allies and dependants

omnium horum, incipiunt oppugnare legionem
of all these, begin to assault the legion

magnā mānu. Nostri celeriter concurrunt
with a great band. Our (men) quickly run-together

ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dies
to arms; they mount the rampart. That day

sustentatur ægrè, quòd hostes ponebant
is supported hardly, because the enemies did place

omnem spem in celeritate, atque adepti
all hope in expedition, and having obtained

hanc victoriā, confidebant se fore
this victory, they did trust themselves to be about-to-be

victores in-perpetuū.
conquerors for-ever.

40. Litērae mittuntur confestim ad
Letters (a letter) are sent immediately to

Cæsārem à Cicerone, magnis præmiis propositis,
Cæsar by Cicero, great rewards being proposed,
 si pertulissent. Omnibus viis
if they might have carried (it). All the ways
 obsessis, missi intercepti. Centum
being blocked-up, (those) sent are intercepted. A hundred
 et viginti turres excitantur incredibili celeritate
and twenty towers are raised with incredible speed
 noctu ex eâ materiâ, quam com-
by night out-of that material, which they had
 portaverant caussâ munitionis.
brought-together by cause (for the purpose) of fortification.
 Quæ videbantur deesse op̄eri
What (things) did seem to be-wanting to the work
 perficiuntur. Hostes, multò majoribus copiis
are completed. The enemies, by-much greater forces
 coactis, oppugnant castra (pl.) post̄ero
being collected, assault the camp on the following
 die, complent fossam. Resistitur à nostris
day, they fill-up the trench. It is withstood by our
 eâdem ratione, quâ prid̄e : hoc
(men) in the same manner, in which the day-before : this
 idem fit deinceps reliquis
same (thing) is done afterwards on the rest (remaining)
 diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis intermittitur
days. No part of the nightly time is intermitted
 ad laborem : facultas quietis datur non ægris,
to labour : a power of rest is given not to the sick,
 non vulneratis. Quæcunque sunt opus
not to the wounded. Whatsoever (things) are necessary
 ad oppugnationem. proximi diei, comparantur
to the assault of the next day, are prepared
 noctu. Multæ sudes præustæ, magnus
by night. Many stakes burnt-at-the-point, a great
 numerus muralium pilorum instituitur ; turres
number of mural javelins is prepared ; towers

contabulantur; pinnæ que loricae attexuntur
are raised; battlements and parapets are woven

ex cratibus. Cicero ipse, quum
out-of hurdles. Cicero himself, when (although)

esset (imp. subj.) tenuissimâ valetudine, relinquebat
he was in very-delicate health, did leave

ne quidem nocturnum tempus sibi ad
not indeed (even) the nightly time to himself to

quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcere
rest; (so) that he was compelled to spare

sibi ultro concursu
to himself spontaneously (in spite of himself) by the running

ac vocibus militum.
and voices (of entreaty) of the soldiers.

41. Tunc dūces que principes Nerviorum,
Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,

qui habebant aliquem aditum sermonis que
who did have some access of speech and

causam amicitiae cum Cicerone, dicunt
cause of friendship with Cicero, say

sese velle collōqui. Potestate
themselves to will to confer (with him). The power (liberty)

factâ, commemorant eādem, quæ
being made, they narrate the same (things), which

Ambiorix egērat cum Titurio: "Omne
Ambiorix had acted (done) with Titurius: "All

Galliā esse in armis: Germanos transisse
Gaul to be in arms: the Germans to have crossed

Rhenum: hiberna Cæsaris que reliquorum
the Rhine: the winter-quarters of Cæsar and of the rest

oppugnari." Addunt etiam de morte
to be stormed." They add also about the death

Sabini. Ostentant Ambiorigem causâ
of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix by cause (for the

purpose) fidē faciundæ. Dicunt "eos
of faith (credit) to-be-made. They say "these

errare, si sperent quidquam præsidi
to mistake, if they may hope any of protection
 ab iis, qui diffidant (pres. subj.) suis
from those, who distrust to their-own
 rebus : tamen sese esse hoc animo
affairs : however themselves to be with this mind
 in Ciceronem que Romanum populum, ut
unto Cicerō and the Roman people, that
 recusent nihil, nisi hiberna, atque
they may refuse nothing, unless the winter-quarters, and
 nolint hanc consuetudinem inveterascere :
may be-unwilling this custom to become-old
 (established) : licere illis discedere
to be-lawful for them to depart
 incolumibus per se ex
safe by themselves (by their permission) out-of
 hibernis, et proficisci sine metu in
the winter-quarters, and to set-out without fear into
 quascunque partes vellent." Cicero respondit
whatever parts they may will." Cicero answered
 modò unum ad hæc : "Non esse
only one (thing) to these : "Not to be
 consuetudinem Romani populi accipere ullam
the custom of the Roman people to receive any
 conditionem ab armato hoste : si vellent
condition from an armed enemy : if they may will
 discedere ab armis, utantur se adjutore,
to depart from arms, they may use himself (as) a helper
 que mittant legatos ad Cæsarem :
(an advocate), and may send ambassadors to Cæsar
 se sperare impetraturos, quæ
himself to hope them (to be) about-to-obtain, what
 petierint, pro justitiâ ejus."
they may have sought, on-account-of the justice of him."
 42. Nervii repulsi ab hac spe,
The Nervii being repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undĕcim
surround the winter-quarters with a rampart of eleven

pĕdum et fossâ quindĕcim pĕdum. Cognovĕrant
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had known

 hæc et à nostris consuetudinē
(learned) these (things) also from our (men) by the custom

superiorum annorum ; et nacti quosdam
of former years ; and having got some

captivos de exercĭtu, docebantur ab his.
prisoners of (our) army, they were taught by these.

Sed nulla copĭa ferramentorum his,
But (there was) no supply of iron-tools to these,

quæ esset idonea ad hunc usum.
which might be fit to (for) this use.

Cogebantur circumcidĕre, cespĭtem gladiis,
They were forced to cut-round the green-turf with swords,

exhaustire terram manĭbus que
to draw-out (dig-out) the earth with (their) hands and

 sagŭlis, Ex quâ re quĭdem,
(carry it) in cloaks. From which thing indeed,

multitudo homĭnum potuit cognosci. Nam
the multitude of men was-able to be known. For

mĭnùs tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem
in less (than) three hours they finished a fortification

quindĕcim millĭum passŭum in circuĭtu. Que
of fifteen thousands of paces in compass. And

cœperunt parare ac facĕre turres reliquis
they began to prepare and to make towers on the rest

 diebus ad altitudĭnem valli ;
(remaining) days to the height of the rampart ;

falces que testudĭnes, quas iidem captivi
scythes and mantelets, which the same prisoners

docuĕrant.
had taught (them).

43. Septĭmo dĭe oppugnationis, maxĭmo
 In the seventh day of the siege, a very-great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacere fundis
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ, et fervefacta
hot balls of fusible clay, and heated

jacula in cœsas, quæ tectæ-erant
darts on the cottages which had been covered

stramentis Gallico more. Hæ comprehenderunt
with straws in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celeriter, et magnitudine venti,
fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,

distulerunt in omnem locum castrorum (pl.).
carried (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maximo clamore,
The enemies having followed with a very-great shout,

quasi victoriâ partâ atque exploratâ
as-if the victory being obtained and examined

jam, cœperunt agere turres
(assured) already, began to act (put in motion) the towers

que testudines et ascendere vallum scalis.
and mantelets and so mount the rampart with ladders

At tanta fuit virtus atque præsentiâ animi
But so-great was the valour and the presence of mind

militem, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)
of the soldiers, that, when they were scorched

flammâ undique, que premerentur (imp. subj.)
by the flame on-every-side, and were pressed

maximâ multitudinē telorum, que
with a very-great multitude of weapons, and

intelligerent (imp. subj.) omnia sua impedimenta
did understand all their baggages

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non modò
and all (their) fortunes to be-on-fire, not only

nemo decederet (imp. subj.) de vello
no-one did depart from the rampart

caussâ demigrandi, sed quisquam ne
by cause (for the sake) of going-away, but any-one

quīdem penè respicēret (imp. subj.); ac tum
indeed (even) hardly did look-back; and then

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrimè que
all did fight most-vigorously and

fortissimè. Hic dies fuit longè gravissimus
most-bravely. This day was by-far the most-severe

nostris; sed tamen habuit hunc eventum, ut
to our (men); but however it had this issue, that

eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur
on that day the greatest number of the enemies was wounded
(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut
and was killed; (so) that

constipaverant se sub vallo ipso,
they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself,

que ultimi dabant non recessum primis. Quīdem
and the last did give not a retreat to the first. Indeed

flammâ intermissâ paullulùm, et turri
the flame being interrupted a very-little, and a tower

adactâ quodam loco, et contingente
being forced-up in a certain place, and touching

vallum, centuriones tertiae cohortis
the rampart, the centurions of the third cohort

recesserunt ex eo loco, quo stabant,
retired out-of that place, in which they did stand,

que removerunt omnes suos; coeperunt
and removed all their (men); they began

vocare hostes nutu que vocibus, "si
to call the enemies by nod and by sayings, "if

vellent introire:" nemo quorum ausus-est
they might will to enter:" no-one of whom dared

progrēdi. Tum deturbati (-sunt) lapidibus coniectis
to advance. Then they were beaten-off by stones thrown

ex omni parte, que turris succensa-est.
from every part, and the tower was set-on-fire.

44. Erant in eâ legione fortissimi
There were in that legion (two) very-brave

vīri, centuriones, Titus Pulſio et Lucius Varenus,
men, centurions, Titus Pulſio and Lucius Varenus,
 qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis
who now did approach to the first
 ordinibus. Hi habebant perpetuas
ranks (of centurions). These did have constant
 controversias inter se, ūter
controversies between themselves, whether of-the-two
 anteferretur aliēri; que contende-
should be preferred to the other; and they did contend
 summis simultatibus de loco
with the highest bickerings about place (precedence)
 omnibus annis. Ex iis Pulſio inquit,
in all years. Out-of those Pulſio says,
 quum pugnaretur (imp. subj.) acerrimē ad
when it was fought most-vigorously at
 munitiones, "Quid dubitas, Varenē?
the fortifications, "Why dost thou hesitate, O Varenus?
 aut quem locum tuę virtutis probandę
or what place (opportunity) of thy valour to-be-proved
 exspectas? Hic dies, hic dies judicabit
dost thou wait-for? This day, this day shall decide
 de nostris controversiis." Quum dixisset (pluperf.
about our disputes." When he had said
 subj.) hæc, procedit extra munitiones,
these (words), he advances without the fortifications,
 et quę pars hostium visa-est confertissima,
and what part of the enemies denser most-dense,
 irrumpit in eam. Nec Varenus quidem
he rushes-in into that. Neither Varenus indeed
 tum continet sese vallo; sed veritus
then restrains himself on the rampart; but having feared
 existimationem omnium, subsequitur, mediocri
the opinion of all, he follows-closely, a moderate
 spatio relicto. Pulſio mittit pilum in
distance being left. Pulſio sends (his) javelin against

hostes, atque transjicit unum ex multitudīne
the enemies, and transfixes one out-of the multitude

procurentem: quo percusso et exanimato,
running-forward: who being struck and laid-senseless,

hostes protēgunt hunc scutis, et
the enemies protect him with (their) shields, and

universi conjiçunt tela in illum,
all hurl (their) darts upon him (Pulfio),

nēque dant facultatem regrediendi.
neither do they give (him) a power of returning.

Scutum transfigitur Pulfioni et verūtum
The shield is transpierced for Pulfio (Pulfio's shield) and a dart

defigitur in baltēo. Hic casus avertit
is fixed in (his) belt. This misfortune turns-away

vaginam et moratur dextram manū
the scabbard. and retards the right hand (of him)

conantis educēre gladium, que hostes
endeavouring to draw-out (his) sword, and the enemies

circumsistunt impeditum. Varenus inimicus
surround (him) entangled. Varenus (his) rival

succurrit illi, et subvenit laboranti.
succours to him, and comes-up (to him) labouring (in

distress). Omnis multitudo confestim convertit
All the multitude immediately turns

se à Pulfione ad hunc. Arbitrantur
itself from Pulfio to this (Varenus). They think

illum transfixum verūto. Illic verò
him (Pulfio) run-through with the dart. There truly

Varenus occursat oçiùs gladiò que
Varenus runs-up very-quickly with (his) sword and

gërit rem cominùs; atque uno
carries-on the affair hand-to-hand; and one

interfecto, propellit reliquos paullùm. Dum
being killed, he repulses the rest a little. Whilst

instat cupiditiùs dejectus concidit
he presses-on more eagerly, being thrown-down he fell

in inferiorem locum. Pulvis rursus fert
 upon a lower place. Pulvis again brings
 subsidium huic circumvento; atque ambo incolūmes,
 aid to him surrounded; and both safe,

compluribus interfectis, recipiunt sese
 several (of the enemy) being killed, betake themselves

cum summâ laude intra munitiones. Sic
 with the highest praise within the fortifications. Thus

fortuna versavit utrumque in contentione et
 fortune turned each in (their) strife and

certamine, ut alter inimicus esset (imp.
 contest, (so) that the other (one) rival was

subj.) auxilio que saluti alteri; neque
 for aid and safety to the other; neither

posset (imp. subj.) dijudicari, ūter
 was it able to be decided, whether-of-the-two

videretur antefendus ūtri virtute.
 should seem to-be-preferred to which-one in valour.

45. Quantò gravior atque asperior
 By how-much more-severe and more-rough
 oppugnatio erat indies, et maxime
 (desperate) the siege was daily, and chiefly

quòd, magnâ parte militum confectâ
 because, a great part of the soldiers being spent

vulneribus, res pervenerat ad paucitatem
 with wounds, the thing had come to fewness

defensorum; tantò crebriores literæ que
 of defenders; by so-much more-frequent letters and

nuncii mittebantur ad Cæsarem; pars quorum
 messengers were sent to Cæsar; part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciatu in conspectu
 being caught was put-to-death with torture in sight

nostrorum militum. Erat unus Nervius intus,
 of our soldiers. There was one Nervian within,

nomine Vertico, hatus honesto loco,
 by name „Vertico, born in honourable place (rank).

qui profugerat ad Ciceronem à primâ obsidione,
who had fled to Cicero from the first siege,

que præstitērat suam fidem ei. Hic
and had exhibited his fidelity to him. This (person)

persuadet servo, spe libertatis que magnis
persuades to a slave, by the hope of liberty and by great

præmiis, ut defērat litēras (plur.) ad
rewards, that he may carry a letter to

Cæsārem. Ille affert has illigatas in
Cæsar. He carries these (this letter) tied-up on

jacūlo; et Gallus versatus inter Gallos
a javelin; and the Gaul being engaged among Gauls

sine ullâ suspiciōne, pervenit ad Cæsārem.
without any suspicion, arrives to Cæsar.

Cognoscit ab eo de pericūlo Ciceronis
He knows (learns) from him of the danger of Cicero

que legionis.
and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, litēris (plur.) acceptis circiter
Cæsar, the letter being received about

undecimâ horâ diei, mittit nunciūm
in the eleventh hour of the day, sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor unto

Bellovācos, cujus hiberna abērant ab
the Bellovaci, whose winter-quarters were-distant from

eo viginti quinque millia passūm. Jūbet
him twenty five thousands of paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediâ nocte, que venire
the legion to set-out in middle night, and to come

celeriter ad se. Crassus exiit cum
speedily to himself. Crassus came-out with

nunciō. Mittit altērum ad Caiūm
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabium legatum, ut adducat legionem
Fabius the lieutenant, that he may lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatium, quâ scielat
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he did know

iter faciendum sibi. Scribit
the march to-be-made to (by) himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facere commôdo
to Labienus, if he might be-able to do (it) with convenience

Reipublicæ, veniat cum legione ad
of the State, he may come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pütat reliquam
the territories of the Nervii. He thinks the rest (remaining)

partem exercitûs non expectandam, quòd
part of the army not to-be-waited-for, because

abërat paullò longiùs: cogit circiter
it was distant a little farther: he collects about

quadringentos equites ex proximis hibernis.
four-hundred cavalry out-of the nearest winter-quarters..

47. Factus-est certior de adventu Crassi ab
He was made more-sure of the arrival of Crassus by

antecursoribus circiter tertîâ horâ: progreditur
scouts about in the third hour: he advances

viginti millia passûum ëo die. Præficit
twenty thousands of paces in that day. He sets-over

Crassum Samarobrivæ, que attribuit legionem
Crassus to Samarobriua, and assigns a legion

ëi; quòd relinquebat ibi impedimenta
to him; because he did leave there the baggage

exercitûs, obsides civitatum, publicas litëras,
of the army, the hostages of the states, the public letters,

que omne frumentum, quod devexërat
and all the corn, which he had conveyed-down

ëd caussâ hiëmis
thither by cause (for the purpose) of the winter

tolerandæ. Fabius, ut imperatum-ërat,
to-be-supported. Fabius, as it had been commanded,

moratus non ita multùm,
having delayed not much (not very much),

occurrit cum legione in itinere. Labienus,
meets (him) with a legion on the march. Labienus,

interitū Sabini, et cæde cohortium
the destruction of Sabinus, and the slaughter of the cohorts

cognitâ, quum omnes copiæ Trevirorum
being known, when all the forces of the Treviri

venissent (pluperf. subj.) ad eum, veritus ne,
had come to him, having feared lest,

si fecisset profectionem ex hibernis
if he should-have-made the departure out-of winter-quarters

similem fugæ, ut posset non sustinere
like to a flight, that he might be-able not to sustain

impetum hostium, præsertim quos sciret
the attack of the enemies, especially whom he did know

(imp. subj.) efferri recenti victoriâ, dimittit
to be elated by the late victory, despatches

litteras (plur.) Cæsari, cum quanto periculo
a letter to Cæsar, (to say) with how-great danger

esset (imp. subj.) educturus legionem ex
he was about-to-lead-out the legion out-of

hibernis : perscribit rem gestam in
winter-quarters : he writes-fully the affair carried-on in

Eburonibus : docet omnes
(among) the Eburones : he teaches (informs him) all

copias peditatûs que equitatûs Trevirorum
the forces of infantry and of cavalry of the Treviri

consedissee tria millia passuum
to have sat-down (encamped) three thousands of paces

longè ab suis castris (pl.).
far (distant) from his camp.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probato, etsi
Cæsar, the plan of him being approved-of, although

dejectus opinione trium
cast-down (disappointed) in the expectation of three

legionum, redierat - ad duas ; tamen ponebat
legions, had returned to the two ; however he did place

unum <i>the one (only)</i>	auxilium <i>aid</i>	communis <i>of the common</i>	salutis <i>safety</i>	in <i>in</i>
celeritate. <i>expedition.</i>	Vēnit <i>He comes</i>	magnis <i>by great</i>	itineribus <i>marches</i>	in <i>into</i>
fines <i>the territories</i>	Nerviorum. <i>of the Nervii.</i>	Ibi <i>There</i>	cognoscit <i>he knows (learns)</i>	ex <i>from</i>
captivis, <i>the prisoners,</i>	quæ <i>what (things)</i>	gerantur (pres. subj.) <i>are carried-on</i>		
apud Ciceronem, <i>at Cicero,</i>	que <i>and</i>	in quanto <i>in how-great</i>	periculo <i>danger</i>	res <i>the affair</i>
sit (pres. subj.). <i>is.</i>	Tum <i>Then</i>	persuadet <i>he persuades</i>	cuidam <i>to a certain (person)</i>	
ex <i>out-of</i>	Gallis <i>the Gallic</i>	equitibus <i>horsemen</i>	magnis <i>by great</i>	præmiis, uti <i>rewards, that</i>
defērat <i>he may carry</i>	epistolam <i>a letter</i>	ad Ciceronem. <i>to Cicero.</i>	Mittit <i>He sends</i>	hanc <i>the</i>
conscriptam <i>written</i>	Græcis <i>in Greek</i>	litēris; <i>letters (characters);</i>	ne, epistolā <i>lest, the letter</i>	
interceptā, <i>being intercepted,</i>	nostra <i>our</i>	consilia <i>plans</i>	cognoscantur <i>may be known</i>	ab <i>by</i>
hostibus. <i>the enemies.</i>	Mōnet, <i>He advises (him),</i>	si <i>if</i>	posset <i>he may be-able</i>	non <i>not</i>
adire, <i>to go-to (Cicero),</i>	ut <i>that</i>	objiciat <i>he may cast</i>	tragulam <i>a dart</i>	cum <i>with</i>
epistolā deligatā <i>the letter tied</i>	ad amentum <i>to the thong</i>	intra <i>within</i>	munitiones <i>the fortifications</i>	
castrorum (pl.). <i>of the camp.</i>	Scribit <i>He writes</i>	in litēris (plur.), <i>in the letter,</i>	“se <i>“ himself</i>	
profectum <i>having set-out</i>	affōre <i>to-be-about-to-be-present</i>	celeriter <i>speedily</i>	cum <i>with</i>	
legionibus :” <i>the legions :”</i>	hortatur <i>he encourages (him)</i>	“ut <i>“ that</i>	retinēat <i>he may retain</i>	
pristinam <i>(his) ancient</i>	virtutem.” <i>valour.”</i>	Gallus <i>The Gaul</i>	veritus <i>having feared</i>	
periculum, <i>danger,</i>	mittit <i>sends (throws)</i>	tragulam, <i>the dart,</i>	ut præceptum-ērat. <i>as it had been ordered.</i>	

Hæc adhæsit ad turrim casu, nèque
This stuck to a tower by chance, nor

animadversa (-est) bidūo ab nostris;
was perceived for two-days by our (men);

tertio die conspicitur à quodam milite;
on the third day it is seen by a certain soldier;

dempta defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille
being taken-down it is carried to Cicero. He

recitat perlectam in conventu
reads-aloud (it) being read-through in an assembly

militem, que afficit omnes maximâ
of the soldiers, and affects all with the greatest

lætitiâ. Tum fumi incendorum videbantur
gladness. Then the smokes of the fires were seen

pröcul: quæ res expulit omnem dubitationem
at-a-distance: which thing banished all doubt

adventûs legionum.
of the approach of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognitâ per exploratores,
The Gauls, the thing being known by spies,

relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt ad Cæsarem
leave (raise) the siege; they set-out to Cæsar

omnibus copiis: æe erant circiter sexaginta
with all (their) forces: those were about sixty

millia armatorum. Cicero, facultate datâ,
thousands of armed (men). Cicero, the power being given,

repëtit Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem
requests the Gaul from the same Vertico, whom

demonstravimus suprâ, qui defërat litëras (plur.)
we have pointed-out above, who may carry a letter

ad Cæsarem. Admōnet hunc, faciât
to Cæsar. He admonishes him, (that) he may make

iter cautè que diligenter. Perscribit in
the journey cautiously and diligently. He writes in

litëris (plur.), "Hostes discessisse ab
the letter, "The enemies to have departed from

se, que omnem multitudinem convertisse ad
himself, and all the multitude to have turned to

ëum." Quibus litëris (plur.) allatis Cæsãri
him." Which letter being brought to Cæsar

circiter mediã nocte, facit suos certiores ;
about in middle night, he makes his (men) more-sure

que confirmat eos animo
(informs them) ; and strengthens them in mind

ad-dimicandum. Postëro dië movet castra (pl.)
to-fighting. In the following day he moves the camp

primã luce, et progressus circiter quatüor
in the first light, and having advanced about four

millia passuum, conspicatur multitudinem
thousands of paces, he beholds the multitude

hostium trans magnam vallem et rivum.
of the enemies beyond a great valley and rivulet.

Erat res magni periculi dimicare cum
It was a thing of great danger to contend with

tantis copiis iniquo löco. Tãmen
so-great forces in an unfavourable place. However

quoniam sciebat Ciceronem liberatum (-fuisse)
since he did know Cicero to have been delivered

obsidione que ëd existimabat remittendum
from the siege, and therefore did think to-be-relaxed

omnino de celeritate, consedit, et
altogether of speed, he sat-down (encamped), and

communit castra (pl.) löco quàm æquissimò
fortifies the camp in a place as most-favourable

pötest : atque etsi hæc
he is able (as favourable as possible) : and although these

ërant exigua per se, vix septem
were small by themselves, scarcely of seven

millium hominum, præsertim cum nullis
thousands of men, especially with no

impedimentis ; tãmo contrahit quàm-maximè
barraques : yet he contracts (them) as-much-as

pötest, ëo consilio, ut veniat in
he is-able, with that design, that he may come into
 summam contemptionem hostibus. Intërim
the highest contempt to the enemies. Meantime
 speculatoribus dimissis in omnes partes,
scouts being sent into all parts,
 explorat quo itinëre posset transire
he examines by what route he might be-able to cross
 vallem commodissimë.
the valley most-conveniently.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus præliis
In that day, trifling cavalry battles
 factis ad aquam, utrique continent sese
being made at the water, each keep themselves
 suo loco. Galli, quod expectabant
in their place. The Gauls (did so), because they did await
 ampliores copias, quæ convenërant nondum :
more-extensive forces, which had assembled not-yet :
 Cæsar, si fortë posset elicëre
Cæsar (did so), if perhaps he might be-able to entice
 hostes in suum locum citra vallem
the enemies into his-own place on this-side the valley
 simulatione timoris, ut contendëret
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend
 prælio pro castris (pl.) : si posset non
in battle before the camp if he might be-able not
 efficëre id, ut, itineribus exploratis,
to effect that, that, the routes being examined,
 transiret vallem que rivum cum minore
he might cross the valle and rivulet with less
 periculo. Primâ luce, equitatus hostium
danger. In the firs light, the cavalry of the enemies
 accedit ad castra (pl.), que committit prælium
approaches to the camp, and engages battle
 cum nostris equitibus. Cæsar consultò jübet
with our cavalry. Cæsar designedly orders

equites cedere que recipere se in
the cavalry to yield and to betake themselves into
 castra (pl.), simul jubet castra (pl.)
the camp, at-the-same-time he orders the camp
 muniri altiore vallo ex omnibus
to be fortified with a higher rampart from all
 partibus, que portas obstrui, atque
parts (sides), and the gates to be barricaded, and
 concursari quam-maximè in iis rebus
to be hurried as-much-as-possible in those things
 administrandis, et agi cum simulatione
to-be-managed, and to be acted with a pretence
 timoris.
of fear.

51. Omnibus quibus rebus hostes invitati
By all which things the enemies being invited
 transducunt copias, que constituunt aciem
lead-over (their) forces, and station (their) line
 iniquo loco. Verò nostris etiam
in an unfavourable place. But our (men) also
 deductis de vallo, accedunt propius;
being led-down from the rampart, they approach nearer;
 et conjiciunt tela ex omnibus partibus
and throw (their) darts from all parts
 intra munitionem: que præconibus circummissis,
within the fortification: and criers being sent-about,
 jubent pronuntiari; "Seu quis Gallus
they order (it) to be declared: "Whether any Gaul
 seu Romanus velit transire ad se
or Roman may will to pass-over to themselves
 ante tertiam horam, licere sine periculo:
before the third hour, to be-lawful without danger:
 post id tempus, potestatem non fore:"
after that time, the power not to-be-about-to-be:"
 ac contempserunt nostros sic, ut, portis
and they despised our (men) so, that, the gates

obstructis in speciem singulis ordinibus
being barricaded into appearance with single rows

cespitum, quòd videbantur non posse
of tufts, because they did seem not to be-able

introrumpere eâ, alii inciperent (imp. subj.)
to burst-into by that (way), others did begin

scandere vallum manu, alii
to climb the rampart by hand (by force), others

complere fossas. Tunc Cæsar, eruptione
to fill-up the ditches. Then Cæsar, a sally

factâ omnibus portis que equitatu
being made from all the gates and the cavalry

emisso, dat hostes celeriter in
being sent-out, gives (puts) the enemies quickly into

fugam; sic ut nemo omnino resisteret (imp. subj.)
flight; so that no-one at-all did resist

caussâ pugnandi, que occidit magnum
by cause (for the sake) of fighting, and he slew a great

numërum ex his, atque exiit omnes
number out-of these, and stripped all

armis.
from (their) arms.

52. Veritus prossequi longiùs, quòd
Having feared to pursue (them) farther, because

silvæ que paludes intercedebant; nèque videbat
woods and marshes did intervene; neither did he see

locum relinquì parvulo detrimento illorum;
the place to be left with trifling loss of them;

omnibus suis copiis incolumibus, pervenit
all his forces (being) safe, he arrives

eodem die ad Ciceronem. Admiratur turres,
in the same day to Cicero. He admires the towers,

testudines, que munitiones hostium, institutas.
mantlets. and fortifications of the enemies, prepared.

Legione productâ, cognoscit quemque
The legion being drawn-out, he knows (observes) every

decimum militem non relictum-esse sine
tenth soldier not to have been left without

vulnere. Ex omnibus his rebus, judicat,
a wound Out-of all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quamâ virtute,
with how-great danger, and with how-great valour,

res administratæ-sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat
affairs were managed. He praises

Ciceronem pro merito ejus, que
Cicero according-to the desert of him, and

legionem : appellat sigillatim centuriones que
the legion : he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognovêrat
tribunes of soldiers, whose valour he had known

fuisse egregiam testimonio Ciceronis.
to have been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certiùs de casu Sabini
He knows (learns) more-surely of the calamity of Sabinus

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postëro die,
and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habîtâ, proponit rem
an assembly being held, he sets-before (them) the affair

gestam : consolatur et confirmat milites :
carried-on : he consoles and encourages the soldiers :

döcet detrimentum, quod
he teaches (shows them) the loss, which

acceptum-sit (perf. subj.) culpâ et temeritate
has-been-received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore animo
of the lieutenant, (was) to-be-borne with more-even mind

hoc ; quòd beneficio
from this (on this account) ; because by the kindness

immortalium Deorum, et virtute eorum,
of the immortal Gods, and by the valour of them,

incommòdo expiato, nèque diutîna
the disadvantage being atoned-for, neither a lasting

lætatio relinquitur (pres. subj.) hostibus, neque
rejoicing is left to the enemies, nor

longior dolor ipsis.
longer grief to themselves.

53. Intērim fama de victoriā Cæsaris
Meantime the report of the victory of Cæsar

perfertur ad Labienum per Rhemos incredibili
is carried to Labienus by the Rhemi with incredible

celeritate; ut, quum abesset (imp.
expedition; (so) that, when (though) he was distant

subj.) quinquaginta millia passuum ab
fifty thousands of paces from

hibernis Ciceronis, que Cæsar pervenisset
the winter-quarters of Cicero, and Cæsar had arrived

(plup. subj.) èd post nonam horam diei,
thither after the ninth hour of the day,

clamor oriretur (imp. subj.) ante mediam noctem
a shout did arise before middle night

ad portas castrorum (pl.); quo clamore
at the gates of the camp; by which shout

significatio victoriæ que gratulatio fieret
an indication of victory and congratulation was made

(imp. subj.) Labieno ab Rhemis. Hæc famâ
to Labienus by the Rhemi. This report

perlatâ ad Treviros, Indutiomârus, qui
being carried to the Treviri, Indutiomarus, who

decreverat oppugnare castra (pl.) Labieni
had resolved to assault the camp of Labienus

postero die, profugit noctu que reducit
on the following day, flees by night and leads-back

omnes copias in Treviros. Cæsar remittit
all (his) forces unto the Treviri. Cæsar sends-back

Fabium cum legione in sua hiberna.
Fabius with the legion into their winter-quarters.

Ipsæ constituit hiemare trinis hibernis
He resolved to winter in triple winter-quarters

cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam : et
with three legions about Samarobriva : and
 quòd tanti motus Galliae exstiterant
because so-great commotions of Gaul had existed
 ipse decrevit manere totam hiemem ac
himself determined to remain the whole winter at
 exercitum. Nam, illo incommòdo de morte
the army. For, that disadvantage about the death
 Sabini perlato, fère omnes
of Sabinus being carried-through (them), nearly all
 civitates Galliae consultabant de bello :
the states of Gaul did deliberate about war :
 dimittebant nuntios que legationes in omnes
they did dismiss messengers and embassies into all
 partes ; et explorabant, quid consilii reliqui
parts ; and did examine, what of counsel the rest
 capèrent, atque unde initium belli
might take, and whence a beginning of war
 fieret ; que habebant nocturna concilia
might be made ; and they did hold nightly assemblies
 in desertis locis : nèque ullum tempus fère
in desert places : neither any time nearly
 totius hiemis intercessit sine sollicitudine
of the whole winter intervened without the anxiety,
 Cæsaris, quin accipèret (imp. subj.) aliquem
of Cæsar, but-that he did receive some
 nuntium de conciliis et motu
messenger (message) about the assemblies and disturbance
 Gallorum. In his factus-est certior
of the Gauls. In (among) these he was made more-sure
 ab Lucio Roscio legato, quem
(was informed) by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant, whom
 præfecerat decimæ-tertiae legioni, "Magnas
he had placed-over to the thirteenth legion, "Great
 copias Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ appellantur
forces of the Gauls of those states, which are called

Armoricæ, ^{convenisse} caussâ sūi
Armoric, to have assembled by cause (for the purpose) of himself

oppugnandi; ^{nēque} abfuisse
to-be-assaulted (of attacking him); nor to have been-distant

longiūs octo millia passuum ab suis
farther (than) eight thousands of paces from his

hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de
winter-quarters; but, a message being brought about

victoriâ Cæsaris, discessisse, adēo ut
the victory of Cæsar. to have departed, so that (their)

discessus videretur (imp. subj.) similis fugæ.
departure did seem like to a flight.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis
But Cæsar. the chiefs of each state

vocatis ad se, tenuit magnam partem
being called to himself, kept a great part

Galliæ in officio, aliàs territando,
of Gaul in duty, otherwise (one time) by alarming,

quum denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire quæ
when he did announce, himself to know what

fièrent (imp. subj.), aliàs
(things) were done. otherwise (another time)

cohortando. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas
by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state

in-primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter
particularly strong, and of great authority among

Gallos, conati (-sunt) interficere publico consilio
the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel

Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituërat regem
Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king

apud eos, (cujus frater Moritasgus,
at (among) them, (whose brother Moritasgus,

adventu Cæsaris in Galliâ, que cujus
at the approach of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose

majores obtinuërant regnum;)
ancestors had obtained kingdom (royal power);) quum

me præsensisset (pluperf. subj.) ac profugisset
 he had previously-understood and had escaped;
 (pluperf. subj.), insecuti usque ad
 having pursued (him) until to
 fines, expulerunt dōmo que
 the borders, they expelled (him) from home and
 regno; et legatis missis ad Cæsārem
 the kingdom; and ambassadors being sent to Cæsar
 caussā satisfaciendi, quum
 by cause (for the purpose) of making-satisfaction, when
 is jussisset (pluperf. subj.) omnem senatum
 he had ordered all (their) senate
 venire ad se, fuerunt non audientes dicto:
 to come to himself, they were not hearing to word
 valuit tantum
 (obedient to the order): it availed so-much (had such an
 āpud barbāros homīnes, aliquos
 effect) at (among) barbarian men, some (any)
 principes belli inferendi repertos-esse;
 chiefs of war to-be-brought-on to have been found;
 que attulit tantam commutationem voluntatum
 and it brought so-great a change of wills
 omniūbus, ut fēre nulla civitas fuērit
 to all, that nearly no state may have been
 non suspecta nobis, præter Ædūos et
 not suspected to (by) us, except the Ædui and
 Rhemos, quos Cæsar semper habuit præcipuō
 Rhemi, whom Cæsar always had in particular
 honore, altēros pro vetēre ac
 honour, the others (the former) for ancient and
 perpetuā fide erga Romanum populū; altēros
 constant faith toward the Roman people; the others
 p̄r recentibus officiis Gallīci
 (the latter) for recent duties of the Gallie
 belli: que scio haud, ne id sit
 war: and I know not, whether that may be

mirandum adĕd, cūm from
to-be-wondered-at *so (much),* *when (as well)*
 compluribus aliis caussis, tum maximè quòd
many *other* *causes,* *then (as)* *chiefly* *because*
 qui præferebantur omnibus gentibus
(those) *who* *were preferred* *to all* *nations*
 virtute belli, dolebant gravissimè, se
in bravery *of war,* *did grieve* *most-severely,* *themselves*
 depēdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,
to have lost *so-much* *of the opinion (reputation)* *of it;*
 ut perferrent imperia Romani
that *they should endure* *the commands* *of the Roman*
 populi.
people.

55. Verò Treviri atque Indutiomārus
 But *the Treviri* *and* *Indutiomarus*
 intermiserunt nullum tempus totius hiemis,
omitted *no* *time* *of the whole* *winter,*
 quin mitterent legatos trans Rhenum;
but-that *they might send* *ambassadors* *across* *the Rhine;*
 sollicitarent civitates; pollicerentur pecunias:
they might solicit *the states;* *they might-promise* *moneys:*
 dicērent, magnā parte nostri exercitūs
they might say, *a great* *part* *of our* *army*
 interfectā, minorem partem multò superesse.
having been slain, *a less* *part* *by-much* *to remain.'*
 Tāmen nēque potuit persuaderi ulli
However *neither* *it was-able* *to be persuaded* *to any*
 civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;
state *of the Germans,* *that* *it should cross* *the Rhine;*
 quum dicērent (imp. subj.) "se expertos
when *they did say* *"themselves* *having tried*
 bis, bello Ariovisti, et transitu
twice, *in the war* *of Ariovistus,* *and* *in the crossing*
 Tēchtherorum, non esse tentaturos fortunam
of the Tēchtheri, *not* *to be* *about-to-try* *fortune*

amplius." Indutiomārus lapsus
more." *Indutiomarus having slipped (been disappointed)*

hāc spe, nihilo-minus cœpit cogere copias,
in this hope, nevertheless began to collect forces,

exigere à finitimis, parare
to demand (them) from the neighbouring (states), to procure

ēquos, allicere exules que damnatos ad
horses, to entice exiles and condemned (persons) to

se magnis præmiis totâ Galliâ: ac
himself by great rewards in the whole Gaul: and

comparaverat jam tantam auctoritatem sibi
he had procured now so-great authority for himself

iis rebus in Galliâ, ut legationes
by those things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrerent (imp. subj.) undique ad eum;
did run-together from-every-side to him;

peterent (imp. subj.) gratiam atque amicitiam
did seek (his) favour and friendship

publicè que privatim.
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri

When he understood (it) to be come (that they came)

ultrò ad se; Senones que Carnutes
spontaneously to himself; the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientiâ facinoris ex alterâ
(to be) instigated by a consciousness of crime from the other

parte; Nervios que Atuaticos parare
(the one) part; the Nervii and Atuatici to prepare

bellum Romanis alterâ neque copias
war for the Romans from the other (side); neither forces

voluntariorum defore sibi, si
of volunteers to be about-to-be-wanting to himself, if

cœpisset (plup. subj.) progređi ex suis finibus;
he had begun to advance out-of his-own borders;

indicit armatum concilium. Hoc, more
he proclaims an armed council. This, by the custom

Gallorum, est initium belli; quò omnes
of the Gauls, is a commencement of war; whither all

pubères coguntur convenire armati,
full-grown (persons) are compelled to assemble armed,

communi lege: et qui ex iis
by a common (general) law: and (he) who out-of them

vēnit novissimus, affectus omnibus
comes newest (last), being affected (punished) with all

cruciatibus necatur in conspectu multitudinis.
tortures is put-to-death in sight of the multitude.

In eo concilio curat Cingetorigem, principem
In that council he takes-care Cingetorix, the chief

alterius factionis, suum generum, judicandum
of the other party, his-own son-in-law, to-be-judged

hostem (quem demonstravimus supra, secutum
an enemy (whom we have shown above, having followed

fidem Cæsaris, non discessisse ab eo),
the faith of Cæsar, not to have departed from him),

que publicat bona ejus. His rebus
and he confiscates the goods of him. These things

confectis, pronunciat in concilio se
being finished, he declares in the council himself

accersitum (-esse) à Senonibus et Carnutibus,
to have been sent-for by the Senones and Carnutes,

que compluribus aliis civitatibus Galliae:
and very-many other states of Gaul.

facturum (-esse) iter huc per
to be about-to-make (his) march hither through

fines Rhemorum, que populaturum agros
the territories of the Rhemi, and about-to-ravage the lands

eorum; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni
of them; and about-to-assault the camp of Labienus

prius-quàm faciat id: que præcipit, quæ
before-that he may do that: and he prescribes, what

vēlit fieri.
(things) he may will to be done.

57. Labienus timebat nihil de sūo
Labienus did fear nothing about his-own
 pericūlo ac legionis, quum contineret
danger and (that) of the legion, when he might keep
 sese castris (pl.) munitissimis et naturā
himself in a camp most-fortified both by the nature
 loci, et mānu; sed cogitabat
of the place, and by hand (art); but he did think
 ne-dimittēret quam occasionem rei
he should not-omit any opportunity of a thing
 gerendæ bēnē. Itaque oratione Indutiomāri,
to-be-carried-on well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus,
 quam habuerat in concilio, cognitā à
which he had held in the council, being known from
 Cingetorige atque propinquis ejus, mittit
Cingetorix and the relations of him, he sends
 nuntios ad finitimas civitates, que
messengers to the neighbouring states, and
 convocat equites undique. Dicit
calls-together cavalry from-every-side. He says (appoints)
 certam diem conveniendi iis. Intērim
a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime
 Indutiomārus vagabatur propè quotidie cum
Indutiomarus did wander (hover) almost daily with
 omni equitatu sub castris (pl.) ejus :
'all (his) cavalry under (near) the camp of him :
 aliàs ut cognoscēret situm
otherwise (one time) that he might know (learn) the situation
 castrorum (pl.) ; aliàs caussā
of the camp ; otherwise (another time) by cause (for
 the purpose) colloquendi aut territandi : omnes
of conferring or of alarming : all
 equites plerumque conjiciebant tela intra
(his) cavalry generally did hurl darts within
 vallum. Labienus continebant sūos intra
the rampart. Labienus did keep his (men) within

munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris
the fortifications, and did increase the supposition of fear

quibuscunque rebus potērat.
by whatsoever things he was-able.

58. Quum Indutiomārus accedēret (imp. subj.)
When Indutiomarus did approach

indies ad castra (pl.) majore contemptione,
daily to the camp with greater contempt,

equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos
the cavalry of all the neighbouring states, which

curavērat accersendos, intromissis unā
he had taken-care to-be-sent-for, being let-in in one

nocte, continūit omnes suos custodiis intra
night, he kept all his (men) in guards within

castra (pl.) tantā diligentīā, ut ēa res
the camp with so-great diligence, that that thing

posset enuntiari nullā ratione, aut perferri
might be-able to be told by no means, or to be carried

ad Treviros. Intērim, ex quotidianā
to the Treviri. Meantime, according-to daily

consuetudine, Indutiomārus accedit ad castra (pl.),
custom, Indutiomarus approaches to the camp,

atque consumit magnam partem diei ibi.
and wastes a great part of the day there.

Equites conjiciunt tela, et evocant nostros
(His) cavalry hurl darts, and call-out our

ad pugnam magnā contumeliā verborum.
(men) to battle with great insult of words.

Nulla responso dāto à castris (pl.), ubi
No answer being given from the camp, when

visum-est, discedunt dispersi ac dissipati
it seemed (proper), they depart dispersed and scattered

sub vesp̄rum. Labienus subitō
under (a little before) evening. Labienus suddenly

emittit omnem equitatum duabus portis:
sends-forth all the cavalry from two gates:

— præcipit atque interdicat, hostibus perterritis,
he prescribes and forbids, the enemies being dismayed,

atque coniectis in fugam, (quod videbat
and thrown into flight, (which he did see

före, sicut accidit) omnes petèrent
to be about-to-be, so-as it happened) all should seek

Indutiomārum unum, nē quis
(attack) Indutiomarus one (alone), nor any (one)

vulneraret quemquam, prius quam videret
should wound any-one, before than he should see

illum interfectum: quod nolēbat illum,
him killed: because he was-unwilling him,

nactum spatium morā reliquorum, effugere.
having got space by the delay of the rest, to escape.

Proponit magna præmia iis, qui
He proposes great rewards to those, who

occidērint: submittit cohortes subsidio
should have killed (him): he sends-up cohorts for aid

equitibus. Fortuna comprobāt consilium
to the cavalry. Fortune approves (favours) the plan

hominis; et quum omnes petērent (imp. subj.)
of the man; and when all did seek

unum, Indutiomārus deprehensus in vado ipso
the one, Indutiomarus being caught in the ford itself

fluminis interficitur, que caput ejus
of the river is slain, and the head of him

refertur in castra (pl.). Equites redeuntes
is carried-back into the camp. The cavalry returning

consectantur atque occidunt, quos possunt.
pursue and slay (those), whom they can.

Hæc re cognitā, omnes copiæ
This thing being known, all the forces

Eburonum et Nerviorum, quæ convenērant,
of the Eburones and of the Nervii, which had assembled,

discedunt: que paullò post id factum, Cæsar
depart; and a little after that being done, Cæsar

habuit Galliam quietiorem.
had Gaul more-tranquil.

LIBER SEXTUS

Book Sixth

The sixth book begins with a description of Caesar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senones and Carnutes. The Treviri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Caesar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Caesar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Caesar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies.

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem
Caesar for many reasons expecting (a) greater
 motum Galliæ instituit habere delectum,
commotion of Gaul determines to hold a levy
 per legatos, M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum,
through (his) lieutenants, M. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus,
 T. Sextium. Simul pētit ab Cneio
(and) T. Sextius. At the same time he requests from Cneius
 Pompeio, proconsule, quoniam ipse manēret
Pompey, proconsul, since he (himself) was remaining
 ad urbem cum imperio, causā
near the city with (military) command, for the sake of
 rei publicæ, jubēret quos
the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom
 rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consul ex
he had enrolled by oath (as) consul from

Cisalpinā Galliā convenire ad signa et
Cisalpine Gaul to assemble to the standards and
 proficisci ad se; existimans interesse magni
march to him; deeming (it) to be of great importance

ad opinionem Galliæ
regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might have)

etiā in reliquum tempus
also for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ vidēri tantas ut si quid
resources of Italy to [should] seem so great that if any

(neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,
(of) detriment [harm] should have been received in war,

id non modo posset sarciri brēvi tempore, sed
this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etiā augēri¹ majoribus copiis. Quod
could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

cum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et
when Pompey had granted both for the public interest and

amicitiæ, delectu celeriter confecto
for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made

per suos, tribus legionibus et
through his (lieutenants), three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem ex-
having been raised and brought to (him) before the winter had

actum, et numero earum cohortium, quas amisērat
passed; and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost

cum Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et
under Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina
by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.
and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,
Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium defertur a Treviris ad ejus propinquos.
the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos
They (do) not cease to incite (to warfare) the neighboring

Germanos et pollicēri pecuniam. Cum possent non
Germans and to promise money. When they could not

impetrare ab proximis,² tentant ulteriores.³
obtain (this) from (those) nearest they try the more remote.

Nonnullis civitatibus inventis, con-
Some states having been found (compliant), they

firmant⁴ jurejurando inter se, que
pledge (allegiance) by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniā; adjungunt sibi
give security by hostages for the money; they unite to themselves

Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus
Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty. Which [These]

rebus cognitis, cum Cæsar vidēret bellum
things having been learned, when Caesar perceived war

parari⁵ undique; Nervios, Aduatucos
to be [was] prepared on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis, esse in armis; Senones non
having been added, were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare
come to (his) command, and (that) they were exchanging

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Treviris crebris
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum sibi
embassies; he thought to [it must] be considered by himself

maturius de bello.
[he must consider] earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectā,
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed,

quattuor proximis legionibus coactis,
the four nearest legions having been assembled,

contendit improvise in fines Nerviorum; et
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

prius quam illi aut possent convenire, aut
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugĕre, magno numero pecoris atque hominum
escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque ĕā prædā concessā
having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coegit
to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

(them) venire in deditionem, atque dare
to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter
hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.
performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut
A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituĕrat, cum reliqui præter Senones,
he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus
the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,
this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponĕre omnia, transfert
although he might seem to postpone everything, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi erant
the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris). These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriā patrum
neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxĕrant⁶ civitatem, sed existimabantur
had united their state (with them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hāc re
to have been absent from this council. This thing

pronuntiātā pro suggestu, proficiscitur
having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in
on the same day with the legions into (the country of)

Senones, que pervenit eo magnis itineribus.
the Senones, and arrives there by long [forced] marches.

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat
His arrival having been learned, Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii jubet multitudinem convenire
the leader of this council orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,
into the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (to assemble)

prius quam id posset effici, Romanos
before it could be accomplished, (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessario desistunt sententiā, que
to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causā deprecandi;⁷
send ambassadors to Cæsar for purpose of interceding;

adeunt per Æduos, in fide
they approach (him) through the Ædui, under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitus. Æduis
of whom (their) state was formerly. The Ædui

petentibus, Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit
petitioning, Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives

excusationem, quod arbitrabatur æstivum
(their) excuse, because he judged (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non
time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,
of [for] investigation. A hundred hostages having been ordered

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes
he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eodem,
send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelā
having made use of the Remi as intercessors, under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.
of whom they were; they carry (back) the same answers.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites
Cæsar holds the council, and orders horsemen

civitatibus (dat).
(of) the states.

5. Hæc parte Galliæ pacatā, insistit
This part of Gaul having been pacified, he applies

totus et mente et animo in bellum
(himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum
of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus

proficisci secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis
to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus
commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiā, aut ex eo odio, quod meruerat.
irascibility, or from that hatred, which he had merited.

His rebus constitutis, quod habebat pro
These things having been settled, because he regarded (it) for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum⁸
[as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prælio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.
in battle, he considered in mind his other plans.

Menapii erant propinqui finibus Eburonum,
The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex
protected by continuous marshes and woods; who alone from

Galliā nunquam miserant legatos ad Cæsarem
Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse
concerning peace; he knew (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item
with [between] them (and) Ambiorix; also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam
he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat
to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He considered (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, prius quam
these auxiliaries ought to be detached from him, before

ipsum lacesendum bello; ne salute des-
(he) himself ought to be assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratā, aut abdëret se in Menapios,
despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii,

aut cogeretur congregi cum transrhenanis.
or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans).

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta
This plan having been formed he sends the baggage

totius exercitūs ad Labienum in Treviros, que
of the whole army to Labienus among the Treviri, and
 jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse
orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in
marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullā manu coactā,
the Menapii. They, no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio loci, confugiunt in silvas
relying on the protection of the place, retreat into the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eodem sua.
and marshes, and convey to the same place their property.

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,
Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus
the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor, and bridges

effectis celeriter, adiit tripartito;
having been constructed hastily, advances in three divisions;

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno
he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great

numero pecōris, atque hominum. Coacti
number of cattle, and of men. Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad
by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causā petendæ⁹ pacis. Ille, obsidibus
him, for the purpose of seeking peace. He, the hostages

acceptis, confirmat se habit-
having been received, declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent
[would] hold (them) in the number of enemies if they received

aut Amborigem, aut ejus legatos suis finibus.
either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories.

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,
These things having been settled he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis loco
the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.
of a guard; he himself marches against the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur a Cæsare, Tre-
While these (things) were being performed by Cæsar, the
 viri, magnis copiis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-
Treviri, great forces of infantry, and of cavalry having been
 tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ
assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one
 legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que
legion, which had wintered in their territories. And
 jam aberant ab eo non longius
already they were distant from him not farther (than)
 viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas
a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two
 legiones venisse missû Cæsaris.
legions [to] have arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.
 Castris positis a quindecim¹⁰ millibus
Their camp having been pitched distant fifteen thou-and
 passuum constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)
(of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]
 Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-
of the Germans. Labienus, the plan of the enemy having
 nito, sperans temeritate eorum
been learned, hoping (that) by the rashness of them
 fore aliquam
[by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some
 facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium
opportunity of fighting, a guard of five cohorts
 relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem
having been left for the baggage, marches against the enemy
 cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno
with twenty five cohorts, and great [much]
 equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille
cavalry, and fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand
 passuum intermisso. Erat, inter Labienum
paces having been left between. There was, between Labienus
 atque hostem, flumen difficili transitu, que
and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing, and
 præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo
with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes
to cross this, nor did he think (that) the enemy

transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.
would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.

Loquitur palam in concilio, quoniam Germani
He says openly in council, (that) since the Germans

dicuntur appropinquare sese non
are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not

devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas
(about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes

exercitūs, et motorum castra
of the army, and (that he) about to [would] move the camp

primā luce¹¹ postero die. Hæc deferuntur
at daybreak on the next day. These (words) are carried

celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero
quickly to the enemy, as from [of] the great number

equitatūs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos
of cavalry of the Gauls, nature compelled some

favēre Gallicis rebus. Noctu Labienus, tribunis
to favor the Gallic affairs. At night, Labienus, the tribunes

militum que primis ordinibus coac-
of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been

tis, proponit quid consilii sit sui;
assembled, sets forth what of plan is his [what his plan is]

et quo facilius det hostibus
and that the more easily he may give to the enemy

suspicionem timōris, jubet castra movēri
a suspicion of fear, he orders the camp to be moved

maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam fert consuetudo
with greater noise and confusion, than is the custom

Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem
of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure

similem fugæ. Hæc quoque in
like to a flight. These (things) also in [on account of]

tanta propinquitate castrorum deferuntur ad
so great [such] nearness of the camps are announced to

hostes per exploratores ante lucem.
the enemy through spies before daylight.

8. Vix novissimum agmen processerat extra
Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond
 munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se¹²
the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another
 ne dimittērent speratam prædam ex
(that) they should not cast away the hoped for booty from
 manibus; esse longum expectare
(their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for
 auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;
the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified;
 neque suam dignitatem pati ut non
(that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not
 audeant adoriri tantis copiis tam exiguam
dare to attack with so great forces so small
 manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;
a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;
 non dubitant transire
(having encouraged one another thus) they do not hesitate to cross
 flumen et committere prælium iniquo loco.
the river and to join battle in an unfavorable place.
 Labienus suspicatus quæ fore,
Labienus having suspected which [this] to be about to [would] be
 ut elicēret omnes citra flumen, progredie-
in order that he might lure all to this side the river, was march-
 batur placide usus eādem simulatione (abl.) itineris.
ing on quietly using the same pretence of a march.
 Tum, impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque
Then, the baggage having been sent forward a little, and
 collocatis quodam tumulo; "habētis," inquit,
having been placed on a certain eminence; "you have," says he,
 "milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenētis
"soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought; you hold
 hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;
the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place;
 præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam
exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals which
 sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori; existimate
so often you have displayed to your commander; suppose

eum adesse, et cernere hæc
 him to be present, and to observe these (deeds as if)

coram." Simul jubet signa con-
 in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be

verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et
 turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed, and

paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad
 a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to

impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.
 the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.

Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt
 Our men, a shout having been raised, quickly throw

pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter spem,
 (their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary to expectation,

viderunt quos credebant fugere ire ad
 they saw those whom they believed to be in flight come toward

se infestis signis, non potuerunt ferre
 them with hostile standards, were not able to sustain

impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,
 the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,

conjecti in fugam, petiverunt proximas
 having been thrown into flight, sought the nearest

silvas; Labienus consecutus quos equitatū,
 woods; Labienus having followed whom [them] with (his) cavalry,

magno numero interfecto, compluribus
 a great number having been slain, (and) very many

captis, recēpit civitatem, paucis
 having been captured, received the state (in submission), a few

diebus post. Nam Germani, qui veniebant
 days afterwards. For the Germans, who were coming

auxilio, fugā Trevirorum perceptā,
 for [as] aid, the flight of the Treviri having been learned.,

contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui
 betook themselves home. With them the relations

Indutiomari, qui fuerant auctores defectionis
 of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt

comitati eos excessere ex civitate.
 having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorig.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio.
allegiance from the beginning.

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapiis in
Cæsar, after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine;

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant
the one of which was, because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Trevis contra se; altera
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself; the other (that)

Ambiorix ne habēret receptum ad eos. His
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-
a little above this place, at which before he had

duxerat exercitum. Ratione notā atque
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutā, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days, by the great

studio militum. Firmo præsidio relicto ad
zeal of the soldiers. A strong guard having been left near

pontem in Trevis, ne quis motus oriretur
the bridge among the Treviri, lest any revolt might arise

subito ab iis, traducit reliquas copias que
suddenly from them, he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum. Ubii, qui ante dederant obsides,
the cavalry. The Ubii, who before had given hostages,

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt ad eum
and had come to a surrender send to him

causā purgandi sui¹³ legatos qui doceant,
for the purpose of clearing themselves ambassadors who may show

neque auxilia missa in Treviros ex
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suā civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;
their state, nor faith (had been) violated by them;

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne
they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant
in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus; si velit amplius obsidum,
the penalties for the guilty; if he desires more [of] hostages,

pollicentur dare. Causā cognitā,
they promise to give (them). The case having been investigated,

Cæsar reperit auxilia missa esse ab
Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;
the Suevi; he accepts the explanation of the Ubii; and

perquirat aditus que vias in Suevos.
carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior¹⁴ ab Ubiis, paucis
In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubii, a few

diebus pōst, Suevos cogēre omnes
days after (that) the Suevi to collect [are collecting] all

copias in unum locum, atque denuntiare
(their) forces into one place, and to give notice [are

iis nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperio,
giving notice] to those nations who are under their command.

ut mittant auxilia peditatūs que equitatūs.
that they send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentariam,
These things having been learned he provides a corn supply,

deligit idoneum locum castris; imperat
he selects a suitable place for the camp; he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecōra, que conferant
the Ubii that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans
all their (property) from the fields into the towns; hoping

barbāros atque imperitos homines adductos
(that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiā cibariorum posse deduci ad
by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi. Mandat
an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubi)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,
that they send numerous scouts among the Suevi,

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud eos.
that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,
They execute the orders and a few days having passed,

referunt; omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores
report; (that) all the Suevi after more certain

nuntii venerant de exercitu
messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepisse sese penitus ad
of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que
the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent. Esse
of (their) allies, which they had collected. To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ
a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis; hanc pertinere longè
is called Bacenis; this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,
into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibere injuriis que incursionibus Cheruscos
to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

a Suevis, que Suevos a Cheruscis; Suevos
from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci; the Suevi

constituisse expectare adventum Romanorum,
to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans,

ad initium ejus silvæ.
at the entrance of this forest.

11. Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum,
Since it has been reached [we have come] to this place,

videtur non esse alienum proponere
it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et
concerning the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter
in what (respects) these nations may differ among
 sese.¹⁵ In Galliā sunt factiones,
themselves. In Gaul (there) are factions,
 non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque
not only in all the states and
 pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis
cantons and parts, but also almost in the individual
 domibus; que principes earum factionum sunt
houses; and the chiefs of those factions are (those)
 qui existimantur habere, iudicio eorum
who are considered to have, in the judgment of them [their
judgment] summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que
the highest authority; to the will and
 iudicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que
judgment of whom, the management of all affairs and
 consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)
 institutum (esse) antiquitus causā ejus rei,
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing,
 ne quis ex plebe egēret auxilii (gen.)
that no one from [of] the people should lack assistance
 contra potentiores; enim quisque non patitur
against the more powerful; for each one does not suffer
 suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat
his own to be oppressed and overreached; nor if he should do
 aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.
otherwise would he have any authority among his (people).
 Hæc eadem ratio est in summā
This same plan [system] exists in the management [authority]
 totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divisæ sunt
of all Gaul. For indeed all the states are divided
 in duas partes.
into two parties.

12. Cum Cæsar vēnit in Galliam, Ædui erant
When Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were
 principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius. Hi,
the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. These

cum valērent minus per se,
 [The latter] as they prevailed less by themselves,
 (quod summa auctoritas erat in Æduis
 (because the supreme authority was among the Ædui
 antiquitus, que magnæ erant eorum
 anciently [of old], and great (states) were their
 clientelæ), adjunxerant Germanos atque
 tributaries), they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and
 Ariovistum sibi, que perduxerant eos ad
 Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to
 se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Vero
 themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed
 compluribus secundis prœliis factis, atque
 very many successful battles having been fought, and
 omni nobilitate Æduorum interfectā,
 all the nobility of the Ædui having been slain,
 antecesserant tantum potentiā, ut
 they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power, that
 transducērent ad se magnam partem clientium
 they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients
 ab Æduis, que accipērent ab iis
 [tributaries] from the Ædui, and received from these
 filios principum obsides, et cogērent jurare
 the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (them) to swear
 publice, se inituros¹⁶ nihil consilii
 publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design
 contra Sequanos; et possidērent partem
 against the Sequani; — and they kept a part
 finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que
 of the neighboring territory seized by force, and
 obtinērent principatum totius Galliæ. Divitiacus
 obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus
 adductus quā necessitate, profectus Romam
 led by which [this] necessity, having proceeded to Rome
 ad senatum causā petendi auxilii,
 to the senate for the purpose of asking aid,
 redierat re infectā. Adventu
 had returned his purpose unaccomplished. By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factā,
of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,
 obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus
the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old
 clientelis restitutis, novis comparatis
tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired
 per Cæsarem, (quod ii, qui aggregaverant
through Cæsar, (because these, who had united
 se ad eorum amicitiam, vidēbant se
themselves to their friendship, saw (that) they
 uti¹⁷ meliore conditione atque æquiore
to use [enjoyed] a better condition and more equitable
 imperio) reliquis rebus, eorum gratiā
government) (their) other affairs, their authority
 que dignitate amplificatā, Sequani
and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani
 dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant
had lost the sovereignty, (and) the Remi had succeeded
 in eorum locum; quod intelligebatur
in their place; as it was perceived
 quos¹⁸ adæquare gratiā apud
whom (that they) equaled (the Ædui) in favor with
 Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias
Cæsar, those, who on account of old hostilities
 poterant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,
could in no manner be united with the Ædui.
 dicabant se in clientelam Remis.
were declaring themselves under the protection to [of] the Remi.
 Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenēbant
They were protecting them carefully; and so they held
 novam et repente collectam auctoritatem. Res
a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs
 erat tum eo statu, ut Ædui haberentur
were then in this state, that the Ædui were held as
 longe principes, Remi obtinērent secundum
by far the principal (people), while the Remi obtained the second
 locum dignitatis.
place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Gallia sunt duo genera, eorum
In all Gaul there are two classes, of those
 hominum, qui sunt aliquo numero atque honore.
men who are of any account and honor.
 Nam plebs habetur pæne loco servorum,
For the common people are held almost in place of slaves,
 quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli
who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no
 concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,
council. Many when they are oppressed either by debt,
 aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriâ
or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]
 potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutum
of the more powerful, declare themselves in servitude
 nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ
to the nobles; all the same rights are over these, which
 dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus
(are) to masters over slaves. But of these two
 generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum
classes, the one is (that) of the Druids, the other (that)
 Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,
of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,
 procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-
they have charge of public and private sacrifices, (and) inter-
 pretantur religiones. Magnus numerus adolescentium
pret religion. A great number of youths
 concurrunt ad hos causâ disciplinæ, quæ ii,
resort to these for the purpose of training, and they
 sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam
(the Druids) are in great honor among them. For
 constituunt de fere omnibus controversiis
they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)
 publicis quæ privatis; et si quod facinus est
public and private; and if any crime has been
 admissum, si cædes facta, si est
committed, if (any) murder has been done if (there) is
 controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, iidem
a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries the same

decernunt que constituunt præmia que poenas.
decide (it) and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non
If any (person), either private or public, should not
 steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.
submit to their decree, they ban (him) from the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima poena apud eos. Hi
This is a very serious punishment among them. Those

quibus¹⁹ est ita interdictum, habentur numero
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,
of the impious and wicked; all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne
and flee from their approach and conversation; lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex
they receive some (of) evil from

contagione; neque jus redditur eis
contact; neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus honos communicatur. Autem
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds.

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio
But if many are equal election is made by the vote

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis
of the Druids; also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatū. Hi considunt in consecrato
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

loco, certo tempore anni in finibus
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc undique, omnes qui habent controversias,
Here from all sides all who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees.

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britannia,
(This) institution [cult] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain,
 atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul. And
 nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam
now, those who wish more perfectly to know this
 rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illo causā
thing [sect], often go there for the purpose
 discendi.
of learning (it).

14. Druides consueverunt abesse a bello, neque
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war, nor
 pendunt tributa unā cum reliquis; (habent vaca-
do they pay tribute together with the rest; (they have an exemp-
 tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium
tion from military service and immunity of [in] all
 rerum). Excitati tantis præmiis, multi conveniunt in
things). Excited by such advantages, many assemble for
 disciplinam, et suā sponte et mittuntur a
instruction, both of their own accord and also are sent by
 parentibus que propinquis. Dicuntur ediscere
parents and relations. They are said to learn by heart
 magnum numerum versuum ibi. Itaque nonnulli
a great number of verses there. Therefore many
 permanent vicanos annos in disciplinā; neque
remain twenty years under instruction; nor
 existimant esse fas mandare ea
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)
 litteris, cum utantur Græcis litteris in fere
to writing, although they use the Greek letters in nearly
 reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.
 Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons;
 quod neque velint disciplinam efferi in
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque eos qui discunt, confisos
the common people, nor (that) those who learn relying
 litteris, studere memoriae minus.
on writing, should cultivate (their) memory the less.

Quod fere accidit plerisque, ut praesidio
Which [This] ordinarily happens to most men, so that by the aid
 litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,
of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning,

ac memoriam. In primis volunt persuadere
and (their) memory. In particular they wish to inculcate
 hoc; animas non interire, sed post mortem
this; (that) souls [do] not (to) die, but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios²⁰ atque putant
(to) pass from one (body) to another and they think

hōc maxime excitari ad virtutem,
(that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] roused to courage,

metu mortis neglecto. Præterea disputant,
the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss,

et tradunt juventuti multa de sideribus,
and impart to the youths many things concerning the stars,

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi
and their motion, concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturā rerum, de
and the earth, concerning the nature of things, concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum.
the power and majesty of the immortal gods.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum
The other class is (of) the knights. These, when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante
is need, and any war occurs, (which before

adventum Cæsaris solēbat accidere fere quotannis,
the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year,

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut
that either they themselves might inflict injuries or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in bello;
might repel (them) inflicted) all are employed in the war;

atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus
and in proportion as each one of them is very noble

genere que copiis, ita habet plurimos ambactos
by family and resources, so he has very many vassals
 que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc
and clients about himself [him]. They have learned [know] this
 gratiam que potentiam unam.
authority and power only.

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given
 religionibus, atque ob eam causam,
to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)
 qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who
 versantur in proeliis que periculis, aut immolant
are engaged in war and dangers, either sacrifice
 homines pro victimis, aut vovent se
men for [as] victims, or vow (that they) themselves
 immolatu²¹ros; que utuntur Druidibus
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them); and they use the Druids
 (abl.) administris ad ea sacrificia; quod arbitrantur,
as performers of these sacrifices; because they think
 nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitā
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life
 hominis, numen immortalium deorum
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods
 non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia
can not otherwise be appeased; and they have sacrifices
 ejusdem generis instituta publice. Alii habent
of the same kind performed publicly. Others have
 simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum
images with [of] vast size, the limbs of which
 contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus;
woven with twigs they fill with living men;
 quibus succensis homines exanimantur
which [these] having been set on fire the men perish
 circumventi flammā. Arbitrantur supplicia
surrounded by flame. They think (that) the sacrifice
 eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in
of those, who have been taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquā noxā esse gratiora
 robbery, or some culpable act to be [are] more acceptable
 immortalibus diis, sed cum copia ejus
 to the immortal gods, but when a supply of this
 generis deficit, descendunt etiam ad supplicia
 kind is wanting they descend also to the punishment [sacrifice]
 innocentium.
 of the innocent.

17. Maxime colunt deum Mercurium; sunt
 They principally worship the god Mercury; there are
 plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem
 many images of him; they regard him (as) the inventor
 omnium artium; hunc ducem viarum
 of all arts; (they consider) him the guide of their journeys
 atque itinerum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam
 and marches; they believe him to have very great
 vim ad quætus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl.).
 power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade.

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et
 After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars, and
 Jovem, et Minervam. De his habent fere
 Jupiter, and Minerva. About these they have nearly

eandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;
 the same opinion, which (as) other nations; (that)

Appollinem depellere²² morbos, Minervam tradere
 Apollo drives away diseases, (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem
 the principles of crafts and of arts; (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regere
 holds the empire of the celestials; (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare proelio,
 wars. To him when they have resolved to engage in battle,

plerumque devovent, ea quæ ceperint
 often they vow, those (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint capta
 in war; the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in
 they sacrifice, (and) bring together the remaining things into

unum locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspicari
one place. In many states there may be seen

tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis locis.
piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

Neque sæpe accidit, ut quispiam, religione
Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion

neglectā, auderet aut occultare apud se
being disregarded, should dare either to conceal at his home

capta, aut tollere posita, que
the things captured, or to take away the things deposited, and

gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est
the most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.
for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos
All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

ab Dite patre, que dicunt id
from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this (account)

proditum²³ ab Druidibus. Ob eam causam
has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis temporis non
they determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium; et observant
by the number of days, but of nights; and observe

natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et
birth days, and the commencement of the months and

annorum, sic ut dies subsequatur noctem. In
of years, in such a way that the day may follow the night. In

reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hōc ab fere
other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all

reliquis, quod non patiantur suos liberos adire
others, that they do not suffer their children to approach

se palam, nisi cum adoleverint, ut
them publicly, except when they have grown up, so that

possint sustinere munus militiæ; que
they may be able to bear the duty of military service; and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate
they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistere in conspectu patris, in publico.
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab
As much money (as) the husbands have received from
 uxoribus, nomine dotis, tantas, æstimatione
wives, in the name of dower, so much, an estimate

factā, communicant cum dotibus ex suis
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratio conjunctura
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum
is kept, and the profits are reserved; whichever of them

superārit vitā. pars utriusque cum fructibus
shall have survived in life, the share of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervēnit ad eum. Viri
of the previous time falls to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que necis in uxores,
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives.

sicuti in liberos. Et cum pater
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res vēnit
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,²⁴ et si est
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque
proved they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all things,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi²⁵ vivis, inferunt
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc
into the fire, even animals; and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat
memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood

dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unā,
to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together

justis funeribus confectis.
(with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare
Those states (which) are believed to administer

suam rem publicam (sing.) commodius, habent
their public affairs more advantageously, have

sanctum legibus si quis acceperit
established by law (that) if any one shall have heard

quid a finitimis de re publicā rumore aut
anything from neighbors about the state by rumor or

famā, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve
by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor

communicet cum quo alio; quod cognitum est
communicate with any other, because it has been known

sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines
(that) often rash and inexperienced men

terrēri falsis rumoribus, et impelli
to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled

ad faciūs, et capere consilium de summis
to crime, and form a plan about the most important

rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que
things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and

produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu.
disclose to the people what they have decided to be of use.

Non conceditur loqui de re publicā nisi
It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter except

per concilium.
through the council.

21. Germani differunt multum ab hāc consue-
The Germans differ much from this way

tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsent
of life; for they have neither Druids, who preside over

divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis. Ducunt
sacred things; nor are they interested in sacrifices. They hold

numēro deorum eos solos, quos cernunt,
in the number of the gods, those only whom they perceive,
 et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur aperte,
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously,

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon; they have heard

reliquos ne quidem famā. Omnis vita
(of) the others not even by report. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing); ab parvulis student
of military affairs; from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiæ. Qui permanserunt diutissime
to labor and hardship. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter suos.
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hoc staturam ali,
(They) believe (that) by this the stature to be [is] increased,

hoc vires ali, que nervos
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Vero habuisse notitiam
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cujus rei est nulla
the most shameful things; of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quod perluuntur promiscue in
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl.) renonum, magnā parte corpōris nudā.
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major
They are not fond of agriculture; and the greater

pars eorum victūs consistit in lacte et caseo
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum modum
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac
of land, or his own boundaries; but the magistrates and
 principes, in singulos annos attribuunt quantum
chiefs, from year to year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que
(of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and

cognitionibus hominum, qui coierunt unā,
to the families of men, who have united together,

atque anno post cogunt transire alio
and in the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen.); ne capti
They offer many reasons for this thing; lest captivated

assiduā consuetudine commutent studium
by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturā; ne studeant
of [for] waging war for agriculture; lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant
to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent
the more humble from possessions; lest they may build

accuratius ad vitandos frigōra atque æstus; ne qua
with too much care for avoiding cold and heat; lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quā re factiones
desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant
and dissensions originate; that they may keep

plebem æq̄uitate animi, quum quisque
the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum
may see (that) his own means to be [are] equal with

potentissimis.
the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habēre
It is the greatest honor to the states, to have

solitudines quam latissimas²⁶ circum se,
deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc
their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos
a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedere, neque quemquam
from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), and (that) not any

(sing) audere consistere prope se.
(to) dare (to) settle near them.

Simul arbitrantur se
At the same time they think (that) they themselves

före tutiores hōc, timōre repentinæ
to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incursionis sublato. Cum civitas aut
invasion having been removed. When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert,
repels war waged against it, or wages war,

magistratus deliguntur, qui præsint ei bello,
magistrates are chosen, who may preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitæ que necis.
so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed
In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt
the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter suos, que minuant controversias.
justice among their (people), and settle disputes.

Habent nullam infamiam latrocinia, quæ fiunt
They hold as no disgrace robberies which are committed

extra fines cujusque civitatis, atque prædicant
beyond the boundaries of any state, and they assert

ea fieri causâ exercendæ
these [robberies] to be committed for the purpose of exercising

juventutis ac minuendæ desidiæ. Atque ubi quis
the youth and of preventing sloth. And when any one

ex principibus dixit in concilio, se
from [of] the chiefs has said in council [that he] himself

före ducem, ut qui velint
to be about to [will] be the leader, that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur; ii qui probant et
to follow may volunteer; those who approve both

causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine.
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude.

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum; que
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.). Putant non fas violare
things. They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quaque
their guests; those who have come to them for any

causā, prohibent ab injuriā, que habent
reason, they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que
inviolable; the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.

food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, cum Galli
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

interrent (imp. subj.) bella, ac propter
used to wage war, and on account of

multitudinem hominum que inopiam agri,
the multitude of men and the scarcity of land,

mitterent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.
used to send colonies across the Rhine.

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occuparunt ea loca
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famā; illi appellant quam Orcyniam).
Greeks by report; they call which [it] Orcynia).

Quae gens continet se iis sedibus
Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem
to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc
of [for] justice and (of) warlike honor, and now

permanent in eādem inopia, egestate,
they remain in the same privation [want] poverty [need],

patientiā, quā Germani; utuntur
(and) resignation in which [as] the Germans; they use

eodem victu et cultu corpōris. Propinquitas
the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitia transmarinarum
of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam
affairs provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que
and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis præiis ipsi ne quidem²⁷
conquered in many battles they do not even

comparant se virtute cum illis.
compare themselves in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ
The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est supra, patet iter novem dierum
has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito. Enim potest non finiri aliter,
for an unburdened (man). For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur
nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et
from [at] the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes. and

Rauracorum, que pertinet rectā regione
of the Rauraci, and it extends in a straight direction (along)

fluminis Danuvi, ad fines Dacorum et
the river Danube, to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis
of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different
regionibus a flumine, que attingit fines
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries
multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque
of many nations on account of its great extent. Nor
est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat
is (there) any one of this (part of) Germany, who may say
se aut adisse ad
himself (that he) either to have gone [has gone] to
initium ejus silvæ, cum processerit
the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded
iter sexaginta dierum, aut acceperit ex quo
a journey of sixty days, or may have heard from what
loco oriatur. Constat multa genera
place it begins. It is certain (that) many kinds
ferarum nasci in ea, quæ sint non visa in
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in
reliquis locis; ex quibus quæ maxime differant
other places; from which (those) that greatly differ
ab ceteris, et videantur prodenda
from the rest, and seem worthy to be handed down
memoriæ, sunt hæc.
to memory, are these.

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, a mediâ
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid
fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows
excelsius, que magis directum his cornibus,
higher, and more straight (than) those horns,
quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami
which are known to us. From the top of this branches
diffunduntur late sicut palmæ. Nature
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves). The appearance
feminæ que maris est eadem, eadem forma
of the female and male is the same, the same form
que magnitudo cornuum.
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.
There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pellium est
The shape of these, and the type of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt
very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; quæ sunt mutilæ cornibus, et habent
a little; and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis quæ articulis; neque
legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ
do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigere
by any accident they have fallen down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro
themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque
beds; they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modo paulum capiunt quietem;
so reclined merely a little while take rest;

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est
when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

a venatoribus quo consueverint recipere
by the hunters where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subruunt omnes eo
themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

loco a radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut
place at the roots, or they cut the trees so much that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.
the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Huc cum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,
Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores pondere, atque ipsæ
they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt una.
fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui
There is a third kind of these (animals). which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo
are called wild oxen. These are in size a little
 infra elephantos, specie et colore et
below the elephants, with the appearance and color and
 figurā tauri. Eorum vis est magna, et
form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)
 velocitas magna; parcut neque homīni neque feræ
speed great; they spare neither man nor beast
 quam conspexerint; hos captos foveis
that they have seen; these captured in pits
 interficiunt studiose. Adolescentes durant se
they kill with much zeal. The youths harden themselves
 hōc labore, atque exercent hōc genēre
by this task, and exercise by this kind
 venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos
of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most
 ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus
from [of] these, obtain great honor, the horns
 relatis in publicum quæ sint
having been brought into public which [that they] may be (as)
 testimonio. Sed ne quidem parvuli excepti
evidence. But not even the young (when) captured
 possunt assuescere ad homīnes, et
can become accustomed to men, and
 mansuefieri. Amplitudo et figura et species
be tamed. The size and shape and appearance
 cornuum differt multum a cornibus nostrorum
of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our
 boum. Hæc studiose conquisita
oxen. These (horns) zealously sought
 circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque
they mount from [on] the edges with silver, and
 utuntur in amplissimis epūlis pro
use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for
 pocūlis.
cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compērit per Ubios
Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian

exploratores, Suevos recepissee sese in
scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into
 silvas, longius, constituit non progredi,
the forests, further, resolved not to proceed,
 veritus inopiam frumenti, (quod, ut
fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as
 demonstravimus supra, omnes Germani student
we have shown above, all the Germans attend
 minime agri culturæ); sed ne tolleret
very little to agriculture); but that he might not take away
 omnino barbaris metum sui reditûs atque ut
altogether from the barbarians the fear of his return and that
 tardaret eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu,
he might retard their auxiliaries, having led back the army,
 rescindit ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat
he breaks down the farthest part of the bridge which touched
 ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum
the shores of the Ubii, to the length of two hundred
 pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)
feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge
 constituit turrim quattuor tabulatorum, que ponit
he constructs a tower of four stories, and places
 præsidium duodecim cohortium causâ tuendi
a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending
 pontis, que firmat eum locum magnis
the bridge, and strengthens this place with great
 munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco que præsidio,
fortifications. He placed over this place and garrison,
 C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, cum
C. Volcatius Tullus, a young man; he himself, when
 frumenta incipèrent maturescere, profectus ad
the crops began to ripen, having set out to
 bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam
the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]
 silvam, (quæ est maxima totius Galliæ, atque
forest, (which is the largest of all Gaul, and
 pertinet ab ripis Rheni que finibus
extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios, que patet amplius
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than
 quingentis millibus in longitudinem) præmittit
five hundred miles in length) sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si
L. Minucius Basilius, with all the cavalry, (to see) if
 possit proficere quid celeritate itineris,
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate temporis; monet ut
and by the favorableness of the time; he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat procul ejus
any intimation [sign] be made at a distance of his

adventus; dicit sese subsequi confestim.
coming; he says that he himself to [will] follow speedily.

30. Basilius facit ut imperatum est; itinere
Basilius does as was commanded; the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the expectation

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields;

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, cum in
horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).
all (other) things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret
For although it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quam
arrival was seen by the men before

afferretur famā ac nuntiis, sic fuit
it could be announced by report and messengers, yet it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento quod
 (of) great fortune, all the military equipment that
 habēbat circum se erepto, rhedis
 he had about him having been seized, his chariots

que equis comprehensis, ipsum
 and horses having been captured, (that) he himself

effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo quod,
 should escape death. But this was effected by the fact that,

ædificio circumdato silvā (ut
 the house (having been) surrounded by a wood (as

fere sunt domicilia Gallorum, qui causā
 generally are the dwellings of the Gauls, who for the sake

vitandi æstūs, plerumque petunt propinquitates
 of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity

silvarum ac fluminum), ejus comites que familiares
 of woods and rivers), his attendants and friends

sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum
 sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry

in angusto loco. His pugnantibus (abl.
 in a narrow place. (While) these (were) fighting,

abs.), quidam ex suis intulit illum in
 a certain one from [of] his (men) placed him on

equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna
 a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune

valuit multum, et ad subeundum pericūlum, et
 availed much, both for encountering danger, and

ad vitandum.
 for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias
 Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces

judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum²⁸
 on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged

prælio; an fuerit exclusus tempore et prohibitus
 in battle; or was cut off by time and prevented

repentino adventu equitum, cum
 by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when

credēret reliquum exercitum subsequi,
 he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following

est dubium, sed certe nuntiis dimissis
 is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent
 clam per agros jussit
 secretly through the fields [country] he ordered
 quemque consulere sibi; quorum pars
 that each one should take care of himself; of whom a part
 profugit in Arduennam silvam,
 fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes]. forest,
 pars in continentes paludes. Qui
 a part into the continuous marshes. (Those) who
 fuerunt proximi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt
 were nearest the Ocean, these hid
 sese in insulis, quas aestus
 themselves in the islands, which the tides
 consuērunt efficere. Multi egressi ex suis
 are accustomed to form. Many having emigrated from their
 finibus crediderunt se que omnia
 territories confided [consigned] themselves and all
 sua alienissimis. Catuvoleus rex dimidiæ
 their (property) to entire strangers. Catuvoleus king of the half
 partis Eburonum qui inierat consilium
 part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel
 unā cum Ambiorige, jam confectus ætate,
 together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,
 quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut
 since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or
 fugæ, detestatus Ambiorigem omnibus
 of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)
 precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii,
 imprecations who [since he] had been the author of this plan [design],
 exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est
 killed himself by yew (leaves), (of which (tree) there is
 magna copia in Galliā que Germaniā).
 a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).

32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et
 The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and
 numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones
 the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem
and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar

oratum ne ducëret se in numero
to pray that he would not consider them in the number

hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium
of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all

Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse
the Germans, who were on this side of the Rhine to be

unam; se cogitasse nihil
[was] one [the same]; (that) they to have [had] thought nothing

de bello, misisse nulla auxilia
about war, (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries

Ambiorigi. Cæsar, re exploratâ
to Ambiorix. Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated

quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui
by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any

Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugâ ut
Eburones had come to them from flight that

reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,
they should be brought back to him. If they did so,

negavit se violaturum eorum
he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their

fines. Tum copiis distributis in
territories. Them (his) forces having been distributed into

tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum
three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions

Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est
to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is

fere in mediis finibus Eburonum, ubi
nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where

Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ
Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose

hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum
of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only

reliquis rebus, tum quod munitiones
for the other things, but also because the fortifications

superioris anni manebant integræ, ut
of the preceding year were remaining entire, (so) that

sublevaret laborem militum; reliquit præsidio
he might lighten the labor of the soldiers; he left for [as] a guard

impedimentis quattuor-decimam legionem, unam
to the baggage the fourteenth legion, one

ex iis tribus, quas proxime conscriptas,
of those three, which lately (having been) enrolled,

traduxerat ex Italiā. Præfēcit ei legioni
he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit
and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.
(him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercitu partito, jubet T. Labienum
The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus adversus
to march with three legions in the direction of

Oceanum, in eas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.
the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii.

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numēro legionum
He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum eam regionem,²⁹ quæ adjacet
for devastating that district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis
the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod
resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam que extremas partes
flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quo audiebat
of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorigem profectum cum paucis equitibus.
Ambiorix to have [had] gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum
On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

septimum diem post; ad quam diem sciebat
(on) the seventh day afterwards; on which day he knew

frumentum debēri ei legioni, quæ
(that) grain to be [was] due to this legion. which

relinquebatur in præsidio. Hortatur Labienum que
was left in garrison. He urges Labienus and

Trebonium revertantur ad eam diem, si
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facere commodo rei publicæ, ut,
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capere
of the enemy having been ascertained, they may be able to take

aliud initium belli.
[adopt] another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus supra, nulla certa
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

mānus, non præsidium, non oppidum, quod
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defendēret se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdita vallis, aut
all directions. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, offered

aliquam spem præsidii aut salutis, consederat.
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled.

Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res
These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing

requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in
[condition] required great care, not in

tuendā summā (abl.) exercitūs (enim nullum
protecting the main body of the army (for no

periculum, universis, poterat accidere ab
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterritis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat
soldiers; which thing [this condition] however in part pertained

ad salutem exercitūs. Nam et cupiditas prædæ
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longius, ac silvæ incertis
enticed many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itineribus prohibebant adire
and hidden paths prevented (them) to advance [from

confertos. Si vellet negotium confici
advancing] close together. If he wished the business to be finished,

que stirpem sceleratorum hominum interfici,
and a race of infamous men to be exterminated,

plures manus dimittendæ, que milites
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos
to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitûs postulabat, locus ipse erat
of the Roman army demanded, the place itself was

præsidio barbâris; neque dæerat
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

singulis audacia insidiandi ex occulto, et
to individuals the daring of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentia poterat provideri
of this nature as much as by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potius aliquid omitteretur
was provided so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, esti animi omnium
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quam nocere-
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.
be injured with any loss of soldiers.

Cæsar dimittit nuntios ad finitimas civitates;
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potius vita Gallorum
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls

periclitetur in silvis, quam legionariorum;
may be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

simul, ut magnā multitudine
(soldiers); at the same time, that a great multitude

circumfusā, stirps ac nomen civitatis
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinore. Magnus numerus
may be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celeriter convenit undique.
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebantur in omnibus partibus
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septimus dies appetebat,
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching,

ad quem diem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,
the baggage and the legion. Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantos
how much fortune can do in war, and how great

casus afferat. Hostibus dissipatis
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterritis, ut demonstravimus, erat nulla
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

manus, quæ afferret modo parvam causam
body of men, which might create only [even] a slight cause

timōris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones diripi, atque
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultro ad prædam.
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum;
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand (of) horse;

qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus Tencteros
they are the nearest to the Rhine, by whom [and by them] the Tencteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugā,
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

docuimus supra; transeuntes Rhenum navibus
we have shown above; crossing the Rhine in ships

que ratibus triginta millibus passuum infra eum
and boats thirty thousand paces below this

locum ubi pons perfectus erat, que præsidium
place where the bridge had been made, and the garrison

relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines
left by Cæsar, they enter the first [nearest] territories

Eburonum; excipiunt multos dispersos ex fugâ;
of the Eburones; they surprise many dispersed in flight;

potiuntur magno numero pecoris, cujus
they obtain possession of a great number of cattle, of which

barbâri sunt cupidissimi. Invitati prædâ
the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty

procedunt longius. Non palus, non silvæ,
they proceed farther. Neither swamp, nor woods,

morantur hos natos in bello que latrocinis.
impede these men born in war and plundering.

Quærunt ex captivis in quibus locis Cæsar
They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar

sit; reperiunt profectum longius, que
may be; they find (that) he has gone further, and

cognoscunt omnem exercitum discessisse.
learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed.

Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos
Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you

quibus jam licet esse fortunatissimis sectamini
to whom now it is allowed to be most fortunate follow

hanc miseram et tenuem prædam? Tribus horis
this wretched and trifling plunder? In three hours

potestis venire Aduatucam; huc exercitus Romanorum
you can come to Aduatuca; there the army of the Romans

contulit omnes suas fortunas; est tantum
has collected all its property; there is so little

præsidii, ut ne quidem murus possit cingi,
(of a) garrison, that not even the wall can be manned,

neque audeat quisquam agredi extra munitiones."
nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications."

(Hac) spe oblatā, Germani relinquunt
(This) hope having been offered, the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti erant;
in hiding the booty which they had obtained;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

duce cujus indicio cognoverant
(person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.

these things.

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsaris continuisset milites in
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summa diligentia, ac passus est ne
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quidem quemquam calonem egredi extra
even any camp follower to go beyond

munitionem), septimo die diffidens Cæsarem
the fortification), on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numero dierum,
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quod audiebat eum progressum longius,
because he heard (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus reditu afferebatur,
nor was any report of his return brought,

simul permotus vocibus eorum, qui
at the same time moved by the words of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pæne obsessionem si
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non liceret egredi ex castris;
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milibus,
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp),

novem legionibus oppositis, que maximo
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus dispersis ac pæne
cavalry, the enemy having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proximas segètes, inter quas et castra
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus relictis erant ægri in castris; ex quibus,
the legions had been left sick in the camp; of whom,

qui hōc spatio dierum convaluerant,
(those) who in this period of time had recovered,

circiter trecenti mittuntur sub vexillo unā;
about three hundred are sent under a standard together;

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna
moreover a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,
force of beasts of burden, that had remained in the camp,

sequitur, potestate factā.
follow (them), permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani
At this very time and by chance the German

equites interveniunt, quæ protinus eodem illo
horsemen arrive, and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venerant, conantur irrumpere in
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanā portā; nec visi sunt,
the camp at the decuman gate; nor were they seen,

(silvis objectis ab eā parte), prius
(a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side]), until

quam appropinquarent castris; usque eo, ut
they had approached the camp; even so, that

mercatores, qui tenderent sub vallo,
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

non habērent facultatem recipiendi sui.
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes pœrturbantur novā
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustinet
condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains

primum impetum; hostes circumfunduntur ex
the first attack; the enemy are spread out on

reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem aditum;
the other sides, [to see] if they could find some approach;

nostri ægre tuentur portas; locus
our (men) with difficulty defend the gates; the place

ipse per se que munitio defendit
itself through itself and the fortification defends

reliquos aditus; totis castris trepidatur, atque
the other approaches; in all the camp there is alarm, and

alius quærit ex alio causam tumultus; neque
one inquires of another the cause of the confusion; neither

provident quo signa ferantur, neque in
do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into

quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronuntiat
what part each one may assemble. One declares

castra jam capta, alius contendit,
(that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),

exercitu atque imperatore deleto,
the army and the commander having been destroyed,

victores barbaros venisse; plerique fingunt
the victorious barbarians (to) have come; the greater part form

novas religiones sibi ex loco, que
strange superstitions for themselves from the place, and

ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et
put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cotta and

Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus
Titurius, who fell in the same fortress. All

perterritis tali timore, opinio
(having been) alarmed by such fear, the belief

confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex
it confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from

captivo, nullum præsidium esse intus;
the captive, (that) no garrison to be [was] within;

nituntur perrumpere, que ipsi adhortantur
they endeavor to force an entrance, and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex
one another, lest they may let go so great a prize from
 manibus.
their hands.

38. P. Sextius Baculus, qui duxerat primum
P. Sextius Baculus, who had led the first
 pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem
company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention
 superioribus proeliis, relictus erat æger in præsidio,
in former battles, had been left sick in the garrison,
 ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,
and had been without food now the fifth day. He,
 diffusus suæ salutis ac omnium, inermis
mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed
 prodit ex tabernaculo; videt hostes
goes out from the tent; he sees (that) the enemy
 imminere, atque rem esse in
to be [are] pressing on, and that the affair to be [is] in
 summo discrimine; capit arma a proximis,
the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,
 atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus
and places himself in the gate. The centurions of that
 cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;
cohort which was on guard follow him;
 paulisper sustinent proelium unâ; animus
for a little while they sustain the battle together; his mind
 relinquit Sextium³⁰ gravibus vulneribus acceptis;
leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;
 tractus per manūs (pl.) ægre servatur.
dragged away by hand with difficulty he is saved.
 Hoc spatium interposito, reliqui confirmant
This period having been interposed, the others encourage
 sese tantum, ut audeant consistere
one another so much, that they dare take stand
 in munitionibus, quæ præbeant speciem
on the fortifications, and show the appearance
 defensorum.
of defenders.

39. Intērim frumentatione confectā,
In the meantime the foraging having been completed,
 nostri milites exaudiunt clamorem, equites
our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen
 præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto periculo
hasten on before, and ascertain in what great danger
 res sit. Vero hic est nulla munitio,
the matter is. But here there is no fortification,
 quæ recipiat perterritos. Modo conscripti
which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled
 atque imperiti militaris usūs convertunt ora ad
and unskilled in military practice turn faces to
 tribunum militum que centuriones; expectant
the tribune of the soldiers and centurions; they await
 quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam
what may be commanded by them. No one is so
 fortis, quin perturbetur novitate rei.
brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the strangeness of the affair
 Barbāri, conspicati signa procul,
[situation]. The barbarians, having seen the standards at a distance,
 desistunt ab oppugnatione; primo credunt
desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)
 legiones redisse, quas cognoverant ex
the legions have returned, which they had learned from
 captivis discessisse longius; postea, paucitate
the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness
 despectā, faciunt impetum, ex
having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]
 omnibus partibus.
all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumūlum
The camp followers run to the nearest high ground
 celeriter dejecti hinc, conjiiciunt se
(and) having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves
 in signa que manipūlos; eō māgis
among the standards and companies; so much the more
 perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent
they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunĕo facto celeriter
 (that) a wedge having been formed they should quickly
 perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,
 break through, and as the camp is so near,
 etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,
 although some part having been surrounded might fall,
 at confidunt reliquos posse
 still they trust (that) the remainder to be able [can]
 servari. Alii ut consistant in
 (to) be saved. Others (advise) that they take stand on
 jugo, atque omnes ferant eundem casum.
 the hill-top, and (that) all undergo the same fate.
 Veteres milites, quos docuimus
 The veteran soldiers, whom [who] we have mentioned
 profectos una sub vexillo non
 (to have) marched out together under a standard do not
 probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,
 approve this. Therefore having encouraged one another,
 C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui præpositus erat
 C. Trebonius, a Roman knight, who had been placed over
 eis, duce, perrumpunt per medios³¹
 them, being their commander, they break through the middle
 hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt
 [central] enemies and all to one [a man] arrive
 incolumes in castra (acc.). Calones que
 safe in the camp. The camp followers and
 equites subsecuti hos eodem impetu,
 the horsemen having followed these with the same dash,
 servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui
 are saved by the bravery of the soldiers. But those, who
 constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo
 had taken stand on the hill-top, even now no
 usu militaris rei (sing.) percepto, neque
 experience of military affairs having been acquired, neither
 potuerunt permanēre in eo consilio, quod proba-
 were able to persist in this design, which they had
 verant, ut defendērent se superiore
 approved, that they should defend themselves in the higher

loco, neque imitari eam vim que
position, nor (were able) to imitate that vigor and

celeritatem, quam viderant profuisse
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserunt in iniquum locum.
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causā virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amitterent laudem militaris
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rei (sing.) partam ante conciderunt pugnantes
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissime. Pars militum, hostibus
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolūmis, præter spem;
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation;

pars circumventa a barbāris periit.
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratā, quod videbant nostros
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum eā prædā quam
themselves beyond the Rhine, with that booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

eā nocte, cum C. Volusenus venisset ad
on this night, when C. Volusenus had come to
 castra, missus cum equitatu, non
the camp, having been sent with the cavalry, he could not
 faceret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum
make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with
 exercitu incolūmi. Timor præoccupaverat animos
the army safe. Fear had preoccupied the souls
 omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatā,
of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced,
 dicērent equitatum tantum recepisse se
they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned
 ex fugā, omnibus copiis deletis,
from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed,
 que contendērent Germanos ne fuisset
and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been
 oppugnatu³² castra exercitu
about to assault [would not have assaulted] the camp (if) the army
 incolūmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus
being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival
 sustūlit.
removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventū
He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty
 belli, questus unum, quod cohortes essent
of war, complained (of) one (thing), that the cohorts had been
 missæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit
sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out
 ne quidem minimum locum debuisse
(that) not even the least opportunity ought
 relinqui casui; fortunam potuisse
to be left to chance; fortune had been able (to do)
 multum in repentino adventu hostium, etiam multō
much by the sudden arrival of the enemy, also much
 amplius, quod avertisset barbāros ab
more, because she had turned away the barbarians from
 vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium
the rampart itself and the gates of the camp. Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maxime admirandum,
which [these] things it seemed most to be wondered at

quod Germani, qui transierant Rhenum eo
that the Germans, who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,
design, that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix,

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt
having been led to the camp of the Romans brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium.
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos³³
Cæsar again having departed to harass

hostes, magno numero coacto ex
the enemy, a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,
parts. All the villages and all the buildings,

quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; præda
which any one had noticed were set on fire; spoils

agebatur ex omnibus locis; frumenta non
were driven off from all places; the corn not

solum consumebantur (pl.) a tantâ multitudine
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum, sed etiam procubuerant
of cattle and men, but also had fallen down

tempore anni atque imbribus; ut si qui
by the time of year and the rains; so that if any

etiam in præsentia occultassent se, tamen
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves, yet

videretur his perendum³⁴ inopiâ omnium
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum, exercitu deducto. Ac sæpe
things, the army having been withdrawn. And often

ventum est in eum locum, equitatu diviso
it came to this pass, the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi
so much into [in] all directions, that the prisoners

contenderent Ambiorigem non modo visum
declared (that) Ambiorix was not only seen
 ab se in fugā, sed etiam nec abisse
by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone
 plane ex conspectu; ut spe consequendi
clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking
 illatā, atque infinito labore
(him) having been raised, and an immense labor
 suscepto, qui putarent se
having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they
 ituros summam gratiam a Cæsare, pæne
would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly
 vincērent naturam studio, que semper paulum
conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always but little
 videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;
seemed to be wanting to complete success;
 atque ille eripēret se latēbris ac silvis
but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods
 aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu petēret alias
or forests, and concealed by night he sought other
 regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio
regions, and places, with no greater guard
 equitum quam quattuor, quibus solis audebat
of horsemen than four, to whom alone he dared
 committēre suam vitam.
to entrust his life.

44. Regionibus vastatis tali modo,
The country having been laid waste in such manner,

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum
Cæsar leads back the army with the loss of two

cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilio
cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

indicto in eum locum Galliæ, instituit
having been summoned into this part of Gaul, he resolved

habēre quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum
to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiā pronun-
and Carnutes; and a very severe sentence having been

ciatā de Accone, qui fuerat princeps
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom

majorum.³⁵ Nonnulli veriti iudicium profugerunt;
of our ancestors. Some afraid of a trial fled;

cum interdixisset aquā atque igni quibus,
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis duas legiones ad fines
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, reliquas
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones, and

frumento proviso exercitui, ut
corn having been provided for the army, as

instituerat profectus est in Italiam ad agendos
he had resolved he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.
the assemblies.

LIBER SEPTIMUS

Seventh Book

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Caesar in the city. Caesar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Caesar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Caesar. In spite of Caesar's efforts the Aedui join the revolt. Caesar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Caesar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Caesar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Caesar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Caesar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Caesar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliā	quietā,	Cæsar	ut	constituerat	
<i>Gaul</i>	<i>being at peace,</i>	<i>Cæsar</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>he had resolved</i>	
proficiscitur	in	Italiam	ad	agendos	conventus;
<i>proceeds</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>Italy</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>the assemblies;</i>
ubi	cognoscit	de	cæde	P. Clodii,	que
<i>there</i>	<i>he learns</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>the murder</i>	<i>of P. Clodius,</i>	<i>and</i>
factus	certior	de	consulto	Senatūs,	
<i>having been made</i>	<i>acquainted</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>the decree</i>	<i>of the Senate.</i>	

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,
that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,

instituit habere delectum totā provinciā. Eæ
he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.
things quickly are reported into Transalpine Gaul.

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,
The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscere,) Cæsarem
(as the case seemed to demand,) (that) Cæsar

retinēri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse
was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi
come to the army in such dimensions. Incited

hāc occasione, qui jam ante dolērent
by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,
(that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilia de bello liberius
begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audacius. Principes Galliæ,
and more daringly. The principal men of Gaul,

conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus
councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte
and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse
of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidēre ad ipsos; miserantur communem
occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliæ; deposcunt omnibus pollicitationibus
lot of Gaul; they demand with all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,
and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem
and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

pericūlo sui capitis.¹ Dicunt in primis
at the peril of their lives. They say especially

rationem habendam ejus, ut
 (that) care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that
 Cæsar intercludatur ab exercitu, priusquam eorum
 Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their
 clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,
 secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy,

quod neque legiones, imperatore absente,
 because neither the legions, the commander being absent,
 audeant egrēdi ex hibernis, neque possit
 dare to come forth from winter quarters, nor can

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.
 the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.

Postremo præstare interfici in acie,
 Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,

quam non recuperare vetērem gloriam
 than not to recover (their) ancient glory

belli que libertatem quam acceperint a
 of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from

majoribus.
 the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur
 These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim

se recusare nullum periculum causā
 (that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake

commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes
 of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et
 from [of] all about to [would] make war; and

quoniam in præsentia possent non cavere
 since at the present (time) they could not give security

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,
 among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged.

petunt ut sanciantur jurejurando ac fide,
 they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo
 the military standards having been stacked together, (by which

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur)
 usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed])

ne initio belli facto,
 lest the commencement of the war having been made,
 deserantur a reliquis. Tunc, Carnutibus
 they should be deserted by the others. Then, the Carnutes
 collaudatis, jurejurando dato ab
 having been applauded, the oath having been given by
 omnibus qui aderant, tempore ejus
 all who were present, (and) the time of [for] this
 rei constituto, disceditur² ab
 movement having been determined, it is departed[they depart] from
 concilio.
 the council.

3. Ubi ea dies vēnit, Carnutes, Cotuato et
 When this day came, the Carnutes, Cotuatus and
 Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,
 Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,
 concurrunt Cenabum, que signo
 assemble hastily at Cenabum [Orleans], and the signal
 dato, interficiunt Romanos cives,
 having been given, kill the Roman citizens,
 qui constiterant ibi causā negotiandi, in
 who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among
 iis C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,
 them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,
 qui jussu Cæsaris, præerat frumentariæ rei;
 who by order of Cæsar, presided over the grain supply;
 que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter
 and they plunder their property. The report quickly
 perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ubi
 is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when
 major atque illustrior res incidit, significant
 a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate
 per agros que regiones clamore; alii
 (it) through the lands and territories by a shout; others
 deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,
 in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest
 ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent
 as then happened. For what (things) had been done

Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),¹
at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,
 audita sunt ante primam vigiliam⁴ confectam,
were heard before the first watch was completed.
 in finibus Arvernorum, quod est spatium
in the territories of the Arverni, which is a space
 circiter centum et sexaginta millium
[distance] of about a hundred and sixty thousand
 passuum.
paces.

4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,
There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,
 filius Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiae,
the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,
 (cujus pater obtinuerat principatum totius Galliae,
(whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,
 et ob eam causam, quod appetebat regnum
and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign
 interfectus erat ab civitate), suis clientibus
power had been put to death by the state), his clients
 convocatis, facile incendit eos. Ejus
having been called together, he easily inflamed them. His
 consilio cognito concurritur⁵ ad arma.
design having been known they rush to arms.
 Prohibetur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que
He is opposed by Gobannitio his uncle, and
 reliquis principibus, qui non existimabant
the other chiefs, who did not think (that)
 hanc fortunam temptandam; expellitur
this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted; he is expelled
 ex oppido Gergoviā. Tamen non
from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not
 desistit, atque in agris habet delectum
desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy
 egentium ac perditorum. Hæc manu coac-
of needy and desperate (men). This band having
 ta, quoscunque ex civitate adit
been collected, whomsoever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causā communis libertatis;
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;

que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate suos adversarios a quibus ejectus erat
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulo ante. Appellatur rex ab suis;
a little before. He is called king by his (followers);

dimittit legationes quoquoversus; obtestatur ut
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

maneant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,
the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,
the Aulerci, the Lemovici, the Andes, and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad eum consensu omnium. Quā potestate
on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power

oblata, impērat obsides omnibus iis
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus; jubet certum numērum militum
states; he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celeriter adduci ad se; constituit quantum
speedily to be brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis studet equitatu.
before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiae addit summam severitatem
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commisso
the hesitating. For a greater crime having been committed

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;
he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviore causā, auribus desectis, aut
for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singulis oculis (plural) effosis, remittit
a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et
home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterreant alios magnitudine poenae.
may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercitu coacto celeriter his
An army having been assembled quickly by these

suppliciis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem
punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in
of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.
the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad
On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum
the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius
aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædui de consilio
to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad
of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatūs que peditatūs
the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui cum venissent ad flumen
to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,
Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi
having delayed a few days there, and not having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renuntiant
to cross the river, return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus⁶ cognoverint
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent
this plan to have [had] been, that if they had crossed

flumen, ex unā parte ipsi, alterā
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges], on the other

Arverni circumsteterent se. Ne fecerint
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eā causā, quam pronuntiāverunt
this from [for] that reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiā, quod nihil
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur ponendum esse
is clear to us, it does not seem (that it) ought to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernīs.
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nuntiatis Cæsari, in Italiam,
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

cum jam ille intelligeret urbanas res
since already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute⁷
had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eo afficiebatur magnā
When he had arrived there he was troubled with the great

difficultate, quā ratione posset pervenire
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he could reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcesseret legiones in
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicaturas
the province, he understood (that) they about to [must] fight

proelio in itinere, se absente; si ipse
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendēret ad exercitum, videbat, suam
should hasten to the army, he saw (that) his
 salutem recte committi ne quidem
safety properly to [could] be committed not even
 iis, qui eo tempore viderentur
to those, who at this time were appearing
 pacti.
(to be) peaceable.

7. Intērim Lucterius Cadurcus missus
In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent
 in Rutenos conciliat eam civitatem Arvernīs.
to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arveni.
 Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit
Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali, he receives
 obsides ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-
hostages from both; and a large band having been
 actā, contendit facere eruptionem in Provinciam
collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province
 versus Narbonem. Quā re nuntiātā,
toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,
 Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus
Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all
 consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.
(other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.
 Cum venisset eō, confirmat timentes, constituit
When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places
 præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis
garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci
 Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ
Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which
 loca erant finitima hostibus; jubet partem copiarum
places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces
 ex Provinciā que supplementum, quod adduxerat
from the province and the recruits, which he had brought
 ex Italiā convenire in Helvios qui contingunt
from Italy to assemble among the Helviî who border on
 fines Arvernorum.
the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterio jam
These things having been arranged, Lucterius now
 represso et remoto, quod putabat
having been checked and removed, because he thought (if)
 periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-
dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]
 ficiscitur in Helvios. Etsi mons Cebenna,
marches into the Helvii. Although mount Cevennes,
 qui discludit Arvernos ab Helviiis impediēbat
which separates the Arverni from the Helvii blocked
 iter altissimā nive durissimo tempore
the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]
 anni, tamen nive sex pedum in altitudinem
of the year, nevertheless the snow six feet in height [depth]
 discussā, atque viis ita patefactis,
having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,
 pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo
he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost
 labore militum. Quibus oppressis,
labor of his soldiers Who [They] (having been) astounded,
 inopinantibus, quod existimabant se
taken unawares, because they thought (that they) themselves
 munitos Cebennā ut muro, ac eo
(were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this
 tempore anni semitæ unquam patuerant
season of the year the paths never had lain open
 homini ne singulari quidem, imperat
to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands
 equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissime
the cavalry, that they should roam as far as
 possint, et inferant quam maximum
they may be able, and should occasion the very greatest
 terrorem hostibus. Hæc celeriter perferuntur
fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced
 ad Vercingetorigem famā ac nuntiis; quem
to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom [him]
 omnes Arverni perterriti circumsistunt atque
all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu
 entreat that he look out for their property, nor
 patiat^r se diripi ab hostibus,
 suffer them to be plundered by the enemy
 præsertim cum videat omne bellum trans-
 especially when he sees (that) all the war has been trans-
 latum ad se. Precibus quorum⁸ per-
 ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom [them] having been
 motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus
 stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges
 versus in Arvernos.
 towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in iis locis
 But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places
 quod⁹ præceperat opinione, hæc
 because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these
 ventura usu de Vercingetorige,
 (things) would come in use [to pass] regarding Vercingetorix,
 discēdit ab exercitu per causam cogendi
 departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising
 supplementi que equitatū; præfēcit Brutum,
 recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,
 adolescentem, iis copiis; monet hunc, ut
 a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that
 equites pervagentur quam latissime in
 the cavalry should range about as far as possible into
 omnes partes, se daturum operam
 all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care
 ne absit ab castris longius
 that he may not be absent from the camp longer (than)
 triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervēnit
 three days. These things having been arranged, he arrives
 Viennem maximis itineribus quam potest,
 at Vienna [Vienna] by as great marches as he is able,
 suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentem
 his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh
 equitatum, quem præmiserat eō multis
 [newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many

diebus ante, itinēre intermisso neque
days before, the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno, contendit per fines
by day nor by night, he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ubi duæ legiones
of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de
were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suā salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,
his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Cum pervenisset eō mittit
(it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum
to the other legions, and gathers all into one

locum, prius quam possit nuntiari
place, before it is possible [can] (to) be announced

Arvernīs de ejus adventu. Hæc re
to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitā, Vercingetorix rursus reducit
having been known, Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercitum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus
army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos
to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico proelio, Cæsar collocaverat
conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuerat Æduis, instituit oppugnare.
there, and had assigned to the Ædui, he resolved to assault (it).

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem
This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilium;¹⁰ si contin-
to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan; if he should

eret legiones in uno loco reliquam partem
keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,
of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod videretur
all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in eo
no protection to have been [had been] placed in that place
 amicis; sin educeret maturius ex
for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from
 hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariā,
winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,
 subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare
transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better
 tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quam tantā
however to endure all difficulties, than so great
 contumeliā acceptā, alienare voluntates
an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will
 omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos
of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui
 de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,
about transporting provisions he sends ahead to the Boii,
 qui doceant de suo adventu, que
(some) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and
 hortentur ut maneant in fide, atque
may exhort (them) that they remain in alliance, and
 sustineant impetum hostium magno animo.
resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].
 Duabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius
Two legions, and the baggage of the entire
 exercitus relictis Agendici, proficiscitur
army having been left at Agendicum [Sens], he marches
 ad Boios.
to the Boii.

11. Cum altëro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum
When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum
 oppidum Senonum, instituit oppugnare,
[Beauns] a town of the Senones, he resolved to attack (it),
 ne relinquëret quem hostem post se,
lest he might leave any enemy behind him, (and)
 quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariā; que
that he might use more easily the grain supply; and
 biduo circumvallavit id, terio die legatis
in two days he invested it. on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppido de deditione,
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficeret ea, ut ipse
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things, that he himself

faceret iter quam primum. Proficiscitur,
might make a march as soon as possible. He sets out,

Cenabum Carnutum, qui, nuntio de
to Cenabum of the Carnutes, who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primum
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, causā tuendi Cenabi,
having been brought, for the purpose of defending Cenabum,

comparabant præsidium quod mitterent eō, cum
were preparing a garrison which they might send there, since

existimarent eam rem ductum iri
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longius. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppidum, exclusus
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempore diei, differt oppugnationem in
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

posterum; imperat militibus quæque
the next (day); he orders to [from] the soldiers whatever

sint usui ad eam rem; et quod pons
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

fluminis Ligëris continebat oppidum Cenabum,
of the river Loire joined the town (of) Cenabum,

veritus ne profugerent ex oppido noctu,
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet duas legiones excubare in armis.
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses egressi ex oppido silentio
The people of Cenabum? having departed from the town in silence

paulo ante mediam noctem coeperunt transire
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quā re nuntiātā per
the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jusserat esse
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potitur oppido (abl.); perpaucis¹¹
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numero hostium desideratis quin
from [of] the number of the enemy having been lacking but that

cuncti caperentur, quod angustiae (pl.) pontis
the whole should be taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Diripit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam
He pillages and burns the town; he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercitum Ligërim, atque
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervēnit in fines Biturigum.
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsar, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviam Cæsari. Ille instituerat oppugnare
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viā. Ex quo¹² oppido cum legati
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad eum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

que consuleret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficeret
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quā erat consecutus
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which he had won

pleraque, jubet arma proferri
the most, he orders the arms to be brought forth
 equos produci, obsides dari. Parte
the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part
 obsidum jam traditā, cum reli-
of the hostages already having been surrendered, while the other
 qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis
things were being executed, the centurions and a few
 militum intromissis, qui conquirent
of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect
 arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium qui
the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy which
 antecesserat agmen Vercingetorigis, est visus procul;
had preceded the army of Vercingetorix, was seen at a distance;
 quem¹³ atque simul oppidani conspexerunt,
which as soon as the townsmen saw,
 atque venerunt in spem auxilii, clamore
and came to the hope of aid, a shout
 sublato cœperunt capere arma, claudere
having been raised they began to take arms, to shut
 portas, complere murum. Centuriones in
the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The centurions in
 oppido, cum intellexissent ex significatione
the town, when they had understood from the action
 Gallorum aliquid novi consilii iniri ab
of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plan was formed by
 iis, gladiis districtis, occupaverunt
them, their swords having been drawn, took possession of
 portas, que receperunt omnes suos incolūmes.
the gates, and received all their (men) safe.

13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,
Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,

que committit equestre prælium. Suis jam
and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now
 laborantibus submittit circiter quadringentos
hard pressed he sends about four hundred
 Germanos equites, quos ab initio instit-
German horsemen. whom from the beginning he had

uerat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinere eorum impetum, atque coniecti
not sustain their attack, and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis
into flight, betook themselves to the army, many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen

rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos
again alarmed, led out to Caesar those

comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant
(having been) arrested by whose means they thought

plebem concitatam, que dediderunt sese
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar
to him. Which [These] things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppidum Avaricum, quod
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturigum, atque fertilissimâ regione agri,
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country.

quod eo oppido recepto, confidebat
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis, convocat suos ad concilium; docet
received, calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

bellum gerendum esse longe aliâ
(that) the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans

prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu:
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that)

id esse facile, quod ipsi abundant equitatu,
this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,

et quod sublevantur tempore anni;
and because they are assisted by the season of the year;

pabulum posse non secari; hostes
(that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy

dispersos necessario petere ex ædificiis;
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings;

omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab
(that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by

equitibus. Præterea causâ salutis commoda
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages

familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda;
of private property to [must] be disregarded; (that)

oportere vicos atque ædificia incen-
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be

di, hoc est, spatio a Boiâ quoquoersus,
burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,

quô videantur posse adire causâ
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose

pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetere copiam
of foraging. Of these things to be [there is] at hand an abundance

ipsis, quod sublevantur opibus eorum
for themselves, because they would be assisted by the means of those

in quorum finibus bellum geratur;
in whose territories war should be waged; (that)

Romanos aut non laturos¹⁴ inopiam,
the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,

aut progressuros longius a
or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from

castris cum magno pericûlo; neque inter-
the camp with great danger; nor to be [did it make] any

esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exuant
difference, whether they kill them or deprive [them] of

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportere
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni pericûlo munitione et naturâ loci;
all danger by fortification and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam commeatûs que prædam.
for carrying off an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debere (inf.)
If these (things) should seem severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multo gravius
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

liberos conjuges abstrahi in
their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidere victis.
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hæc sententiâ probatâ consensu
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states.

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen
although all bore with great grief, yet

proponebant sibi hoc solaci,
they placed before themselves this (as) a consolation,

quod confidebant se, victoriâ prope
that they trusted they, the victory being nearly

exploratā, celeriter recuperaturos amissa.
assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarico,
It is deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi
(whether) it is best, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt

an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt
or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fall

ad pedes omnibus Gallis
at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (begging that)

ne cogerentur succendere suis
they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem prope totius Galliæ,
hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;
which is both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state;

dicunt se defensuros facile
they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturā loci, quod, circumdata prope
by the nature of the place, because, surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude, habeat
on all sides by the river and by a marsh, it has

unum et perangustum aditum. Venia
one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primō dissuadente,
is given to those petitioning. Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et
afterwards yielding both because of their entreaties and

misericordiā volgi. Idonei defensores
because of compassion of [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppido.
are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus
Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum
marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus, que silvis, longe ab Avarico quindecim
by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passuum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos
thousand paces. There he learned by faithful

exploratores in singula tempora (pl.) diei quæ
scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things

agerentur (pl.) ad Avaricum; et imperabat
were done at Avaricum; and he commanded

quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras
what he wished to be done; he watched all our

pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum
foragings and corn-raids, and when

necessario procederent longius, adoriebatur
through necessity they proceeded rather far, he attacked

dispersos, que affliciebat magno incommodo
(them) dispersed and inflicted great injury;

(dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris
although (this) was obviated by our (men)

quantum poterat provideri ratione, ut
as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight, that

ireretur (pass. sing.)¹⁵ incertis temporibus que
they should go at uncertain times and

diversis itineribus.
by different routes.

17. Castris positis ad eam partem
The camp having been pitched near that part

oppidi, quæ intermissa a flumine et
of the town, which having been left by the river and

palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum
marsh, as we have said above, had a narrow

aditum, Cæsar coepit apparare aggerem, agere
approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move

vineas, constituere duas turres; nam
the shelters (and) to construct two towers; for

" natura loci prohibebat circumvallare.
the nature of the place prevented to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de
He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about

frumentaria re; alteri quorum, quod agebant
the corn supply; the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; altēri non
with no zeal, assisted not much; the others not

magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua
with [having] great means, because the state was small

et infirma, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.
and weak, consumed quickly what they had.

Exercitu affecto summā difficultate
The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentariæ rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiā
of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii, by the negligence

Æduorum, incendiis ædificiorum, usque
of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo¹⁶ ut milites caruerint frumento
to this [extent] that the soldiers were without corn (for)

complures dies, et sustentarent extremam famem
many days, and they satisfied the extreme hunger

pecōre adacto e longinquiōribus vicis;
by cattle driven from the more distant villages;

tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis
yet not a word was heard from them

indigna majestate Romani popūli et
unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam cum Cæsar
former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singūlas legiones in opēre, et dicēret
addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent
(that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

iopiam acerbius, universi petebant ab
the want too severely, all to a man begged from [of]

eo ne facēret id; se
him that he would not do this; (saying that) they them-

sic meruisse complures annos
selves in such manner to have [had] served very many years

illo imperante ut accipērent nullam ignominiam
under his command that they admitted no dishonor (and)

nunquam discedērent, re infectā;
never withdrew, their purpose (having been) unaccomplished;

se laturos hoc loco ignominiaë,
they about to[would] regard this (as) an occasion of dishonor,
 si relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-
if they should abandon the siege (once) commenced, to be
 stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quam
[it was] preferable to endure all hardships than (that)
 non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui
they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who
 interissent perfidia Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc
had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These
 eadem mandabant centurionibus que
same (words) they entrusted to the centurions and
 tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur
tribunes, that through them they might be communicated
 ad Cæsarem.
to Cæsar.

18. Cum turres jam appropinquassent muro,
When the towers already had approached the wall,
 Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,
Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,
 pabulo consumpto, movisse
the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)
 castra propius Avaricum, atque ipsum, cum
camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he with
 equitatu que expeditis, qui consuëssent
the cavalry and the light armed, who had been trained
 præliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum
to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambushades
 profectum eo quo arbitrabatur
to have [had] marched thither, where he thought (that)
 nostros venturos pabulatum postëro
our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following
 die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus
day. Which [These] things having been learned, having set out
 silentio mediâ nocte, pervenit ad castra hostium
in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy
 mane. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celeriter
early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdiderunt
having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sua impedimenta in artiores silvas,
the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxerunt omnes copias in edito
(and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto loco. Quā re nuntiātā,
and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celeriter jussit sarcinas conferri,
Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.
(and) the arms to be made ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infimo.
There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficilis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc
A difficult and impassable swamp surrounded this

ex fere omnibus partibus, non latior
on nearly all sides, not wider than

quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus
fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,
having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves,

fiduciā loci; que distributi generatim
in confidence of the place, and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada
according to their states, they were holding all the shallows

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic
and passes of this swamp by trusty guards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur
prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpere eam paludem, premerent,
to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore loco, hæsitantes, ut
from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viderent propinquitatem loci,
(any) who saw the nearness of the position,

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum
would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicērent
 almost on equal terms; (but any) who perceived
 iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscērent
 the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)
 sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar
 they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar
 edocet milites indignantes, quod hostes
 shows the soldiers (who were) indignant, because the enemy
 possent ferre suum conspectum, tantulo spatio
 could endure their sight, so small a space
 interjecto, et exposcentes signum
 (having been) interposed, and (who were) demanding the signal
 prælii, quanto detrimento, et morte
 of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death
 quot fortium virorum sit necesse
 of how many brave men it would be necessary
 constare victoriam; cum vidēret quos sic
 to assure the victory; (saying that) since he saw them so
 paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum periculum
 prepared in mind, that they refused no danger
 pro suā laude, se debēre condemnari summæ
 for his glory, he ought to be condemned of the greatest
 iniquitatis, nisi habeat eorum vitam cariorē
 injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer
 suā salute. Consolatus milites sic,
 than his safety. Having consoled the soldiers thus,
 reducit in castra eodem die; instituit
 he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook
 administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad
 to perform the other things, which pertained to
 oppugnationem oppidi.
 the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, cum redisset ad suos
 Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus proditiōis, quod movisset castra
 was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp
 propius Romanos; quod discessisset cum omni
 nearer to the Romans; because he had departed with all

equitatu; quod relinquisset tantas copias sine
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without
 imperio; quod ejus discessu Romani venissent
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come
 tantā opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all
 hæc potuisse non accidere fortuito, aut
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or
 sine consilio; illum malle¹⁸ habere
without design; (that) he to prefer [preferred] to have the
 regnum Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quam ipsorum
sovereignty of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their
 beneficio. Accusatus tali modo, respondit
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied
 ad hæc quod movisset castra, factum
to these (things) (saying) that he had moved the camp was done
 inopiā pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus; quod
by want of forage, they themselves even urging; that
 accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced
 opportunitate loci, qui ipse defenderet
by the advantage of the place, which itself would protect
 se sine munitione; vero operam equitum
itself without defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen
 debuisse (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,
 et fuisse utilem illic, quo
and to have been [was] useful there, where
 profecti sint; se consulto discedentem
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing
 tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest
 is impellëretur ad dimicandum studio multi-
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the
 tudinis; cui rei, vidëret omnes studere,
multitude; for which thing, he saw all to be [were] eager,
 propter mollitiem¹⁹ animi, quod possent
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutius ferre laborem. Si Romani
no longer endure labor. If the Romans

intervenerint casu gratiam habendam
came up by chance (that) thanks must be given

fortunæ; si vocati indicio alicujus,
to fortune; if invited by the information of any one (thanks must

huic;²⁰ quod et potuerint cognoscere eorum
be given) to him; because they could both (to) perceive their

paucitatem ex superiore loco, et despiciere
small number from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise

virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter
the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely

receperint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)
had betaken themselves into camp. He desired

nullum imperium a Cæsare per prodicionem,
no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,

quod posset habere victoriā, quæ esset
because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was

jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin
now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but

etiam remittere ipsis, si videantur tribuere
even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer

honorem sibi magis quam accipere
honor on him rather than to receive

salutem ab se. Inquit, "ut intelligatis
safety from him. He said, "in order that you may know

hæc pronuntiari sincere a me, audite
these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear

Romanos milites." Producit servos quos
the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom

exceperat in pabulatione, paucis diebus ante,
he had captured in foraging, a few days before,

et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.
and had tortured both by hunger and chains.

Hi edocti jam ante, quæ pronunciarent
They having been taught already before, what they should declare

interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,
(when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers,

adductos fame et inopiā
(and) (having been) led by hunger and want

exisse clam ex castris si possent
to have [had] gone out secretly from camp (to see) if they were able

reperire quid frumenti aut pecōris in
[could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in

agris; omnem exercitum premi
the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed

simili inopiā; nec vires cujusquam jam
by a like want; nor (does) the strength of any one now

sufficere, nec posse ferre laborem
(to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor

opēris. Itaque imperatorem statuisset, si
of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if

profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,
they accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,

deducere exercitum triduo. "Hæc beneficia,"
to withdraw (his) army in three days. "These benefits,"

inquit Vercingetorix, "habētis a me, quem
said Vercingetorix, "you have from me, whom

insimulatis proditiōnis, cujus operā vidētis tantum
you accuse of treason, by whose means you see so great

victorem exercitum pæne consumptum fame,
a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,

sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpiter recipien-
without your blood; which (army) disgracefully retreat-

tem se ex hāc fugā, provisum est a me, ne
ing from this flight, it has been provided by me, that not

qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."
any state shall receive in its territories."

21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat
All the multitude shout and rattle

armis suo more, quod consueverunt
with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed

facere in eo cujus orationem approbant,
to do in the case of him whose speech they approve,

Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec
(saying) Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec
must it be doubted concerning his faithfulness, nor

posse bellum administrari majore
to be possible [could] the war (to) be carried on with greater

ratione. Statuunt ut decem millia hominum
judgment. They decree that ten thousand men

delecta ex omnibus copiis submittantur in
selected from all the forces should be sent into

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem
the town; nor do they think the general safety

committendum Biturigibus solis, quod
ought to be committed to the Bituriges alone, because

intelligebant summam victoriæ
they understood (that) the completeness of the victory

constare pæne in eo, si retinuissent
would depend almost entirely upon this, if they should hold

oppidum.
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant
Plans of every kind of the Gauls opposed

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)
the uncommon bravery of our soldiers, as they are

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad
a nation of the greatest ingenuity, and very apt for [at]

imitanda atque efficienda omnia, quæ traduntur
imitating and making all things, which are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertebant laqueis falces,
by every one. For they turned aside with nooses the hooks,

quos²¹ cum destinauerant, reducebant introrsus
which when they had caught, they hauled within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,
by engines, and they undermined the mound by tunnels,

eo scientius, quod apud eos sunt magnæ
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatum. Autem contabulaverant totum
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant
wall on every side with towers, and had covered
 has coriis; tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis
these with hides; also in (their) frequent daily and nightly
 eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,
sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,
 aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et
or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and
 adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,
they were equaling the height of our towers,
 quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,
as much as the mound daily had raised them,
 malis suarum turrium commissis; et
the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and
 morabantur apertos cuniculos præustā et
they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and
 præcutā materiā, et fervefactā pice, et saxis
very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones
 maximi ponderis, que prohibebant
of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)
 appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.
approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est fere forma omnibus Gallicis
Now this is generally the form to [of] all the Gallic
 muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,
walls. Straight beams continuous in length,
 binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter
two feet distant at equal intervals between
 se²² collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur
one another are placed on the ground. These are made fast
 introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.
within, and are covered with much mound-filling.
 Autem ea intervalla, quæ diximus
But these intervals, which we have mentioned
 effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis
are filled up in front with great stones. These
 collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo
having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingant inter
may be observed, nor the beams may touch each

se,²³ sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ
other, but separated by equal spaces, the several (beams)

contineantur (pl.) arte singulis interjectis saxis;
may be kept in place closely by the several interposed stones;

sic deinceps omne opus contextitur, dum
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Cum est
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only is

hoc opus non deforme in speciem que varietatem
this work not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,
and defence of cities great advantage,

quod et lapis defendit ab incendio, et
because both the stone protects from fire, and

ab ariete materia, quæ
from the battering-ram the wood-work, which (having been)

revincta introrsus trabibus plerumque perpetuis
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditâ tot iis
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, cum milites tardarentur toto
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis imbris, tamen
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem
and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound
 trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta
three hundred and thirty feet wide, (and) eighty
 pedes altum. Cum is pæne contingeret
feet high. When this (mound) nearly touched
 murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus
the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work
 consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, ne quod
by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that not any
 tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo
time at all should be lost from the work a little
 ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum
before the third watch, it was observed (that)
 aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succenderant
the mound to smoke [was smoking] which the enemy had fired
 cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato
by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised
 toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab
on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on
 utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant
each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing
 faces atque aridam materiem de muro in
torches and dry material from the wall on
 aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,
the mound; others were pouring pitch and other things,
 quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset
by which the fire might be encouraged; so that a plan could
 vix iniri, quo primum occurreretur,²⁴ aut
scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or
 cui rei auxilium ferretur;
to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;
 tamen quod, instituto Cæsar, duæ legiones
however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions
 semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis
always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted
 temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut
times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducērent
some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back
 turres que interscindērent aggerem; vero
the towers and cut off the mound; and indeed
 omnis multitudo concurret ex castris ad
(that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to
 restinguendum.
extinguish (the fire).

25. Cum pugnaretur²⁵ in omnibus locis,
While it was fought [they were] fighting in all places,
 reliquā parte noctis jam consumptā, que
the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and
 spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus (dat.),
the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,
 magis eo quod videbant pluteos turrium
the more so because they saw the coverings of the towers
 deustos, animadvertēbant apertos nec
burnt off, (and) observed (that we) unprotected not
 facile adire ad auxiliandum; que ipsi
easily to go [approached] for aiding; and (while) they
 recentes semper succedērent defessis (dat.),
fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,
 que arbitrarentur omnem salutem Galliæ
and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul
 positam²⁶ in illo vestigio temporis, accidit
(was) placed in that instant of time, there happened
 nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum
to us observing (that) which having seemed (to be) worthy
 memoriā existimavimus non prætermittendum.
(of) memory we have thought to [must] not be passed over.
 Quidam Gallus ante portam oppidi, qui e
A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from
 regione turris projiciebat in ignem glebas
the locality of the tower was throwing into the fire lumps
 sevi ac picis traditas per manus (pl.),
of tallow and pitch passed along by hand,
 trajectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que
having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus concidit; unus ex proximis
struck lifeless fell; one from [of] the nearest

transgressus hunc jacentem fungebatur illo
having stepped over him lying prostrate performed that

eodem munere; eādem ratione alteri exani-
same duty; in the same manner the second having been

mato ictu scorpionis, tertius successit,
killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,

et quartus tertio; nec ille locus relictus est
and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left

vacuus a propugnatoribus, prius quam aggere
vacant by the defenders, until the mound

restincto atque hostibus submotis
having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed

omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.
on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res
The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugere
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.
from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnā
(that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturā suorum, propterea quod castra
loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longe ab oppido,
of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat²⁷
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam
the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant facere hoc noctu, cum matres
they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias repente procurrerunt in publicum,
of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public,

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their
 petierunt omnibus precibus, ne
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not
 dedèrent se et communes liberos hostibus
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy
 ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness
 virium (pl). impediret ad capiendam fugam.
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.
 Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)
 sententiâ, quod plerumque in summo periculo
design, because generally in the greatest danger
 timor recipit non misericordiam, cœperunt conclamare,
fear admits not pity, they began to cry out,
 et significare de fugâ Romanis;
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;
 quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viæ
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the roads
 præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted
 consilio.
from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postero die turri pro-
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been
 motâ, que operibus directis, quæ
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which
 instituerat facere, magno imbri coorto,
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,
 arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad
thought this time not unsuited for
 capiendum consilium, quod vidēbat custodias
carrying out the plan, because he saw the guards
 in muro dispositas paulo incautius; que
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and
 iussit suos versari in opere langui-
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather

dius, et ostendit quid vellet fieri.
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando perciperent fructum
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia
of victory for such great labors, he offered rewards

iis, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complerunt murum.
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,
[action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

locis, hōc animo, ut si ex quâ parte venire-
places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur²⁸ contra obviam depugnarent acie
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere
drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis
the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

cam ipsi premèrent se angusto exitu
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est a militibus, pars
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore operis pepercerunt non
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni eo numero, qui fuit circiter
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multā, excepit
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

ex fugā silentio, et veritus ne qua seditio
from the flight in silence, and having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericiordiā volgi, suis familiaribus que
from the compassion of the throng, his friends and

principibus civitatum dispositis procul
the chiefs of the states having been located at a distance

in viā, curavit disparandos que
on the road, he took care (that) they should be separated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ²⁹ pars castrorum
be conducted to their (own people) (in) which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,
On the following day a council having been called,

consolatus que cohortatus est, ne
he consoled and exhorted, they should not be

admodum demitterent se animo, neve perturbarentur
too much cast down in mind, nor troubled

incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute
by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery

neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et
nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and

scientiā oppugnationis, cujus rei ipsi fuerint
by the science of siege, of which thing they were

imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello
unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war

omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam
all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never

placuisse sibi Avaricum defendi,
had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,

ejus rei habēret ipsos testes; sed
of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but

factum imprudentiā Biturigum
to have been (it was) brought about by the imprudence of the Bituriges

et nimiā obsequentiā reliquorum, uti hoc
and by the too great compliance of the rest, that this

incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum
disaster was received; however he would remedy

id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates
this quickly by greater advantages. For the states

quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suā
which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his

diligentiā adjuncturum, atque effecturum, unum consilium
exertion he would unite, and would make one counsel

totius Galliæ cujus consensui (dat.) ne orbis
of all Gaul whose union not the whole

terrarum quidem possit obsistere;
world even would be able [could] (to) oppose;

que se habēre prope jam effectum id.
and he to have [had] nearly already effected this.

Interea esse æquum impet-
In the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it should]

rari ab iis causā communis salutis,
be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,
 ut instituērent munire castra, quo
that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that
 possent facilius sustinēre
they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist
 repentinos impetus hostium.
the sudden attacks of the enemy.

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quod
This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because
 ipse non defecerat animo, tanto incommodo
he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss
 accepto, neque abdiderat se in occultum,
having been received, neither had he hidden himself in secret,
 neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis; que
nor fled the sight of the multitude; and
 existimabatur providēre et præsentire plus
he was thought to foresee and to forecast more
 animo quod, re integrā, cen-
in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had
 suerat primo Avaricum incendendum,
decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt,
 post deserendum Itaque ut adversæ
afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse
 res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;
affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;
 sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo
so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss
 accepto, augebatur in dies;
having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day;
 simul veniebant in spem, ejus
at the same time they were coming into the hope, because of his
 affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que
assertion, of uniting the other states; and
 primum Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire
first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify
 castra; et sic homines insueti laboris
their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia
were encouraged in mind, that they should think (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minus animo
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungēret reliquas
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolā oratione aut amicitia
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,
Those who had escaped Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiae redintegrarentur, imperat
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Galliā, conquiri, et mitti
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat
to him. By these means, that which he had lost

Avarici celeriter. expletur. Interim
at Avaricum speedily, is replaced. in the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervēnit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,
came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniā.
and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,
Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et
and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore
of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiā. Hieme jam prope confectā,
and want. The winter now nearly having been ended,

cum tempore ipso anni vocaretur ad
when by the season itself of the year he was invited to

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci
carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus
against the enemy, either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,
and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

principes Æduorum veniunt ad cum legati
chiefs of the Ædui come to him as ambassadors

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore
to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; rem esse in
he should assist the state; (saying that) their affairs to be [are] in

summo periculo; quod cum singuli magistratus cre-
extreme danger; that whereas single magistrates were

ari antiquitus, atque consuēssent obtinere
appointed of old, and had been accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum, duo gerant magistratum,
a kingly power for one year, two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse
and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem
by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum
a distinguished and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimā familiā, atque ipsum hominem
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiae, et magnæ cognationis, cujus
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis,
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas³⁰ cujusque eorum: quod si controversia
partisans of each of them; but if the dispute

alatur diutius, fore uti pars civitatis
is formented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat
would collide with a part; (that) this should not happen

positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

discedere a bello atque hoste, tamen non
to depart from the war and the enemy, yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuissent oriri
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus, ne tanta civitas et tam
from dissensions, lest so great a state and (one) so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornasset omnibus rebus, descenderet
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma, atque ea pars quæ
to violence and to arms, and (lest) that part which

confideret minus sibi accerseret auxilia a
trusted least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige, existimavit huic rei præ-
Vercingetorix, thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quod legibus Æduorum,
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui,

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum
to those who possessed the chief magistracy

non licēret excedere ex finibus, ne
it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest

videretur deminuisse quid de eorum
he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their

jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in
authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to

Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et
the Ædui, and summoned all the senate, and (those)

intra quos controversia esset, ad se
among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him

Decetiam. Cum prope omnis civitas
at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state

convenisset eo, que diceretur fratrem
had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother

renunciatum a fratre, paucis clam vocatis,
had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,

alio loco, alio tempore, atque
in another place, (and) at another time, than

oportuerit; cum leges non solum vetarent
was proper; since the laws not only forbade

duos ex unā familiā, utroque vivo, creari
two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen

magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in
magistrates, but also forbade (them) to be in

senatu; coegit Cotum deponere magistratum;
the senate; he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy

jussit Convictolitavem, qui creatus esset per
he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through

sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus
the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy

intermissis, obtinere potestatem.
having lapsed, to hold the power [office].

34. Hōc decreto interposito, cohortatus
This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum
the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies

ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-
and dissensions, and all things having been
 sis, servirent huic bello, que expectarent
laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect
 ea præmiā, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliā
those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul
 devictā, que mitterent omnem
having been conquered, and (that) they should send all
 equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter
the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily
 sibi, quæ disponeret in præsidiis causā
to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake
 rei frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas
of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two
 partes; dedit quattuor legiones Labieno ducendas
parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led
 in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in
into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into
 Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen
the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river
 Elaver: attribuit partem equitatūs illi,
Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)
 reliquit partem sibi. Quā re cognitā,
he left a part for himself. Which thing having been learned
 Vercingetorix, omnibus pontibus ejus fluminis
Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river
 interruptis, coepit facere iter ab
having been demolished, began to make his march on
 alterā parte fluminis.
the other side of the river.

35. Cum uterque exercitus esset in conspectu
Since each army was in view

utrique que poneret castra fere e
to (of) the other and was pitching a camp almost over

regione castris, exploratoribus dispositis,
against a camp, scouts having been stationed,

necubi Romani transducèrent copias,
(so) that in no place the Romans could lead across the forces,

ponte effecto; res erat
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was
 Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should
 iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,
 quod Elaver fere soleat non transiri
because the Allier generally is wont not to be crossed
 vado ante autumnum. Itaque ne id
by fording before autumn. Therefore lest this
 accidëret, castris positis silvestri loco
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place
 e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-
 getorix curaverat rescindendos, postero die
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day
 restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;
 misit, ut consueverat reliquas copias
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces
 cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis
with all the baggage, each fourth
 cohortibus demptis, uti numerus legionum
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions
 videretur constare. Iis jussis progredi
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance
 quam longissime possent, cum jam ex
as far (as) they could, when at last from
 tempore diei capëret conjecturam per-
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they
 ventum in castra, cœpit reficëre pontem
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge
 iisdem publicis inferior pars quarum remanebat
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining
 integra. Opere celeriter effecto, que
entire. The work quickly having been completed and
 legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitā, ne
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus.
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervēnit Gergoviam, ex eo loco,
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prælio
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto eo die, situ urbis
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in
having been reconnoitered, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus
a very high mountain, had all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum³¹ de obsessione
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

prius quam expedisset rem frumentariam. At
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis, atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi
intervals, and all the hills of this range

occupatis qua poterat despici,
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem; que jubebat
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat
the chiefs of these states whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad
for himself for taking counsel, to come to
 se quotidie primā luce seu quid
him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything
 videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-
might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be
 trandum; neque intermittebat fere ullum diem,
performed; nor did he omit scarcely any day;
 quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis
but that he might try what (of) spirit and (of) courage
 esset in quoque suorum equestri praelio,
might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,
 sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis e
the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill
 regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis
opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain
 egregie munitus, atque circumcisis ex omni parte
excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side
 (quem si nostri tenērent, videbantur
(which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)
 prohibitori hostes et³² ex magnā parte
to prevent the enemy both in great part (from))
 aquæ (gen.), et liberā pabulatione); sed is
water, and from free foraging); but this
 locus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis
place was held by them with a garrison not very
 firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris
strong; however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp
 silentio noctis, prius quam subsidium posset
in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could
 venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,
come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,
 potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,
having seized the place, he stationed two legions there,
 que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenū pedum
and led a double trench (of) twelve feet
 a majoribus castris ad minora, ut
(wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etiam singuli possent commeare tuto ab
even single (soldiers) could pass safely from [on]
 repentino incursu hostium.
the sudden attack of the enemy.

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
White these things were happening at Gergovia,
 Convictolitis. Æduus, cui demonstravimus
Convictolitis. the Æduan, to whom we have shown
 magistratum abjudicatum a Cæsare sollicitatus
the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited
 pecuniā ab Arvernīs colloquitur cum quibusdam
with money by the Arverni confers with certain
 adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque
young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and
 ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimā familiā.
his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family.
 Communicat præmium cum iis, que hortatur eos
He shares the money with them, and exhorts them
 ut meminerint se liberos, et natos
that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born
 imperio; esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ
for empire; (saying that) it is alone the state of the Ædui which
 distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas
retards the most certain victory of the Gauls; the rest
 contineri ejus auctoritate, quā transductā,
are restrained by its authority which having been brought over
 non fore locum Romanis
[and if it were won over], there would not be a place for the Romans
 consistendi in Galliā; se esse affectum nonnullo
to stand on in Gaul; (that) he was treated by a considerable
 beneficio Cæsaris, tamen sic ut obtinuerit
benefit of Cæsar, however (only) so that he obtained
 justissimam causam apud eum; sed tribuere (inf.)
a most just cause through him; but (he) owes
 plus communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui
more to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui
 veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure
come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potius quam Romani ad
and about their laws rather than the Romans to

Æduos? Adolescentibus deductis
the Ædui? The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratūs, et præmio,
speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

cum profiterentur, se vel fore principes
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebat,ur,
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quod confidebant civitatem non posse
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temere ad suscipiendum bellum.
induced rashly to undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis
it was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed over those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curaret ducenda ea, quæ ejus
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrerent ad Cæsarem. Constituunt
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar. They determine

quā ratione placeat reliqua agi.
in what manner it may be well (that) the rest to be [should be] performed.

38. Litavicus, exercitu accepto, cum
Litavicus, the army having been received, when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergovia, subito convocatis militibus,
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrumans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.
all our Knighthood all the nobility has perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati prodicionis interfecti sunt ab
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causā indictā. Cognoscite
the Romans the case not having been called. [without a trial] Know

hæc ab iis, qui fugerunt ex ipsā cæde. Nam
this from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis
I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ
having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat
has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus
what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciaverat, exponunt multitudini: omnes
had announced, they explain to the multitude: (that) all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quod dicerentur
the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernis; ipsos occultasse se
to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex
among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediā cæde. Ædui conclamant, et
the midst (of the) massacre. The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,
entreat Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi vero," inquit ille, "res sit
"As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendere
of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernis?
to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore
Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad
having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi
slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui
in us let us follow [avenger] their death, who

interierunt indignissime, atque interficiamus hos
have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these
 latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui erant
robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were
 unā fiduciā ejus præsidiū. Continuo diripit
with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes
 magnum numerum frumenti que commeatus;
a great quantity of corn and provisions;
 interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;
he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);
 dimittit nuntios totā civitate Æduorum; permovet
he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui; he excites
 eodem mendacio de cæde
(them) with the same falsehood about the massacre
 equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili
of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like
 ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas
manner, as he had done, they should avenge their
 injurias.
injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo loco,
Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,
 et summæ potentiae domi, et unā Viridomarus,
and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,
 pari ætate et gratiā, sed dispari genere,
of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage
 quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem
whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity
 ex humili loco, traditum sibi
from humble station, he having been recommended to him
 ab Divitiaco, convenerant in numero equitum,
by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen,
 evocati nominatim ab eo. Erat
(having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was
 contentio his inter se de
a contest (between) these (two) among themselves concerning
 principatu; et in illā controversiā magistratuum
rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates

alter pugnaverat pro Convictolitavi alter pro
the one had contended for Convictolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex iis Eporedorix,
Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Litavici cognito defert rem
the designs of Litavicus having been learned reports the matter

ad Cæsarem fere mediā nocte; orat
to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis
he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficere ab amicitia Romani
of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia
people, which he foresaw would happen, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,
of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui
whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligere neque posset civitas aestimare levi
neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.
importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnā sollicitudine
Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hōc nuntio, quod semper præcipue
by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullā dubitatione
favoured the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositā, educit ex castris quattuor
having been interposed, leads forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec
light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda
was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quod res videbatur posita
the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum
on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

cum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;
with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp;
 quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,
when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,
 reperit profugisse paulo ante ad hostes.
he finds (that) they have fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur
Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labore itinēris necessario tempore, omnibus
by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque
(being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passuum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,
thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui

equitatu immisso, moratur atque
the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit eorum iter; que interdicat omnibus,
impedes their march; and he forbids all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem
that they should kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarum, quos ille existimabant interfectos,
and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos
to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

lis cognitis, et fraude
(countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectā, Ædui incipiunt
of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui begin

tendere manus et significare deditionem, et
to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.
having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,
Litavicus flees to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserere
with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etiam in extremā fortunā.
(their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nuntiis missis ad civitatem
Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state

Æduorum, qui docerent conservatos suo
of the Ædui, who should show (that those) had been saved by his

beneficio, quos potuisset interficere jure belli,
favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,

que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui
and three hours of the night having been given to the army

ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.
for rest, he moved the camp toward Gergovia.

Fere medio itinere equites, missi a Fabio,
About the middle (of the) march horsemen sent by Fabius,

exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;
reveal in how great danger the affair has been;

demonstrant castra oppugnata summis
they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great

copiis, quum integri crebro succederent
forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded

defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo
the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual

labore, quibus (dat.)³³ propter magnitudinem
labor, by whom on account of the size

castrorum perpetuo permanendum esset
of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]

vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos
on the rampart (by) the same, (that) many were wounded.

multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis generis
by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind

telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta
of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines

fuisse magno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,
were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,

duabus portis relictis obstruere
two gates having been left (open) was blocking up

ceteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se
the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he

parare ad similem casum in posterum diem.
was preparing for a like fate on the next day.

Iis rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervēnit in
These things having been learned, Cæsar arrived at
 castra ante ortum solis summo studio
the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion
 militum.
of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc gerunter ad Gergoviam,
While these things are going on at Gergovia,
 Ædúi, primis nuntiis a Litavico accep-
the Ædúi, the first messages from Litavicus having been
 tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad
received, leave to themselves no time for
 cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia
verifying (it). Avarice impels some passion
 et temeritas alios, quæ est maxime innata
and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural
 illi genèri hominum, ut habeant levem
to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight
 auditionem pro re compertā. Deripiunt bona
hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods
 Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-
of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)
 hunt in servitutem. Convictolitavis adjuvat
away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances
 proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad
the ruined condition, and drives the people to
 furorem, ut facinore admisso
madness, that an enormity having been committed,
 pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.
it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.
 Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium
They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristius
 tribunum militum facientem iter ad
a tribune of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)
 legionem, fide datā;
legion (although), a pledge (of safety) having been [had been] given;
 cogunt eos facere idem, qui constiterant ibi
they force these to do the same, who had sojourned there

causā negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos
for the purpose of trading. Having continually attacked these
 in itinēre, exuunt omnibus
on (their) journey, they strip (them) of all (their)
 impedimentis; obsident repugnantes diem que
baggage; they besiege (those) opposing day and
 noctem, multis utrimque interfectis, concitant
night, many on both sides having been slain they summon
 majorem multitudinem ad arma.
a greater multitude to arms.

43. Interim nuntiis allatis, omnes
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

eorum milites tenēri in potestate Cæsaris,
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil
they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing

factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona
concerning the goods plundered; they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad
of Litavicus and (his) brothers; they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiā purgandi sui. Hæc,
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiā recuperandorum suorum;
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinōre et capti compendio
but implicated in the crime and allured by the gain

ex direptis bonis, quod ea res pertinebat
from the plundered goods, because this matter related

ad multos, et exterriti timōre pœnæ,
to many, and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que sollicitant legationibus reliquas civitates,
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ³⁴ tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam
Which [these] things although Cæsar knew, yet as

mitissime potuit. appellat legatos,
mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors, (saying that)

nihil se judicare gravius de civitate
in no wise does he judge more severely concerning the state

propter inscientiam que levitatem volgi,
on account of the ignorance and fickleness of the common people,

neque deminuere de sua benevolentia in Aeduos.
nor doe he abate from his good will toward the Aedui.

Ipsa expectans majorem motum Galliae,
He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,

ne circumsisteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,
lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet a
was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviam ac rursus contraheret omnem
Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata a timore
army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugae.
of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendae rei bene visa est
An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti haec. Nam cum
to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causam perspiciendi
he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur
the work, he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus
by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni praeter multitudinem.
days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus, quaerit causam ex perfugis, quorum
Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.
a great number daily were pouring in to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Caesar ipse
It was agreed by all, which [as] Caesar himself

cognoverat jam per exploratores, dorsum
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back
 ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody
 et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram
and narrow, where was a passage to the other
 partem oppidi; illos timēre vehementer
part of the town; (that) they feared exceedingly
 huic loco; nec jam sentire aliter, uno
for this place; nor now did they feel otherwise, one
 colle occupato ab Romanis, quin si
hill having been occupied by the Romans, (but) that if
 amisissent alterum, viderentur pæne
they should lose the other, they would appear nearly
 circumvallati atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;
surrounded and cut off from all egress and foraging;
 omnes evocatos a Vercingetorige ad muniendum
(that) all had been called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying
 hunc locum.
this place.

45. Hāc re cognitā, Cæsar mittit
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends
 complures turmas equitum eo de mediā
several troops of horsemen thither at mid-
 nocte; imperat iis, ut pervagentur
night; he commands them, that they should range about
 in omnibus locis paulo tumultuosius. Primā
in all places somewhat more tumultuously [noisily]. At the first
 luce jubet magnum numerum
light [early dawn] he orders a great quantity
 impedimentorum produci ex castris, que
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp, and
 mulorum, que stramenta detrahi iis, que
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and
 muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus
the muleteers with helmets to ride round the hills
 specie ac simulatione equitum. His
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latius
he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely

causā ostentationis. Jubet omnes
for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all

petere easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc
to seek the same places by a long circuit. These

videbantur procul ex oppido, ut erat
things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was

despectus a Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto
a view from Gergovia into the camp; nor, at such

spatio, poterat explorari quid certi
a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty

esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et
it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and

constituit progressam paulum, inferiore
he stations (it) advanced a little, in a lower

loco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio
place, and hides (it) in the woods. The suspicion (of)

Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum
the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications

transducuntur illo. Cæsar conspicatus
are brought over thither. Cæsar having perceived (that)

castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum
the camp of the enemy was deserted, the insignia of his

tectis, que militaribus signis
(men) having been covered, and the military ensigns

occultatis, traducit milites raros ex
having been concealed, transfers (his) soldiers in squads from

majoribus castris in minora, ne animad-
the larger camp into the smaller, lest they should

verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit
be observed from the town; and he shows [explains]

legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,
to the lieutenants whom he had appointed over each legion,

quid velit fieri; in primis monet, ut
what he wishes to be done; especially he admonishes that

contineant milites, ne progrediantur
they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed

longius, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder.

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

loci habeat hoc posse vitari
of the place may have, (that) this can be avoided

celerite unā, rem occasionis, non
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

præli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,
of battle. These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempore, ab dextrā
and sends the Ædui, at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensūs, recta regione, si nullus anfractus
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic
should intervene. Whatever had been added to this

circuitūs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, fere a
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret
the nature of the mountain allowed, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. *very close.* Milites, *The soldiers,* signo *the signal* dato, *having been given*
 celeriter *quickly* perveniunt *arrive* ad *at (this)* munitionem, *fortification,* que *and*
 transgressi *having passed over* eam, *it,* potiuntur *take possession (of)* trinis *three (separate)*
 castris. *camps.* Ac *And* tanta *so great* fuit *was* celeritas *the speed* in capiendis *in capturing*
 castris, *the camps,* ut *that* Teutomatus, *Teutomatus,* rex *king* Nitiobrigum, *of the Nitiobrigas,*
 oppressus *having been surprised* subito *suddenly* in *in* tabernaculo, *(his) tent,* ut *when*
 conquieverat *he had gone to rest* meridie, *at noon,* vix *scarcely* eriperet *saved* se *himself*
 ex *from* manibus *the hands* prædantium *of the plundering* militum, *soldiers,* superiore *with the upper*
 parte *part* corporis *of (his) body* nuda, *naked,* equo *(and his) horse*
 vulnerato. *wounded.*

47. Cæsar consecutus *Cæsar having attained* id *that* quod *which* proposuerat *he had proposed*
 animo, *in mind,* jussit *ordered* cani *(the bugle) to be sounded* receptui, *for retreat,* que *and*
 constituit *set up* signa *the standards* decimæ legionis, *of the tenth legion,* quâ *by which* erat *he was*
 tum comitatus. *then accompanied.* At *But* milites *the soldiers* reliquarum *of the other* legionum, *legions,*
 non *not* exaudito *having heard* sono *the sound* tubæ, *of the trumpet,* quod *because*
 vallis *a valley* satis *sufficiently [quite]* magna *large* intercedebat, *was intervening,* tamen *nevertheless*
 retinebantur *were kept back* a *by* tribunis *the tribunes* militum *of the soldiers* que *and*
 legatis, *by the lieutenants,* ut *as* præceptum erat *(it) had been commanded* a Cæsare. *by Cæsar.*
 Sed *But* elati *elated* spe *by the hope* celeris *of a speedy* victoriæ *victory* et *and* fuga *by the flight*

hostium, que secundis proeliis superiorum
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former
 temporum existimabant nihil adeo arduum
times they thought (that) nothing (was) so difficult
 sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;
 neque fecerunt finem sequendi, prius
nor did they make an end of following, before
 quam appropinquārent muro que portis oppidi.
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.
 Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus
But then a shout having arisen from all parts
 urbis, qui aberant longius perterriti
of the town, those who were distant farther frightened
 repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy
 esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from
 oppido. Matres familiās jactabant
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw
 vestem que argentum de muro, et
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and
 prominentes nudo pectore, passis manibus
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands,
 obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcērent sibi; neu
they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor
 sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinērent ne
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not
 quidem mulieribus atque infantibus. Nonnullæ
even the women and children. Some
 demissæ de muris per manus,
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands,
 tradebant sese militibus. L. Fabius
surrendered themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius
 centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared
 dixisse eo die inter suos, se
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,
was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,
 ut quisquam adscendēret murum prius,
that any one should mount the wall before (himself),

nactus tres suos manipulares atque
having taken three (of) his company and

sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;
having been raised up by them mounted the wall;

ipse rursus exceptans singulos extulit eos in
he in turn taking up one at a time drew them onto
 murum.
the wall.

48. Interim ii, qui convenerant ad alteram
In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other
 partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causā
part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose
 munitionis, primo clamōre exaudito, inde
of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward
 etiam incitati crebris nuntiis, oppidum
also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town
 tenēri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,
was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,
 contenderunt eo magno concursu. Ut quisque
they hastened there in a great throng. As each
 eorum primus vēnerat consistebat sub muro,
of them first came he halted under the wall,
 que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.
and increased the number of their (men) fighting.

Cum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,
When a great multitude of these had assembled,
 matres familiās quæ paulo ante
the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before

tendebant manus de muro Romanis,
were stretching out hands from the wall to the Romans,

cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico more
began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner

ostentare passum capillum, que proferre
to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec loco nec numero (sing.); simul
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight,

non facile sustinebant recentes atque integros.
they did not easily withstand (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cum vidēret pugnari
Cæsar when he saw to be fought [the fighting was]

iniquo loco, que copias hostium
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augēri, præmetuens suis mittit ad
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextium legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constituēret sub
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium;
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy;

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos loco,
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place,

terrēret hostes quo insequerentur minus
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

libere. Ipse progressus paulum ex eo
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.
the issue of the battle.

50. Cum pugnaretur accerime comminus,
While it was fought most violently hand to hand,

hostes confidērent loco et numero,
the enemy trusted in the place and (their) number,

nostri virtute; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab
our men in (their) courage; the Ædui were suddenly seen. by

nostris aperto latère, quos Cæsar miserat
our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent
 ab dextrâ parte alio ascensu, causâ
from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose
 destinendæ manus.³⁶ Hi vehementer perterruerunt
of cutting off the force. They very much alarmed
 nostros similitudine armorum; ac tametsi
our men by the similarity of (their) arms, and although
 animadvertebantur dextris humeris exsertis
they were observed with the right shoulder uncovered,
 quod consueverat esse insigne pacatorum,
which was accustomed to be the sign of the peaceful,
 tamen milites existimabant id ipsum
yet the soldiers thought (that) this same
 factum ab hostibus causâ fallendi sui.
(was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them.
 Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, que
At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and
 qui adscenderant murum unâ,
(those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),
 circumventi atque interfecti, præcipitabantur
having been surrounded and slain, were thrown
 de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem
from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same
 legionis, quum conatus esset excindere portas,
legion, when he had attempted to cut down the gates.
 oppressus a multitudine, ac desperans
overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety
 sibi, vulneribus jam acceptis, inquit
for himself, wounds already having been received, said
 suis manipularibus qui secuti erant illum.
to his comrades who had followed him.
 "Quoniam possum non servare me unâ vobiscum,
"Since I can not save myself together with you,
 quidem certe prospiciam vestræ saluti, quos,
indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,
 adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in
led by the desire of glory, I have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datā
 danger; you, an opportunity having been given,

consultite vobis."
 [when an opportunity occurs] consult for yourselves."

Simul irrupit in medios hostes,
 At the same time he threw himself into the midst (of the) enemy,

que duobus interfectis, submovit reliquos paulum
 and two having been killed, he drove back the rest a little

a portā. Suis conantibus auxiliari inquit,
 from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring to assist he said,

"Frustra conamini subvenire meæ vitæ quem sanguis
 "In vain you try to save my life whom blood

que vires jam deficiunt, proinde abite hinc,
 and strength now fail, therefore go from here,

dum est facultas, que recipite vos ad
 while there is the chance, and get [betake] yourselves to

legionem." Pugnans ita concidit post paulum,
 the legion." Fighting thus he fell after a little,

ac fuit salutis³⁷ suis.
 and was (for) a safety to his (men).

51. Cum nostri premerentur undique,
 As our (men) were pressed on every side,

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,
 forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt loco. Sed decima legio,
 they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulo æquiore
 which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

loco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantius,
 place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertiæ legionis, rursus exceperunt
 The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,³⁸ quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,
 this, which [for they] having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, ceperant superiorem
 with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

locum. Ubi legiones primum attigerunt planitiem
 ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra
they halted, the standards having been turned against
 hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab
the enemy. Vercingetorix led back his (men) from
 radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo
the foot of the hill within the fortifications. On this
 die paulo minus septingenti milites
day a little less (than) seven hundred soldiers
 desiderati sunt.
were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, contione advocata,
On the next day, Cæsar, an assembly having been called,
 reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,
censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,
 quod ipsi judicavissent sibi, quō viderētur
because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed
 procedendum, aut quid agendum,
(that they) ought to go or what ought to be done,
 neque, signo recipiendi dato,
neither, the signal for halting having been given,
 constitissent, neque potuissent retineri a
did they halt, nor could they be restrained by
 tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit
the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants. He showed
 quid iniquitas loci posset,
what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),
 quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, cum,
what (he) himself had perceived at Avaricum, when,
 hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et
the enemy having been surprised without a leader and
 sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,
without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory,
 ne accipēret modo parvum detrimentum in
lest he might receive even a small injury in
 contentione, propter iniquitatem loci.
the contest, on account of the disadvantage of the place.
 Quantopere admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,
As much as he admired their greatness of spirit,

quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo
whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height
 montis, non murus oppidi potuisset
of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could
 tardare, reprehendēre tantopere licentiam que
retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and
 arrogantiam, quod existimarent se sentire
presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood
 plus quam imperatorem de victoriā atque
more than (their) commander about victory and
 exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec
the issue of affairs; (saying that) he desired in a soldier no
 minus modestiam et continentiam, quam virtutem
less moderation and submission, than valor
 atque magnitudinem animi.
and greatness of spirit.

53. Hāc contione habitā, et ad extremum
This council having been held, and to the highest degree
 militibus confirmatis oratione, ne
the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)
 permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu
should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor
 tribuērent id virtuti hostium, quod
should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which
 iniquitas loci attulisset; cogitans
the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking
 eadem de profectione, quæ senserat
the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt
 ante, eduxit legiones ex castris, que
before, he led forth the legions from the camp, and
 constituit aciem idoneo loco. Cum
drew up the battle line in a favorable place. When
 Vercingetorix nihilo magis descendēret in æquum
Vercingetorix no more would descend into level
 locum, levi equestri prælio facto,
ground, a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,
 atque eo secundo, reduxit exercitum
and this (being) favorable, he led back (his) army

in castra. Cum fecisset hoc idem postero
 into the camp. When he had done this same thing the next
 die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam
 day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos
 the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in
 the minds of (his) soldiers, he moved (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne quidem tum insecutis,
 the Ædui. The enemy not even then having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen
 on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque traduxit exercitum.
 Allier, and led over (his) army.

54. Ibi appellatus a Viridomaro atque
 There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicum, cum
 Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;
 all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui;

et esse opus ipsos antecedere
 and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam
 for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum
 in many things had the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat discessu
 clearly understood and he believed (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;
 of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened;

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne
 however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare
 he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,
 some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos
 he briefly set forth his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quam humiles, compulso in
he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into
 oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copiis
their towns, deprived of their lands, all (their) means
 ereptis, stipendio imposito,
having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)
 obsidibus extortis cum summā contumeliā,
hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,
 in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem
to what fortune, and to what greatness
 deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in
he had raised (them), so that they had not only returned to (their)
 pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse
former state, but seemed to have surpassed
 dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His
the dignity and influence of all times. This
 mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab
charge having been given, he dismissed them from
 se.
his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum
Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui
 positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligëris.
situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.
 Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Galliæ,
Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul,
 frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem
the corn, the public money, a great part
 suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.
of his baggage, and (that) of the army.
 Miserat huc magnum numerum equorum
He had sent hither a great number of horses
 coëmptorum in Italiā atque Hispaniā, causā
bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose
 hujus belli. Cum Eporedorix que Viridomarus
of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus
 venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu
had arrived there, and had learned about the condition

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab
 [attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by
 Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ
 the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest
 auctoritatis apud eos; Convictolitavem
 importance among them; (that) Convictolitavis
 magistratum que magnam partem senatūs
 the magistrate and a great part of the senate
 convēnisse ad eum; legatos publice
 had gone to him; (that) ambassadors were openly
 missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandā pace
 sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace
 et amicitia; existimaverunt tantum commodum
 and alliance; they thought so great an advantage
 non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni
 must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum
 que qui convenerant eo causā
 and those who had assembled there for the sake
 negotiandi, aut itinēris, interfectis, partiti sunt
 of trading, or travel, having been killed, they divided
 pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt
 the money and the horses among themselves; they took care
 obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte
 (that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte
 ad magistratum; oppidum, quod judicabant
 to the magistrate; the town, because they thought (it)
 posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne
 could not be held by them, they burned, lest
 esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt
 it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away
 subito navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-
 suddenly in ships what they could of corn; they
 perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi
 destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they
 cœperunt cogere copias ex finitimis regionibus,
 began to collect forces from the neighboring districts,
 disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas
 to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Ligeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus locis
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causā injiciendi timōris, si aut possent
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariā, aut expellere
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or could expel (them)

adductos inopiā, ex Provinciā;
driven by want from the province; (it)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod
assisted them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vado.
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit
Which things having been learned, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,³⁹ si esset periclitandum
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius
in building the bridges, so that he might fight before

quam majores copię coactę essent eo. Nam ut,
(that) greater forces had been collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, convertēret iter
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciā, existimabat id ne tum
into the Province, he thought (that) this not then

quidem necessario faciendum; cum infamia
even of necessity must be done; not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediēbat (sing.),
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads prevented,

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer
but also especially because he desired very much

adjungi Labiēno, atque iis legionibus quas
to be united with Labienus, and those legions which

miserat unā. Itaque admodum magnis
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis confectis,
marches by day and by night having been made,
 pervenit ad Ligërim, contra opinionem omnium;
he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the expectation of all;
 que vado invento per equites, opportuno
and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable
 pro necessitate rei, ut brachia modo, atque
for the urgency of the case, that the arms only and
 humeri possent esse liberi ab aquâ ad
the shoulders might be free from the water for
 sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito
supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed
 qui refringëret vim fluminis, atque
(that) they might break the force of the river, and
 hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,
the enemy (having been) thrown into disorder at first sight,
 traduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus
he led over the army safe and having found
 frumentum in agris, et copiam pecôris,
corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,
 exercitu repleto iis rebus, instituit
the army having been supplied with those things, he determines
 facëre iter in Senones.
to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,
While these things are happening under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat
Labienus, that contingent [addition], which had lately come
 ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut
from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens], that
 esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur
it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches
 cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est
with four legions to Lutetia [Paris]. This is
 oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis
a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river
 Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab
Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis
the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighboring
 civitatibus. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno
states. The supreme command is given to Camulogenus

Aulercō; qui prope confectus ætate,
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age,

tamen evocatus est ad eum honorem propter
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rei. Is, quum
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum locum, consedit hic, que
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibere nostros transitu.
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primo conabatur agere vineas,
Labienus at first endeavored to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id
to open a road. After he observed (that) this

confieri difficilius, egressus
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

e castris silentio tertiā vigiliā, pervēnit
from (his) camp in silence at the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,⁴⁰ eodem itinere, quo
at Metiosedum [Melun] by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulā Sequanæ, ut paulo ante diximus
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circiter quinquaginta navibus depre-
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, que conjunctis celerite, atque
seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis eo, et oppidanis
soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town
 magna pars quorum erat evocata ad
a great part of whom had been called away to
 bellum, perterritis novitate rei,
the war, (having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing,
 potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte
he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge
 refecto, quem hostes resciderant
having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed
 superioribus diebus, traducit exercitum, et
on the preceding days, he leads over (his) army, and
 cœpit facere iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.
begins to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.
 Hostes, re cognitâ ab iis qui
The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who
 profugerant a Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam
had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia
 incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;
to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;
 ipsi profecti palude, considunt in
they themselves having left the marsh, place themselves on
 ripis Sequanæ e regione Lutetiæ contra
the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite
 castra Labieni.
the camp of Labienus.

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse a
Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from
 Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione
Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt
 Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que
of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul, and
 Galli in colloquiis confirmabant Cæsarem
the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar
 interclusum itinere et Ligère,
cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)
 coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in
forced by the want of corn, had marched into

Provinciam. Autem Bellovacī, defectione Æduorum
the province. But the Bellovacī, the defection of the Ædui
 cognitā, qui ante erant per se
having been learned who before were of themselves
 infideles, coeperunt cogere manus, atque aperte
unfaithful, began to collect forces, and openly
 parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantā
to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great
 commutatione rerum intelligebat longe aliud
a change of affairs thought (that) a far different
 consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat
plan to [must] be taken by him, than he had considered
 antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret
before. Nor now was he thinking, that he should acquire
 aliquid, que lacerasset hostes prælio, sed ut
anything and should attack the enemy in battle, but that
 reduceret exercitum incolumen Agendicum.
he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.
 Namque ex alterā parte Bellovacī, civitas quæ
For on the one side the Bellovacī, a state which
 habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliā,
has the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,
 instabant; alteram Camulogenus tenebat
were pressing; the other (side) Camulogenus was holding
 parato atque instructo exercitu; tum
with an organized and equipped army; also
 maximum flumen distinebat legiones
a very large river separated the legions (having been)
 interclusas a præsidio atque impedimentis.
cut off from the garrison and baggage.
 Tantis difficultatibus subito objectis,
Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented,
 videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute⁴¹
he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength
 animi.
of mind.

60. Itaque sub vesperum, concilio con-
Therefore towards evening, a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que
 called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and
 industrie administrarent ea quæ
 industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which
 imperâsset; naves, quas deduxerat a
 he had commanded; the ships, which he had brought from
 Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et
 Metiosedum, he assigns singly to Roman knights; and
 jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,
 orders (them), the first watch having been completed,
 progredi quattuor millia passuum secundo flumine,
 to proceed four thousand paces down the river,
 silentio, que ibi expectare se. Relinquit
 in silence, and there to await himself. He leaves
 quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minime
 five cohorts, which he considered to be least
 firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;
 sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;
 imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis
 he commands the remaining five of the same legion
 proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis
 to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage
 adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam
 up the river with a great din. Also
 conquirat lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,
 he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,
 incitatas magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulo
 driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little
 post, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,
 after, having marched out in silence with three legions,
 petit eum locum, quo jusserat naves
 seeks that place, where he had ordered the ships
 appelli.
 to be brought.

61. Cum esset ventum⁴² eo, exploratores
 When it was come [he came] there, the scouts
 hostium, ut dispositi erant omni parte
 of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

fluminis, inopinantes, quod magna tempestas
of the river, off their guard, because a great storm

subito coorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;
had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celeriter transmittitur,
the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos
the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præficēret ei negotio. Fere uno
had appointed for this task. Nearly at one [the same]

tempore sub lucem nuntiatur hostibus,
time about daylight it is announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter
(that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans exceeding

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire
(their) custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumine, que sonitum remorum
up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in eādem parte, et paulo
was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milites transportari navibus. Quibus rebus
below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quod existimabant legiones
having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos
were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed,

defectione Æduorum parare fugam,
by the defection of the Ædui were preparing for flight.

quoque distribuērunt suas copias in tres partes.
they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto a regione castrorum,
For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvā manu missā versus Metiosedum,
and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progredereetur tantum quantum naves pro-
which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessissent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.
proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primā luce et omnes nostri
At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)
 transportati erant, et acies hostium cernebatur.
had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned
 Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenērent
[seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold
 memoriam suæ pristinae virtutis, et tot
the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many
 secundissimorum praeliorum, atque existimarent
very successful battles, and that they should think
 Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-
(that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so
 ero superāssent hostes adesse; dat signum
often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal
 praeli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi
of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where
 septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,
the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,
 atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,
and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),
 quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum
which place the twelfth legion was holding, when
 primi ordines hostium concidissent transfixi
the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed
 pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrime, nec
by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor
 quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux
was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general
 ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,
himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his
 atque cohortabatur eos. At exitu
(men), and was encouraging them. But the issue
 victoriae etiam nunc incerto, quum
of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when
 nuntiatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,
it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,
 quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt
what was transpiring on the left wing, they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne eo tempore quidem quisquam cessit
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

loco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit eandem
slain; Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ii qui relictī erant præsidio
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prælium commissum, ierunt subsidio
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque
to their [people], and took [occupied] the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum; sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi
been completed, Labienus returns to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitus relictā erant; inde
the baggage of all the army had been left; thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copiis.
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Æduorum cognitā, bellum
The revolt of the Ædui having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiā, auctoritate, pecuniā.
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat
Having obtained the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited
 apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio
with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment

horum. Ædui petunt a Vercingetorige ut
of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that

veniat ad se, que communicet rationes
he come to them, and communicate the plans

gerendi belli. Re impetratā,
of carrying on the war. This request having been obtained,

contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur
they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned

ipsis et, re deductā in controversiam,
to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,

concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.
a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.

Frequentes undique conveniunt eodem; res
Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter
 permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum
is consigned to the votes of the multitude; all to one

probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.
[a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.

Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab
The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from

hōc concilio; illi quod sequebantur
this council; those [two first] because they were following

amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quod
[observing] the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because

longius aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;
they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;

quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto
which was the reason why they were absent in the whole

bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui
war, and sent auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui

ferunt magno dolore se dejectos
bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived

principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,
of the leadership; they lament the change of fortune,

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves,

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatibus. Denique constituit diem ei rei;
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter;

huc jubet omnes equites, numero
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit
of fifteen thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit ante; neque tentaturum fortunam, neque
he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;⁴³ sed, quoniam abundet
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; modo
the Romans from corn and forage; provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; qua
corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturā familiaris rei videant se
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His
obtain perpetual empire and freedom. These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem
the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten
 millia peditum; huc addit octingentos
thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred
 equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,
horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorix,
 que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.
and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.
 Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proximos
On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest
 pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,
cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,
 que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum
and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ
 Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges
Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges
 clandestinis nuntiis que legationibus, quorum mentes
by secret messages and embassies, whose minds
 sperabat nondum resedissee a
he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from
 superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,
the former war. To their leaders he promises money,
 autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.
but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia
Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection
 viginti et duarum cohortium provisâ erant, quæ
of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which
 coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,
having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,
 legato, opponebantur ad omnes partes.
(his) lieutenant. were opposing at [on] all sides.
 Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prælio cum
The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with
 finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,
their neighbors, are defeated, and C. Valerius Donaturus,
 filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus
the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many

aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida
others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobroges crebris præsiidiis
and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos
having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnā curā et diligentia. Cæsar,
frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quod intelligebat hostes esse
because he perceived (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus
superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullā re
having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciā atque Italiā, mittit trans Rhenum
from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat
into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,
in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant
and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

proeliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quod
to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur minus idoneis equis, sumit equos
they used less suitable horses, he takes horses

a tribunis militum, que reliquis
from the tribunes of the soldiers, and from the other

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit
Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.
to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiae
Mean time while these things are transpiring, the forces

ex Arvernīs, que equites, qui imperati erant
from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum
to [from] all Gaul, assemble. A great number of these

coacto, cum Cæsar faceret iter in
having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into
 Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,
the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,
 quo posset facilius ferre subsidium Provinciæ,
so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,
 Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem
Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten
 millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis
thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders
 equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat
of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)
 tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugere in
the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into
 Provinciam, que excedere Galliā; id esse satis
the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough
 sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;
for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;
 profici parum ad pacem atque otium
(but it) profited little for the peace and repose
 reliqui temporis; enim majoribus copiis
of the remaining time; for greater forces
 coactis reversuros neque facturos
having been collected they would return nor would they make
 finem bellandi; proinde adorianatur
an end of warring; therefore let them attack (them)
 impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium
encumbered on the march. If the infantry should bring assistance
 suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse
to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could
 non confici; sin, id quod magis
not be performed; but if, that which [as] the rather [the more]
 confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,
he expects would be, the baggage having been abandoned,
 consulant suæ salutis, iri spoliatum
they consult their safety, they would be deprived
 et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.
both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos
For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they

quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo eorum
even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them

audeat modo progredi extra agmen.
would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line.

Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum
That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold

omnes copias pro castris, et futurum
all (his) forces before the camp, and would be

terrōri hostibus. Equites conclamant
(for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)

oportere confirmari sanctissimo jurejurando,
it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,

ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum
that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access

ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,
either to children or to parents, or to wife,

qui non bis perequitasset per agmen
who had not twice ridden through the army,

hostium.
of the enemy.

67. Re probatā, atque omnibus
The thing having been approved, and all

adactis ad jusjurandum, postero die
having been bound to an oath, on the next day

equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ
the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two

ostendunt se a duobus lateribus; una coepit
show themselves on the two flanks; one began

impedire iter a primo agmine. Quā
to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which

re nuntiata, Cæsar quoque jubet suum
thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his

equitatum divisum tripartito ire contra hostem.
cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy.

Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unā in omnibus partibus.
They fight together on all sides.

Agmen		consistit.		Impedimenta recipiuntur	
The marching-column		halts.		The baggage is received	
inter	legiones.	Si	in	quā	parte nostri
among	the legions.	If	in	any	part our (men)
videbantur laborare,		aut premi		gravius, eo	
seemed to labor,		or be pressed		too severely, there	
Cæsar	jubebat	signa		inferri, que	
Cæsar	ordered	the standards		to be borne, and	
aciem		converti;		quæ res et tardabat	
the battle-line		to be turned;		which thing both retarded	
hostes ad		insequendum,		et confirmabat	
the enemy for [from]		following,		and encouraged	
nostros spe		auxili.		Tandem Germani	
our (men) with the hope		of aid.		At length the Germans	
ab dextro latère,	nacti		summum jugum		
on the right wing,	having gained		the top of the hill		
depellunt hostes		loco;		persequuntur	
force the enemy		from the place;		they pursue	
fugientes usque ad flumen,		ubi Vercingetorix			
(them) fleeing even to the river,		where Vercingetorix			
consederat cum pedestribus copiis,		que interficiunt			
had halted with the foot forces,		and they kill			
complures. Quā re		animadversā,		reliqui	
very many. Which thing		having been observed,		the rest	
veriti, ne circumvenirentur,		mandant se			
afraid, lest they might be surrounded,		consign themselves			
fugæ. Cædes fit omnibus locis.		Tres			
to flight. Slaughter is made in all parts.		Three			
nobilissimi Ædui capti perducuntur ad Cæsarem;					
most noble Æduans captured are led back to Cæsar;					
Cotus præfectus equitum,	qui habuerat				
Cotus the commander of the cavalry,	who had held				
controversiam cum Convictolitave proximis comitiis;					
the contest with Convictolitavis in the late elections;					
et Cavarillus, qui, post defectionem Litavici					
and Cavarillus, who, after the revolt of Litavicus					
præfuerat pedestribus copiis,		et Eporedorix,			
had commanded the foot forces,		and Eporedorix,			

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædui
with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædui
 contenderant bello cum Sequanis.
had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix
All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro
led back his forces as he had placed (them) before

castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter
the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march

Alesiam,⁴⁴ quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que
to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and

jussit impedimenta celeriter educi ex castris,
ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp

et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis
and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus
having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,
legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diei passum est, circiter tribus
as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmîne inter-
thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altero die fecit castra ad
slain, on the next day made [pitched] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que
Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quod erant pulsi
the enemy (having been) terrified, because they had been beaten

equitatu, quā parte exercitūs maxime
by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,
they trusted; having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit circumvallare Alesiam.
he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum erat in summo colle,
The town itself was on the top (of) a hill,

loco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-
the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)
 pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex
by captured unless by a blockade. Two rivers on
 duabus partibus subleebant radices ejus collis.
two sides washed the foot of this hill.
 Ante oppidum planities patebat circiter trium
Before the town a plain extended about three
 millia passuum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus
thousand paces [miles] in length On all
 reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri saptio
the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance
 (having been) interjecto pari fastigio [degree]
interposed with equal elevation
 altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,
of height encircled the town. Under the wall,
 pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,
the part of the hill, which looked to the east,
 omnem hunc locum copiae Gallorum compleverant,
all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,
 que præduxerant fossam, et maceriam
and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall
 sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus
six feet in height. The circuit of this
 munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis
fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans
 tenebat undecim millia passuum. Castra
extended eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp
 posita erant opportunis locis; que ibi viginti
was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty
 tria castella facta, in quibus interdiu stationes
three fortresses were made, in which by day guards
 disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subito.
were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.
 Hæc eadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,
These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,
 ac firmis præsidiiis.
and strong posts.

70. Opère instituto, equestre proelium
The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle
 fit in eā planitie, quam, demonstravimus
took place on this plain, which, we have shown
 supra, patēre tria millia passuum in longitudinem,
above, extends three thousand paces in length,
 intermissam collibus. Contenditur
limited by the hills. It is contended [They contend]
 summā vi ab utrisque. Cæsar
with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides. Cæsar
 submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que
sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and
 constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio
draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally
 subito fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio
suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection
 legionum addito, animus augetur nostris;
of the legions having been added, courage is increased in our men;
 hostes conjecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt
the enemy thrown into flight, they impede
 se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus
themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower
 portis relictis. Germani sequuntur
gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)
 acrius usque ad munitiones; magna cædes
more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter
 fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur
is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor
 transire fossam, et transcendere maceriam.
to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.
 Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat
Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up
 pro vallo promoveri paulum. Galli,
before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls
 qui erant intra munitiones, non minus
who were within the fortifications, no less
 perturbantur; existimantes venire
were terrified; thinking (our men) were coming

confestim ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli
quickly against them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.
having been captured, the Germans retreat.

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere a
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque eorum adeat suam civitatem, que
that, each one of them should go to his own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui per
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua
their age would be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui⁴⁶ si fuerint indiligentiores,
the common liberty; who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,
would perish with him; a calculation having been entered [made],

se habere frumentum exigue triginta dierum, sed
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etiam paulo longius parcendo.
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.

His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum
These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry

silentio, secundā vigiliā, quā nostrum opus
in silence, in the second watch, when our work

intermissum erat; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad
had ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to

se; constituit pœnam capitis⁴⁶ iis,
himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,

qui non paruerint; distribuit pecus, cujus
who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which

magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,
a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,

viritim; instituit frumentum metiri
man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured

parce et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,
sparingly and by little; he receives all the forces,

quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.
which he had placed before the town, into the town.

His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,
In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,

et administrare bellum.
and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis
Which things having been learned from deserters

et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genera (pl.)
and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind

munitiois. Duxit fossam viginti pedum
of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet

latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum
broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom

pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.
might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis
He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred

pedibus ab eā fossā; id hōc consilio
feet from this ditch; this with this design

(quoniam tantum spatium necessario esset complexus,
(since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facile cingeretur
(that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded
 coronā militum); ne aut multitudo hostium
by a circle of soldiers); lest either a mass of the enemy
 advolaret ad munitiones de improviso noctu,
should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,
 aut interdiu possent conicere tela in
or by day they might be able to throw weapons against
 nostros destinatos op̄eri. Hōc spatio inter-
our men assigned to the work. This space having been
 misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,
left, he formed two trenches fifteen feet wide,
 eādem altitudine; interiorem quarum
with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)
 campestribus ac demissis locis, complevit aquā
in level and low ground, he filled with water
 derivatā ex flumine. Post eas extruxit
led from the river. Behind these he constructed
 aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic
a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this
 adjecit loricam que pinnae, grandibus cervis
he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns
 eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)
projecting at the junction of the parapet
 atque aggeris, qui tardarent adscensum
and the mound, which might hinder the ascent
 hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ
of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which
 distarent inter se⁴⁷ octoginta pedes.
were distant from each other eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempore et
It was necessary at the same time both
 materiari, et frumentari, et tantas
to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great
 munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-
fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been
 inutis, quæ progrediebantur longius ab
diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur
the camp; and the Gauls sometimes endeavored

tentare nostra op̄era, atque facere eruptionem
to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppido summā vi pluribus portis.
from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus
Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quō munitiones possent
be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numero militum. Itaque truncis
be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,
of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque
and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ
sharpened; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et
were cut. Here these stakes having been put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,
fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines
were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

erant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,
were united, and intertwined one with another,

quō ipsi qui⁴⁸ intraverant, induebant se
where those who had entered, impaled themselves

acutissimis vallis; appellabant hos cippos.
on very sharp stakes; they called these cippi [boundary

Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,
posts]. Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem
arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore
of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigio ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine
surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præcuti et præusti,
of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,
 demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quattuor
were set in; so that not more (than) by four
 digitis eminērent ex terrā. Simul
inches they might project from the ground. At the same time
 causā confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli⁴⁹
for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each
 pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrā
foot from the lowest ground with earth
 exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis intgebatur
was trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered
 viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.
with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.
 Octoni ordines hujus genēris ducti, distabant
Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant
 ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine
three feet from each other. This, from the likeness
 floris, appellabant lilium. Ante hæc taleæ,
to the flower, they called a lily. Before these, stakes,
 pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ
a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]
 infodiebantur in terram; que, mediocribus
were sunk into the ground; and, moderate
 spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus
spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all
 locis, quos nominabant stimulos.
places, which they called spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus
These things having been completed, having followed
 regiones æquissimas quam potuit, pro
localities (as) [most] level as was possible, considering
 naturā loci complexus quattuordecim millia
the nature of the place (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand
 passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem
paces, he completed like fortifications of the same
 generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem
kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent
enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could
 circumfundi ne quidem magna⁵⁰ multitudine, (si
be surrounded not even by a great multitude, (if
 accadat ita). Ac he cogerentur
it should happen so). And that they might not be forced
 egredi ex castris cum periculo, jubet omnes
to go from the camp with danger, he orders all
 habere pabulum convectum que frumentum
to have forage collected and corn
 triginta dierum.
for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,
While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,
 Galli, concilio principum indicto,
the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked
 statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui
ordain, (that) not all should be called out who
 possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),
could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),
 sed certum numerum imperandum cuique
but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each
 civitati; ne, tantā confusā multitudine
state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude
 possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos
they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)
 nec habere rationem frumentandi. Imperant
nor have the means of provisioning. They demand
 triginta quinque millia Æduis atque
thirty five thousand from the Ædui and
 eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,
their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,
 Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem numerum
the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number
 Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,
from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,
 Gabalis, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt
the Gabali, (and) the Vellavi, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum; Senonibus,
to be under the command of the Arverni; from the Senones,
 Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,
the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni,
 Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;
the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;
 totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et
the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and
 Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena
the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii, six
 Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,
from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,
 Nervii, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia
the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand
 Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;
from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates
 quatuor Vellocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis
four from the Vellocassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci
 Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.
Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.
 Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt
Ten from all the states, which border on
 Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur
the Ocean, and that by their custom are called
 Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,
Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,
 Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,
the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,
 Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non
Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not
 contulerunt suum numerum; quod dixerunt
contribute their number; because they said (that)
 se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo
they would carry on war with the Romans by their own
 nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos
name and will, nor would they obey
 imperio cujusquam. Rogati a Commio,
the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

tamen, pro ejus hospitio, miserunt
however, on account of his tie of hospitality, they sent

duo millia.
two thousand

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, usus erat
Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fideli atque utili operâ hujus Commii,
the faithful and helpful services of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britannâ, pro quibus meritis
in former years in Britain, for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,
he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat
had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio
on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Galliæ vindicandæ libertatis, et
of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ pristinæ laudis belli, ut
of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ
they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumbèrent in id
of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo
war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et
thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.
forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que
These were received in the country of the Ædii; and

numerus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;
the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii traditur Commio Atrebatii,
the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis,
Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrinus Vercingetorix.
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercingetorix.

Iis delecti ex civitatibus
To them (those) selected from the states

attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.
are assigned, by those counsel the war should be conducted.

Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni
All set out to Alesia eager and full

fiduciæ. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,
of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,

arbitraretur adspectum modo tantæ
supposed that the sight even of so great

multitudinis posse sustinēri, præsertim ancipiti
a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold

prælio; quum pugnaretur⁵² eruptione ex
battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from

oppido, et foris tantæ copiae equitatūs que
the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and

peditatūs cernerentur.
infantry should be discerned.

77. At ii qui obsidebantur Alesiae, die
But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day

præteritā, quā expectaverant auxilia suorum,
having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),

omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid
all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what

gereretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,
was going on among the Ædui, a council having been assembled

consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.
they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.

Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars
And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part

censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum
recommended a surrender, a part a sally while

vires (pl.) suppetērent. Oratio Critognati
(their) strength was sufficient. The speech of Critognatus

videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus
it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its

singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo loco in Arvernīs, et habitus
of the highest rank among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing

de sententiâ eorum, qui appellant
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomīne deditiōnis;
the basest slavery by the name of surrender;

censeo hos neque habendos loco
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinæ virtutis
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quam qui patienter ferant dolorem.
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam (tantum
And I would approve this opinion (so much

apud me dignitas potest), si vidērem
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiēdo consilio,
lives. But in taking [forming] a plan

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum
to our assistance. Eighty thousand men

interfectis, uno loco, quid animi existimatis
having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think

fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si
(this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if

cogentur decertare proelio pæne in
they should be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)

cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro
dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your

auxilio, qui causam vestræ salutis neglexerint
aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded

suum periculum, nec vestram stultitiam ac
their own peril, nor by your folly and

temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere
recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate

omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.
all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.

An quod non venerint ad diem
Why because they may not have come at [on] the day

dubitatis de eorum fide que constantiam? Quid
do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What

ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie
then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily

in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causam
in those outer fortifications only for the sake

animi?⁵³ Si potestis non confirmari nun-
of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the

tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,
messages of those, all approach having been prevented

utimini iis testibus eorum adventum
use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival

appropinquare, exterriti timore cuius rei
draws near, (the fact that) alarmed by the fear of this thing

versantur diem que noctem in opere. Quid
they are busied day and night in the work. What

ergo est mei consilii? Facere quod nostri
therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum
forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri

que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac
and Teutones, who driven into towns, and

subacti simili inopiā, toleraverunt vitam corporibus
forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies

eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,
of those, who by age seemed useless for war,

neque tradiderunt se hostibus. Si
nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If

haberemus non exemplum cujus rei, tamen
we had not the example of this thing, yet

judicarem pulcherrimum causā libertatis
I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty

institui, et prodi posteris. Nam
to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For

quid fuit simile illi bello?⁵⁴ Galliā
what was there like that war? Gaul (having been)

depopulatā, que magnā calamitate illatā,
depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,

Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque
the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and

petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,
sought other lands; they left us the rights,

leges, agros libertatem. Vero Romani
the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans

quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi
what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except

adducti invidiā, considere in agris que
induced by greed, to settle in the fields and

civitatis horum, quos cognoverunt famā
states of these (those) whom they have learned by report

nobiles que potentes bello, atque his
(are) noble and powerful in war, and on these

injungere æternam servitutem? Enim neque unquam
to impose perpetual slavery? For never

gesserunt bella aliā conditione. Quod
have they waged wars on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ea quæ geruntur in
if you know not those things which are being done in
 longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,
distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,
 quæ redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus
which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws
 commutatis, subjecta securi-
(having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-
 bus premitur perpetuâ servitute!"
tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut
The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that
 qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello
(those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war
 excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,
should leave the town, and all things should be tried,
 prius quam descendant ad sententiam
before (that) they descend to the recommendation
 Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, si res
of Critognatus; however (that they must) use his advice, if the case
 cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potius quam
compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)
 conditionem deditionis aut pacis subeundam.
a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured.
 Mandubii, qui receperant eos oppido coguntur
The Mandubii, who had received them in the town are forced
 exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi
to depart with the children and wives. These
 quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,
when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,
 flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-
weeping prayed with all entreaties, that having been
 tos in servitatem, juvarent cibo.
received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food.
 Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,
These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart,
 prohibebat recipi.
prevented to be [from being] received.

79. Interea Commius, et reliqui duces,
In the meantime Commius, and the other leaders,

quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt
to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive

ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore
at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer

colle occupato, considunt non longius
hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)

mille passibus a nostris munitionibus. Postero
a thousand paces from our fortifications. The next

die, equitatu educto ex castris,
day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,

complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus
they fill all this plain, which we have shown

patēre tria millia passuum in longitudinem;
to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;

que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eo
and they station the foot soldiers a little from this

loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat
place, removed on higher ground. There was

despectus ex oppido Alesiā in campum.
a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.

His auxiliis visis, concurritur,
These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together

gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi
congratulations are made among them, and the souls

omnium excitantur ad lætitiā. Itaque, copiis
of all are excited to joy. Therefore, (their) forces

productis ante oppidum, considunt et
having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and

integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent
cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)

aggere, que comparant se ad eruptionem,
with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,

atque omnes casus.
and all chances.

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad
Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus
both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need
 veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,
should come each might know and keep his own place,
 jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et
orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and
 committi proelium. Erat despectus ex omnibus
to join battle. There was a view from all
 castris, quæ undique tenebant summum
the camp, which everywhere occupied the highest
 jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti
ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers intent
 pugnae expectabant eventum. Galli
on battle were anticipating the issue. The Gauls
 interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,
had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,
 que expeditos levis armaturæ,⁵⁵ qui succurrerent
and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor
 auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinerent
by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold
 impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures
the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)
 vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant
wounded unexpectedly by these withdrew
 proelio. Cum Galli confiderent suos
from the battle. When the Gauls believed (that) their
 esse superiores pugna, et viderent
(men) were superior in the fight, and saw
 nostros premi multitudine; ex om-
our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng, from [on]
 nibus partibus, et ii qui continebantur
all parts [sides], both those who were retained
 munitionibus, et ii qui convenerant ad
within the fortifications, and those who had come for
 auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore
aid, strengthened the spirits of their men by a shout
 et ululatu. Quod res gerebatur in conspectu
and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum recte aut
of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] or

turpiter poterat celari, et cupiditas laudis,
shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise,

et timor ignominiae excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad
and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur a meridie
valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

prope ad occasum solis dubiā victoriā,
nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unā parte confertis turmis fecerunt
the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.
an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus coniectis in fugam,
Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item
the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti
in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt
retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At
no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

ii, qui processerant ab Alesia, victoriā
those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

prope desperatā, receperunt se
nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mæsti, in oppidum.
sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hōc spatio
One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numero cratium, scalarum, harpagonum
a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediā nocte, silentio,
having been made, the Gauls, at mid night (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad
having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres munitiones. Subito clamōre
the field [outside] fortifications. A sudden shout
 sublato, quā significatione, qui
having been raised, by which signal, (those) who
 obsidebantur in oppido, possent cognoscere de
were besieged in the town, might know of
 suo adventu, projicere crātes deturbare
their arrival, (and) throw out the hurdles, force
 nostros de vallo fundis, sagittis lapidibus,
our men from the rampart by slings, arrows (and) stones,
 que administrare reliqua quæ pertinent ad
and (to) perform the other things which belong to
 oppugnationem. Eodem tempore, clamōre
an assault. At the same time, the shout
 exaudito, Vercingetorix dat signum suis
having been heard, Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men
 tubā, atque educit ex oppido.
by the trumpet, and leads (them forth) from the town.
 Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, suus locus
Our men, as on the previous days, his place
 attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;
had been assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;
 perterrent Gallos fundis libralibus⁵⁷ que
they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and
 sudibus, quas disposuerant in opère, ac
stakes, which they had placed in the works, and
 glandibus. Prospectu adempto tenebris,
by lead bullets. The view (having been) cut off by darkness,
 multa vulnera accipiuntur utrimque, complura
many wounds are received on both sides, numerous
 tela conjiciuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,⁵⁸
weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,
 et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus eae partes
and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts
 obvenerant ad defendendum, ex quā
had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]
 parte intellexerunt nostros premi,
side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed'

submittebant iis auxilio deductos ex
they sent to them for [as] aid (those) drawn [led] out from
 ulterioribus castellis.
the more remote fortresses.

82. Dum Galli aberant longius ab
While the Gauls were distant rather far from
 munitione, proficiebant, plus multitudine
the fortifications, they made progress, more by the multitude
 telorum; posteaquam successerunt proprius,
[mass] of weapons; after they approached nearer,
 aut ipsi inopinantes induebant se stimulis,
either they unawares impaled themselves on the spurs,
 aut delapsi in scrobes transfodiebantur, aut
or having fallen into the pits were transfixcd, or
 interibant trajecti muralibus pilis ex
perished pierced by the wall javelins (thrown) from
 vallo et turribus. Multis vulneribus accep-
the rampart and towers. Many wounds having
 tis undique, nullā munitione perruptā,
been received on all sides, no fortification having been forced,
 cum lux appetēret, veriti ne
when (day) light was approaching, having feared lest
 circumvenirentur ab aperto latēre, eruptione
they might be surrounded on the exposed flank, by a sally
 ex superioribus castris, receperunt se ad suos.
from the higher camp, they retreated to their (people).
 At interiores, dum proferunt ea
But those within (the town), while they bring out these things
 quæ præparata erant a Vercingetorige ad
which had been prepared by Vercingetorix for
 eruptionem, explent priores fossas; morati
the sally, fill up the first ditches; having been delayed
 diutius in administrandis iis rebus, cogno-
rather long in performing these things, they
 verunt suos discessisse prius quam
learned (that) their men had withdrawn before (that)
 appropinquarent munitionibus. Ita, re
they had approached (to) the fortifications. Thus. the thing

infectā, reverterunt in
 [design] having been unaccomplished, they returned into
 oppidum.
 the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno
 The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great
 detrimento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent
 loss, consult what they should do. They admit
 peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab
 (those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from
 his situs superiorum castrorum que
 these the position of the higher camp and
 munitiones. Erat collis a septentrionibus,
 the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,
 quem⁵⁹ nostri non potuerant circumplecti opère,
 which our men had not been able to enclose in the works,
 propter magnitudinem circuitus; pæne
 on account of the greatness of the circuit; almost
 necessario fecerant castra iniquo et
 necessarily they had pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable and
 leniter declivi loco. C. Antistius Reginus, et
 gently descending place. C. Antistius Reginus, and
 C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc
 C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this
 cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis
 with two legions. The country having been explored
 per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt
 by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select
 sexaginta millia ex omni numero earum
 sixty thousand from all the number of those
 civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem
 states, which have the greatest reputation
 virtutis; occulte constituunt inter se, quid,
 of [for] bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,
 que quo pacto placeat agi.
 and in what manner it is pleasing [is best] to be done.

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur
 They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse meridies. Præficiunt iis copiis
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primā vigiliā itinēre
having departed from the camp at the first watch the march

confecto prope sub lucem, occultavit
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficere sese ex nocturno labore. Cum
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridies videretur appropinquare, contendit
now noon was seen to draw near, he marched

ad ea castra, quæ demonstravimus supra, que
to that camp, which we have mentioned above and

eodem tempore equitatus cœperunt accedere
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestris munitiones, et reliquæ
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendere sese pro castris.
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesia, egreditur ex oppido, profert
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, brings forth

e castris longurios, musculos, falces, que
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causā eruptionis.
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur⁶⁰ uno tempore, omnibus locis, atque
It is fought [Fighting occurs] at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minime
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinetur tantis munitionibus nec facile
is extended in so great fortifications and not easily
 occurrit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit
meets (the attack) in many places. The din, that arose
 post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multum ad
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for
 terrendos nostros, quod vident suum
alarming our men, because they see (that) their
 periculum consistere in virtute alienā. Enim
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For
 plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant
generally all things which are absent alarm
 mentes hominum vehementius.
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns
 quid geratur in quaque parte, submittit
what is done in every part, sends (aid)
 laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,
 illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat
(that) that is the one time, in which it is fitting
 maxime contendit.⁶¹ Galli, nisi
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless
 perfregerint munitiones, desperant de omni
they break through the fortifications, despair of all
 salute. Romani, si obtinuerint rem
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]
 expectant finem omnium laborum. Maxime
expect an end of all (their) labors. Especially
 laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quō
it is struggled [there is a struggle] at the higher fortifications, where
 demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.
 Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,
The small elevation of the place with the slope,
 habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factā, subeunt, integri
others a testudo having been made advance, fresh men

succedunt defatigatis in vicem. Agger conjectus
relieve the wearied by turns. The earth thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat
by all against the fortifications, both gives

adscensum Gallis, et contegit quæ
an ascent to the Gauls, and covers what

Romani occultaverant in terrā. Nec arma,
the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither arms,

jam nec vires suppetunt nostris.
now nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit
These things having been learned, Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus subsidio
Labienus with six cohorts for [as] aid

laborantibus. Imperat, si possit non
(to those) struggling. He commands (him), if he could not

sustinēre, cohortibus deductis, pugnet
withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out, he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessario.
in a sally; (but) not do this, unless necessary.

Ipsæ adit reliquos; cohortatur ne
He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labor; docet fructum omnium
succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in eo
(their) former battles depended on this

die atque horā. Interiores campestribus
day and hour. Those within [The besieged] the level

locis desperatis, propter magnitudinem
places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant loca prærupta ex
of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; huc conferunt ea quæ para-
ascent; here they bring those things which they had

verant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus
prepared, they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggere
by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth

et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt
and fascines they prepare an approach, they tear down

vallum ac loricam falcibus.
the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primo mittit Brutum, adolescentem,
Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,

cum sex cohortibus, post Fabium legatum cum
with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with

septem aliis. Postremo ipse, quum pugnaretur^{6a}
seven others. At length he himself, when it was fought

vehementius, adducit integros subsidio.
more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prælio restituto, ac hostibus repul-
The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been

sis, contendit eō quō miserat Labienum;
repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quattuor cohortes ex proximo castello;
he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem
he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri
to go around the outer fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquam
the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere
neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus
the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis
having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsiidiis, sors obtulit, facit certiores Cæsarem,
posts, chance offered, informs Cæsar,

per nuntios quid existimet faciendum, Cæsar
by messengers what he thinks must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prælio.
hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colōre
His arrival having been known from the color
 vestitūs, (quō insigni consueverat uti
of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use
 in prœliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus
in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts
 visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de
having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from
 superioribus locis hæc declivia et devexa
the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)
 cernebantur, hostes committunt prœlium. Clamōre
were visible, the enemy join battle. A shout
 sublato utrimque, clamōr rursus excipit
having been raised on both sides, a shout again follows
 ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.
from the rampart and all the fortifications.
 Nostri pilis omissis, gerunt
Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on
 rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repente cernitur
the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen
 post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;
in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;
 hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt
the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet
 fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius
(those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius
 dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;
general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;
 Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive
 in fugā; septuaginta quattuor militaria signa
in flight; seventy four military standards
 referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto
are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great
 numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati
a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld
 ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,
from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people)

salute desperatā, reducunt copias
safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces

a munitionibus. Hāc re auditā,
from the fortifications. This news having been heard,

fuga protinus fit, ex castris Gallorum;
a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;

quod nisi milites fuissent defessi
as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued

crebris subsidiis ac labōre totius
by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole

diei, omnes copiae hostium potuissent delēri.
day, all the forces of the enemy might have been destroyed.

De mediā nocte, equitatus missus consequitur
About mid night, the cavalry having been sent overtakes

novissimum agmen. Magnus numerus capitur,
the rear line. A great number are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugā
and killed; the rest escape from the flight [rout]

in civitates.
into their states.

89. Postero die, concilio convocato,
On the next day, a council having been called,

Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse
Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken

bellum non causā suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed
the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but

communis libertatis, et quoniam sit
of (their) common liberty, and because it must

cedendum fortunæ, offerre se illis
be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them

ad utramque rem, seu velint
for either thing [alternative], whether they wish

satisfacere Romanis suā morte, seu tradere
to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender

vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem
(him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar

de his rebus. Jubet arma
concerning these things. He orders (their) arms

tradi, principes produci. Ipse
to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He
 consedit in munitione pro castris; eo
seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there
 principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;
the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered
 arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernīs
the arms are thrown down. The Ædui and Arverni
 reservatis, si per eos posset recuperare
having been reserved, if through them he could gain over
 civitates, ex reliquis captivis distribuit
(their) states, from the remaining captives he distributed
 singula capita toti exercitui nomine
one each to the whole army under the name
 prædæ.
of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur
These things having been accomplished, he marches
 in Æduos; recipit civitatem. Legati
into the Ædui; he receives the state. Ambassadors
 missi eo ab Arvernīs pollicentur
sent thither from the Arverni promise
 se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat
(that) they would do, what he might command. He orders
 magnum numerum obsidum. Mittit legiones in
a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into
 hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia
winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand
 captivorum Æduis que Arvernīs. Jubet
(of) prisoners to the Ædui and Arverni. He orders
 T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum
T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with
 duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit
two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns
 M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium
M. Sempronius Rutilus. He places C. Fabius
 et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum
and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus legionibus, ne accipiant quam
two legions, that they may not receive any
 calamitatem a finitimis Bellovacis. Mittit
injury from the neighboring Bellovaci. He sends
 C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos,
C. Antistius Reginus among the Ambivareti,
 T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninum Rebilum
T. Sextius among the Bituriges, C. Caninus Rebilus
 in Rutenos, cum legionibus singulis; collocat
among the Ruteni, with a legion each; he stations
 Q. Tullium Ciceronem, et P. Sulpicium Cabiloni
Q. Tullius Cicero, and P. Sulpicius at Cabilo
 et Matiscone ad Arārim in Æduis
and Matisco on [near] the (river) Saone among the Ædui
 causā frumentariæ rei; ipse constituit
for the purpose of the corn supply; he himself determines
 hiemare Bibracte. His rebus cognitis
to winter at Bibracte. These things having been learned
 Romæ litteris Cæsar, supplicatio viginti
at Rome by a letter of Cæsar, a thanksgiving of twenty
 dierum indicitur.
days is decreed.

Pocket Literal Translations of the Classics

Cloth Binding. Each, \$1.00

These translations have been prepared with great care. They follow the original text literally, thus forming a valuable help to the student in his efforts to master the difficulties which beset him. Pleasing sketches of the authors appear in the form of an introduction to each of the volumes.

The books are in a convenient form, being exceptionally handy for the pocket. They are printed from clear type, and are attractively and durably bound.

Cæsar's Commentaries—Eight Books.
Cicero's Defence of Roscius.
Cicero on Old Age and Friendship.
Cicero on Oratory.
Cicero's Select Orations.
Cicero's Select Letters.
Cornelius Nepos, complete.
Horace, complete.
Juvenal's Satires, complete.
Livy.—Books 1 and 2.
Livy.—Books 21 and 22.
Ovid's Metamorphoses.—Books 1-7.
Ovid's Metamorphoses.—Books 8-15.
Plautus' Captivi and Mostellaria.
Sallust's Catiline and The Jugurthine War.
Tacitus' Annals.—The First Six Books.
Tacitus' Germany and Agricola.
Terence' Andria, Adelphi, and Phormio.
Virgil's Aeneid.—Six Books.
Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics.
Viri Romæ.
Aeschylus' Prometheus Bound and Seven Against Thebes.

Aristophanes' Clouds, Birds, and Frogs.—In one Vol.
Demosthenes' On the Crown.
Demosthenes' Olynthiacs and Philippics.
Euripides' Alcestis and Electra.
Euripides' Medea.
Herodotus.—Books 6 and 7.
Homer's Iliad.—Nine Books.
Homer's Odyssey.—13 Books.
Lysias' Select Orations.
Plato's Apology, Crito and Phædo.
Plato's Gorgias.
Sophocles' Oedipus Tyrannus, Electra, and Antigone.
Xenophon's Anabasis.—Five Books.
Xenophon's Memorabilia, complete.
Goethe's Egmont.
Goethe's Faust.
Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.
Goethe's Iphigenia In Tauris.
Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm.
Lessing's Nathan the Wise.
Schiller's Maid of Orleans.
Schiller's Maria Stuart.
Schiller's William Tell.

All the above books may be obtained, post free, at prices named

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

The Hamilton, Locke, and Clark SERIES OF Interlinear Translations

Have long been the Standard and are now the *Best Translated* and *Most Complete* Series of Interlinears published.

Cloth Binding, each, \$2.00

LATIN INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS:

- VIRGIL**—By HART AND OSBORNE.
CÆSAR—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
HORACE—By STIRLING, NUTTALL AND CLARK.
CICERO—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
SALLUST—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
OVID—By GEORGE W. HEILIG.
JUVENAL—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
LIVY—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
CORNELIUS NEPOS—By HAMILTON AND UNDERWOOD

GREEK INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS

- HOMER'S ILIAD**—By THOMAS CLARK.
XENOPHON'S ANABASIS—By HAMILTON AND CLARK.
-

S. Austin Allibone, the distinguished author, writes:

"There is a growing disapprobation, both in America and Great Britain, of the disproportionate length of time devoted by the youthful student to the acquisition of the dead languages; and therefore nothing will tend so effectually to the preservation of the Greek and Latin grammars as their judicious union (the fruit of an intelligent compromise) with the Interlinear Classics."

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

BOOK IV.] OF THE GALLIC WAR.

ab eo octaginta millibus passuum, in Oceanum.
from that (than) eighty thousands of paces, into the Ocean.

Autem Rhenus oritur ex Lepontiis, qui incolunt
But the Rhine arises out of the Lepontii, who inhabit

Alpes: et fertur citatus longo spatio per fines
the Alps: and is borne rapid in a long distance through the territories

Nantuatum, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Medio-
of the Nantuates, Helvetii, Sequani, Medio-

matricorum, Tribocorum, que Trevirorum; et ubi
matrici, Tribocci, and of the Treviri; and when

appropinquat Oceano, diffuit in plures partes;
it approaches to the Ocean, it flows dividedly into more (several) parts:

multis que ingentibus insulis effectis; magna pars
many and great Islands being formed; great part

quarum incolitur à feris que barbaris nationibus;
of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous nations;

(ex quibus sunt qui existimantur vivere
(out of which (there) are (some) who are thought to live

piscibus atque ovis avium), que influit in
(on) fishes and the eggs of birds), and it flows in into

Oceanum multis capitibus.

the Ocean by many heads.

11. Quum Cæsar abesset ab
When Cæsar might be distant (was distant) from

hoste non amplius duodecim millibus passuum,
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousands of paces,

legati revertuntur ad eum, ut constitutum erat:
the ambassadors return to him, as it had been appointed:

qui congressi in itinere, orabant magnoperè,
who having met (him) on the march, did pray greatly

ne progredereetur longiùs. Quum impetrâssent
he would not advance farther. When they might have (had) obtained

non id, petebant, "utì præmitteret ad
not that, they did request, "that he would send before" to

eos equites, qui antecessissent agmen, que
those horsemen, who might have (had) preceded the troop (army), and

prohiberet eos pugnâ: que utì faceret potestatem
would prohibit them from battle: and that he would make power

Sample Page, Cæsar Interlinear Translation
(Reduced in Size)

McLaughlin's New Pronouncing Dictionaries

Containing the whole Vocabulary in General Use, with copious selections of Scientific, Technical, and Commercial Terms, and others Brought into Use, with their Pronunciations figured in both Languages.

Cloth Binding, \$2.50 each

French-English and English-French. A dictionary of the French and English languages by *E. Clifton*. New edition, entirely remodeled and enlarged by *J. McLaughlin*. 1,370 pages.

German-English and English-German. A new pronouncing dictionary of the German and English languages by *F. C. Hebert and L. Hirsch*. 1,749 pages.

Italian-English and English-Italian. A dictionary of the Italian and English languages by *A. Enenkel*. Revised and corrected by *J. McLaughlin*. 1,090 pages.

Spanish-English and English-Spanish. A dictionary of the Spanish and English languages by *A. Angeli*. Revised and corrected by *J. McLaughlin*. 1,350 pages.

ALSO UNIFORM WITH ABOVE

Danish-Norwegian-English and English-Danish-Norwegian. A dictionary of the Danish, Norwegian, and English languages by *Prof. J. R. Ainsworth Davis*, B.A. 768 pages..... \$2 50

Polish-English and English-Polish. A pronouncing dictionary of the Polish and English languages by *W. Kierst and Prof. O. Collier*. 832 pages..... 2 50

Polish-English and English-Polish. A new dictionary of the Polish and English languages by *J. Stanislawski*. 879 pages..... 3 50

Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese. A new 1943 dictionary of the Portuguese and English languages by *Dr. L. J. Sheridan and M. de Lourdes Sa' Pereira*..... 3 00

Rumanian-English Dictionary. By *P. Axelrad*..... 3 00

Russian-English and English-Russian. A new dictionary of the Russian and English languages by *M. Golovinsky*. 1,476 pages..... 3 00

Swedish-English and English-Swedish. A pronouncing dictionary of the Swedish and English languages by *J. Wessely*. 735 pages..... 2 50

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

Handy Dictionaries

When studying foreign languages, a good dictionary is a necessity. Handy Foreign Language Dictionaries are complete as possible for a dictionary of this size; definitions are concise and to the point. Pocket size permits use of dictionary at all times.

Dutch-English and English-Dutch.	<i>By</i>
<i>J. Verheul</i>	\$1 25
French-English and English-French.	<i>By</i>
<i>J. O. Ketteridge</i>	1 25
German-English and English-German.	
<i>By J. E. Wessely</i>	1 25
Greek-English.	<i>By Prof. Karl Feyera-</i>
<i>bend</i>	1 25
Italian-English and English-Italian.	<i>By</i>
<i>J. E. Wessely</i>	1 25
Latin-English and English-Latin	1 25
Spanish-English and English-Spanish.	
<i>By F. A. Kirkpatrick</i>	1 25

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia



Hill's Vest-Pocket Dictionaries

Cheapest and Most Reliable

No expense has been spared in compiling these books. As a result, the most complete Dictionaries of handy size have been produced. Not only are they the most convenient for the student, but also the most practical for the use of the progressive business man. They are the most reliable Dictionaries of this style on the market, and each one contains a complete guide to pronunciation, with rules for same. Condensation and usefulness are the chief features of these books. Unusual and self-explanatory terms are left out to make room for more needful words.

French-English and English-French
German-English and English-German
Italian-English and English-Italian
Spanish-English and English-Spanish
Swedish-English and English-Swedish
Latin-English and English-Latin
Polish-English and English-Polish
Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese
Russian-English and English-Russian

Each Volume, Cloth Binding. 60

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.
DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

